ŠKODA

ŠKODA Yeti
Owner's Manual



Layout of this Owner's Manual (explanations)

This Owner's Manual has been systematically designed to make it easy for you to search for and obtain the information you require.

Chapters, table of contents and subject index
The text of the Owner's manual is divided into relatively short sections which are combined into easy-to-read **chapters**. The chapter you are reading at any particular moment is always specified on the bottom right of the page.

The **Table of contents** is arranged according to the chapters and the detailed **Subject index** at the end of the Owner's Manual helps you to rapidly find the information you are looking for.

Direction indications
All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front", "rear" relate to the direction of travel of the vehicle.

Units of measurement
All values are expressed in metric units.

Explanation of symbols

- Denotes a reference to a section with important information and safety advice in a chapter.
- ■ Denotes the end of a section.
- ▶ Denotes the continuation of a section on the next page.
- Indicates situations where the vehicle must be stopped as soon as possible.
- ® Denotes a registered trademark.

Notes

WARNING

The most important notes are marked with the heading **WARNING**. These **WARNING** notes draw your attention to a **serious risk of accident or injury**.

CAUTION

A **Caution** note draws your attention to the possibility of damage to your vehicle (e.g. damage to gearbox), or points out general risks of an accident.

For the sake of the environment

An **Environmental** note draws your attention to environmental protection aspects. This is where you will, for example, find tips aimed at reducing your fuel consumption.

Note

A normal **Note** draws your attention to important information about the operation of your vehicle.

Preface

You have opted for a ŠKODA – our sincere thanks for your confidence in us.
You have received a vehicle with the latest technology and range of amenities. Please read this Owner's Manual carefully, because the operation in accordance with these instructions is a prerequisite for proper use of the vehicle.

Observe the national legal requirements when using your vehicle.

If you have any questions about your vehicle, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

We hope you enjoy driving your ŠKODA, and wish you a pleasant journey at all times.

Your ŠKODA AUTO a.s. (hereinafter referred to only as ŠKODA or manufacturer) ▶

On-board literature
The on-board literature for your vehicle consists of this "**owner's manual**" as well as a "**service schedule**" and the "**Help on the road**" brochure.

Depending on the vehicle model and equipment, other additional operating manuals and instructions may be provided (e.g. an operating manual for the radio).

If one of the documents listed above is missing, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

Terms used
The on-board literature contains the following terms relating to the service work for your vehicle.

- "Specialist garage" - a company that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles
- "ŠKODA service partner" - a company that is contractually authorized by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. to carry out service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles
- "ŠKODA Partners" - a company that is authorized by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. to sell ŠKODA products or carry out service work, or to carry out these tasks in parallel

The owner's manual
This owner's manual describes **all possible equipment variants** without identifying them as special equipment, model variants or market-dependent equipment.

Consequently, this vehicle **does not need to contain all of the equipment components** described in this owner's manual.

The scope of equipment in your vehicle relates to your sales contract for the vehicle. More information is available from the ŠKODA Partner where you bought the vehicle.

The **illustrations** can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended for general information.

The service schedule:
- Contains vehicle data including information on service work carried out;
- Is intended as proof of services carried out;
- Is intended for records relating to the mobility warranty (only valid for some countries);
- Serves as a warranty certificate from the ŠKODA Partner where your vehicle was purchased.

Therefore please always present the service schedule when you take your vehicle to a specialist garage.

If the service schedule is missing or in poor condition, please contact the specialist garage that regularly services your vehicle. You will need to request a duplicate, in which the specialist garage will confirm the service work previously carried out.

The Help on the road brochure
The Help on the road brochure contains the most important emergency telephone numbers as well as telephone numbers and contact addresses of ŠKODA Partners in the various different countries.

Table of Contents

Abbreviations

Using the system

Cockpit 7
Overview 6

Instruments and Indicator Lights 8
Instrument cluster 8
Multifunction display (onboard computer) 12
MAXI DOT (information display) 15
Warning lights 18

Unlocking and locking 26
Unlocking and locking 26
Central locking system 28
Remote control 31
Anti-theft alarm system 33
Boot lid 34
Electric power windows 35
Panoramic sunroof 38

Lights and visibility 41
Lights 41
Interior lights 47
Visibility 49
Windscreen wipers and washers 51
Rear window 54

Seats and stowing 58
Front seats 58
Head restraints 62
Rear seats 63
Boot 66
Variable loading floor in boot 70
Variable loading floor with spare wheel 71
Roof rack system 72
Cup holders 73
Ashtray 73
Storage compartments 75
Useful equipment 81

Heating and air-conditioning 84
Heating, ventilation, cooling 84
Heating 86
Air conditioning system (manual air conditioning system) 88
Climatronic (automatic air conditioning system) 91
Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) 94

Communication and multimedia 98
General information 98
Universal telephone preinstallation GSM II 101
Universal telephone preinstallation GSM III 104
WLAN 108
Voice control 109
Multimedia 112

Driving

Starting-off and Driving 116
Starting and stopping the engine 116
Braking 119
Manual gear changing and pedals 120
Automatic gearbox 121
Running in 125
Economical driving and environmental sustainability 126
Avoiding damage to your vehicle 130
Driving abroad 131
Off-road driving 131

Assist systems 137
Brake assist systems 137
OFF ROADmode 139
Parking aid 141
Park assist 142
Cruise Control System 145
START/STOP 147
Fatigue detection (break recommendation) 148

Towing a trailer 150
Towing device 150
Trailer 154

Safety

Passive Safety 158
General information 158
Correct seated position 159

Seat belts 162
Using seat belts 162
Inertia reels and belt tensioners 165

Airbag system 167
Description of the airbag system 167
Airbag overview 168
Deactivating airbags 172

Transporting children safely 175
Child seat 175
Fastening systems 177

General Maintenance

Taking care of and cleaning the vehicle 180
Washing your car 180
Taking care of your vehicle exterior 181
Taking care of the interior 185
Modifications, repairs and technical alterations 187

Inspecting and replenishing 190
Fuel 190
Engine compartment 192
Engine oil 195
Coolant 198
Brake fluid 199
Vehicle battery 200

Wheels 205
Tyres and wheel rims 205
Winter operation 211

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment and self-help 213
Emergency equipment 213
Changing a wheel 214
Breakdown kit 218
Jump-starting 220
Towing the vehicle 222

Fuses and light bulbs 225
Fuses 225
Bulbs 228

Technical data

Technical data 232
Vehicle data 232

Index

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Definition
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute
ABS	Anti-lock brake system
AF	Multi-purpose vehicles
APN	Access Point Name - the name of an access point for the WiFi network
TCS	Traction control
CO_2 in g/km	discharged quantity of carbon dioxide in grams per driven kilometer
DPF	Diesel particle filter
DSG	Automatic double clutch gearbox
DSR	Active driver-steering recommendation
EDL	Electronic differential lock
EPC	EPC fault light
ESC	Electronic Stability Control
GSM	Groupe Spécial Mobile - a digital network of mobile devices for the transmission of voice and data
HFP	Hands-free profile - connection of a mobile device by means of its Bluetooth® profile
kW	Kilowatt, measuring unit for the engine output
MG	Manual gearbox
MFD	Multifunction display
N1	Panel van intended exclusively or mainly for the transportation of goods
Nm	Newton meter, measuring unit for the engine torque
PIN	Personal Identification Number - personal identification number for the connection of electronic devices using Bluetooth® or WiFi
rSAP	Remote SIM Access Profile - remote transmission of SIM data
SSP	simple security pairing - connection of two devices using Bluetooth® profile
TDI CR	Diesel engine with turbocharging and common rail injection system
TSI	Petrol engine with turbocharging and direct injection
UMTS	Universal Mobile Telecommunication System - the next evolution of the GSM network (3G)
WLAN	Wireless Local Area Network - wireless connection of electronic devices for data transfer (WiFi)

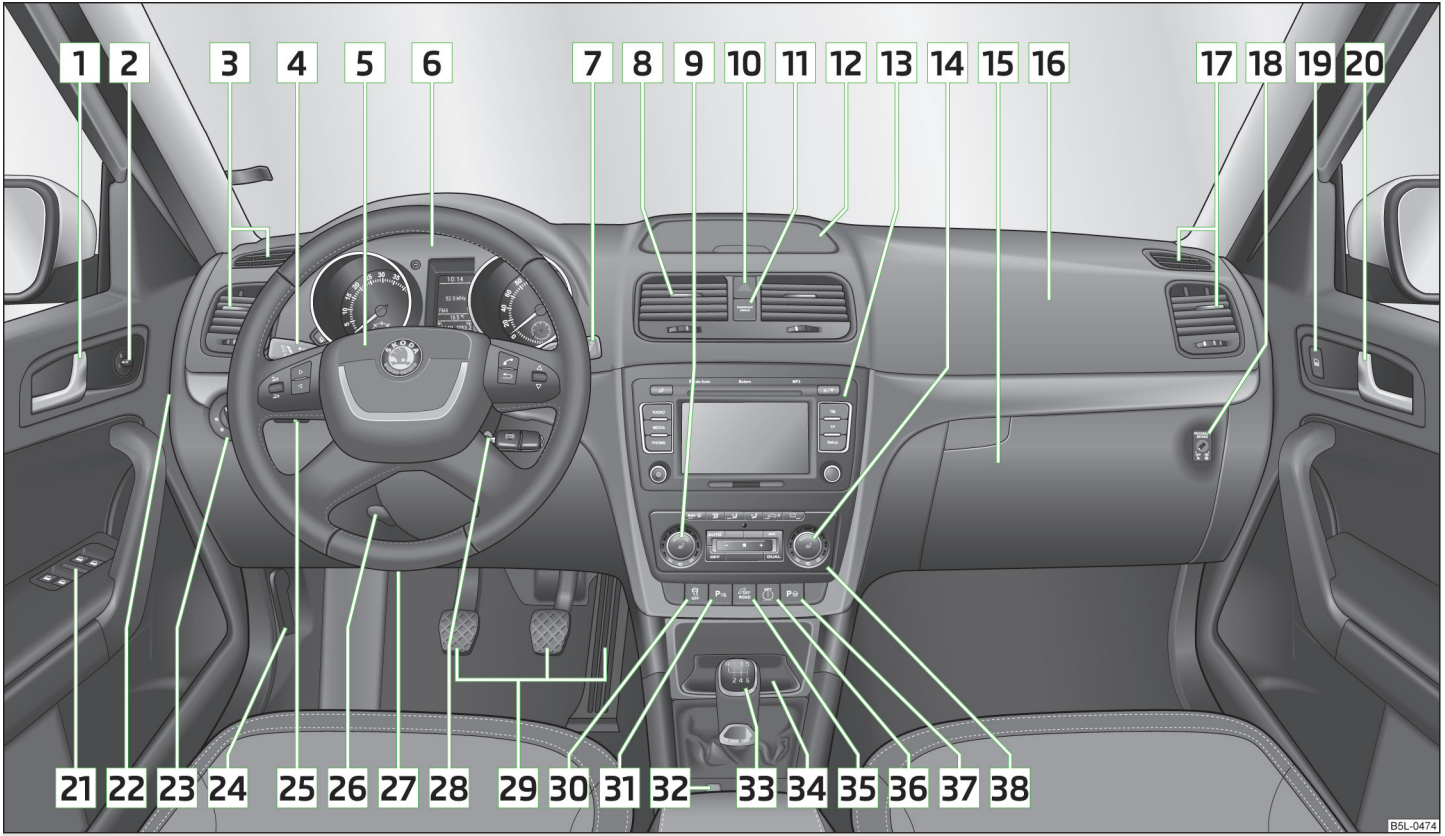

Fig. 1 **Cockpit**

Using the system

Cockpit

Overview

1 Door opening lever on the driver's side — 28
2 Electric exterior mirror adjustment — 56
3 Air outlet vents on the driver's side — 85
4 Operating lever:
› Turn signal light, headlight and parking light, headlight flasher — 43
› Speed regulating system — 145
5 Steering wheel:
› With horn
› With driver's front airbag — 169
› With pushbuttons for radio, navigation system and mobile phone — 98
6 Instrument cluster: Instruments and indicator lights — 8
7 Operating lever:
› Multifunction display — 12
› Windscreen wiper and wash system — 51
8 Air outlets in the central part of the dash panel — 85
9 Regulator for front left seat heating — 62
10 Switch for hazard warning lights — 46
11 Warning light for the deactivated front seat passenger airbag — 173
12 Storage compartment on the dash panel — 76
13 Depending on equipment fitted:
› Radio
› Navigation system
14 Regulator for front right seat heating — 62
15 Storage compartment on the front passenger side — 75
16 Front passenger airbag — 169
17 Air outlet vents on the front passenger side — 85
18 Key switch for switching off the front passenger airbag (in front passenger storage compartment) — 173
19 Power window in the front passenger door — 37
20 Door opening lever on the front passenger side — 28
21 Electric windows — 35
22 Fuse box (on side of dash panel) — 226
23 Light switch — 42
24 Bonnet release lever — 194
25 Regulator for the instrument lighting and regulator for the head-light beam range adjustment — 47, 42
26 Lever for adjusting the steering wheel — 117
27 Driver's knee airbag — 170
28 Ignition lock — 118
29 Pedals — 121
30 TCS switch — 118
31 Front and rear parking aid — 141
32 Central locking system — 31
33 Depending on equipment fitted:
› Gearshift lever (manual gearbox) — 120
› Selector lever (automatic gearbox) — 122
34 Storage compartment — 76
35 Offroad — 139
36 Tyre pressure monitoring system — 208
37 Park Assist — 142
38 Depending on equipment fitted:
› Operating controls for the heating — 86
› Operating controls for the air conditioning system — 88
› Operating controls for Climatronic — 91

Note

The arrangement of the controls and switches and the location of some items on right-hand drive models may differ from that shown in » Fig. 1. The symbols on the controls and switches are the same as for left-hand drive models.

Instruments and Indicator Lights

Instrument cluster

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Overview 8
Engine revolutions counter 9
Speedometer 9
Coolant temperature display 9
Fuel gauge 9
Counter for distance driven 10
Service Interval Display 10
Digital clock 11
Recommended gear 11

WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for road safety.
- Never operate the controls in the instrument cluster while driving, only when the vehicle is stationary!

Overview

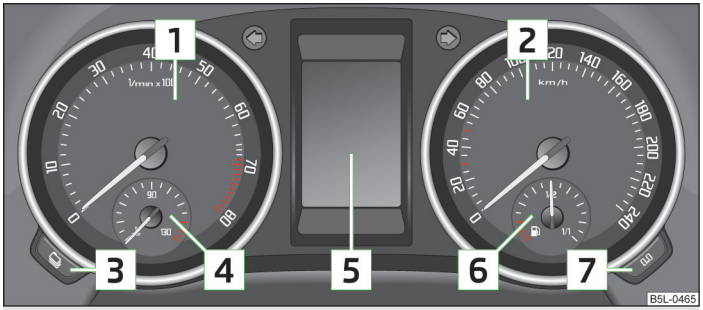

Fig. 2 **Instrument cluster**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 8.

1 Engine revolutions counter » page 9
2 Speedometer » page 9
3 Button for display mode:
- Setting the hours/minutes
- Activating/deactivating the second speed in mph or km/h
- Service intervals - Display of the number of days and kilometres remaining until the next Inspection Service

4 Coolant temperature gauge » page 9
5 Display:
- With counter for distance driven » page 10
- With service interval display » page 10
- With digital clock » page 11
- With multifunction display » page 12
- With information display » page 15

6 Fuel gauge » page 9
7 Button for:
- Reset trip counter for the distance driven
- Set hours/minutes
- Activate/deactivate display mode

Engine revolutions counter

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 8.

The red scale of the rev counter 1 » Fig. 2 on page 8 indicates the range in which the engine control unit begins to limit the engine speed. The engine control unit restricts the engine speed to a steady limit.

You should shift into the next higher gear before the red scale of the revolution counter is reached, or move the selector lever into position D if your car is fitted with an automatic gearbox.

To maintain the optimum motor speed, observe the gearshift indicator » page 11.

For the sake of the environment

Shifting to a higher gear in good time helps to lower fuel consumption, minimises operating noise levels, protects the environment and contributes to a longer life and reliability of the engine.

Speedometer

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 8.

Warning against excessive speeds
An audible warning signal will sound when the vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h. The audible warning signal is switched off when the vehicle speed falls below this speed limit.

Note

This function is only valid for some countries.

Coolant temperature display

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 8.

The coolant temperature gauge 4 » Fig. 2 on page 8 operates only when the ignition is switched on.

The following guidelines regarding the temperature ranges must be observed to avoid any damage to the engine.

Cold range
If the pointer is still in the left area of the scale it means that the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid high speeds, full throttle and high engine loads.

The operating range
The engine has reached its operating temperature as soon as the pointer moves into the mid-range of the scale, for a normal style of driving. The pointer may also move further to the right at high engine loads and high outside temperatures.

CAUTION

Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the fresh air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant. There is then a risk of the engine overheating at high outside temperatures and high engine loads » page 20, *Coolant temperature/coolant level*.

Fuel gauge

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 8.

The fuel gauge 6 » Fig. 2 on page 8 only operates when the ignition is switched on.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 55 litres or 60 litres [1]. The indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up when the pointer reaches the reserve marking.

[1] Valid for Yeti 4x4.

CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! An irregular supply of fuel can lead to irregular engine running. Unburnt fuel may get into the exhaust system and damage the catalytic converter.

Note

After filling up, it can occur that during dynamic driving (e.g. numerous curves, braking, driving downhill and climbing a steep hill) the fuel gauge indicates approx. a fraction less. When stopping or during less dynamic driving, the fuel gauge displays the correct fuel level again. This is not a fault.

Counter for distance driven

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 8.

The distance which you have driven with your vehicle is shown in kilometres (km). In some countries, the measuring unit "mile" is used.

Daily trip counter (trip)
The daily trip counter indicates the distance which you have driven since it was last reset - in steps of 100 metres or 1/10 of a mile.

To reset the display of the daily trip counter, press button 7 » Fig. 2 on page 8 for longer.

Odometer
The odometer indicates the total distance in kilometres or miles which the vehicle has been driven.

Fault display
If there is a fault in the instrument cluster, the word **Error** will be continuously visible in the display. Have the fault rectified as soon as possible by a specialist garage.

Note

For vehicles fitted with the information display, if the display of the second speed is activated in mph or km/h, this driving speed is indicated instead of the counter for the total distance driven.

Service Interval Display



Fig. 3
Service Interval Display: Note

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 8.

The display can vary depending on the equipment.

Before the next service interval is reached, a key symbol and the kilometres and days remaining until the next service is due are shown for about 10 seconds after the ignition is switched on » Fig. 3.

The kilometre indicator or the days indicator reduces in steps of 100 km or, where applicable, days until the service due date is reached.

Oil change service
An **oil change service** is due if the display shows the number **1** at the point marked by the arrow » Fig. 3.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Oil change in ... km or ... days.

As soon as the due date for the service is reached, a flashing key symbol and the text **OIL CHNG** appears in the display for around 20 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Oil change now!

Inspection
An **inspection** is due if the display shows the number **2** at the point marked by the arrow » Fig. 3.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Inspection in ... km or ... days.

As soon as the due date for the service is reached, a flashing key symbol and the text **INSPEC _**.appears in the display for around 20 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Inspection now!

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval
You can use the button 3 to display the remaining distance and days until the next service interval » Fig. 2 on page 8.

A key symbol and the remaining distance appear in the display for 10 seconds. The days remaining until the next service interval are displayed at the same time.

In vehicles equipped with the information display, this display can be called up from the **Settings** menu » page 16.

The following will be displayed in the information display for 10 seconds:

Oil change ... km / ... days

Inspection ... km / ... days

CAUTION

We recommend that you do not reset the Service Interval Display yourself as this can result in the incorrect setting of the Service Interval Display, which can also cause possible problems with the operation of your vehicle.

Note

- Information is retained in the Service Interval Display even after the vehicle battery is disconnected.
- If the instrument cluster is exchanged after a repair, the correct values must be entered in the counter for the Service Interval Display. This work is carried out by a specialist garage.
- For more information on the service intervals, see » *service schedule*, chapter *service intervals*.

Digital clock

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 8.

The clock is set with the buttons 3 and 7 » Fig. 2 on page 8.

Select the display that you wish to change with the button 3 and carry out the change with the button 7.

In vehicles equipped with the information display, it is also possible to set the clock in the **Time** menu » page 16.

Recommended gear

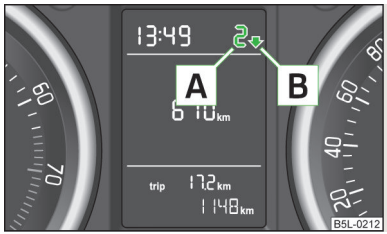

Fig. 4
Recommended gear

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 8.

The currently engaged gear A is shown in the instrument cluster display » Fig. 4.

In order to minimise the fuel consumption, a recommendation for shifting into another gear is indicated in the display.

If the control unit recognises that it is beneficial to change gear, an arrow B is shown in the display. The arrow points up or down, depending on whether you should shift into a higher or lower gear.

In vehicles with **manual transmission**, the recommended gear is displayed at the same time instead of the gear selected A.

CAUTION

The driver is always responsible for selecting the correct gear in different driving situations, such as overtaking.

Multifunction display (onboard computer)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Memory 12
Operation 13
Multifunction display details 13
Warning against excessive speeds 14

The multifunction display can only be operated when the ignition is switched on. After the ignition is switched on, the function displayed is the one which you last selected before switching off the ignition.

The multi-functional indicator appears in the display » Fig. 5 on page 12 or in the information display » page 15 depending on the equipment fitted to your vehicle.

On vehicles with an information display, there is an option to fade out some of the information.

WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.
- Do not only rely upon the information given on the outside temperature display that there is no ice on the road. Even at temperatures around +4 °C, black ice may still be on the road surface – warning, drive with care!

CAUTION

Pull out the ignition key if coming in contact with the display (e.g. when cleaning) to prevent any possible damage.

Note

- In certain national versions the displays appear in the Imperial system of measures.
- If the display of the second speed is activated in mph, the current speed is not indicated in km/h on the display.
- The amount of fuel consumed will not be indicated.

Memory



Fig. 5
Multifunction display

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 12.

The multifunction display is equipped with two automatic memories. The selected memory is shown in the Display » Fig. 5.

The data of the single-trip memory (memory 1) is shown if a **1** appears in the display. A **2** shown in the display means that data relates to the total distance memory (memory 2).

Switching over the memory with the help of the button B » Fig. 6 on page 13 on the windscreen wiper lever or with the help of the adjustment wheel D » Fig. 6 on page 13 on the multifunction steering wheel.

Single-trip memory (memory 1)
The single-trip memory collates the driving information from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. New data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information if the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition. If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**, the memory is automatically erased.

Total-trip memory (memory 2)
The total-trip memory gathers data from any number of individual journeys up to a total of 19 hours and 59 minutes driving or 1 999 kilometres driven, and on vehicles which are fitted with an information display up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes driving or 9 999 kilometres driven. The memory is deleted when either of these limits is reached and the calculation starts all over again.

Unlike the single-trip memory, the total-trip memory is not deleted after a period of interruption of driving of 2 hours.

Note

All information in the memory **1** and **2** is erased if the battery of the vehicle is disconnected.

Operation

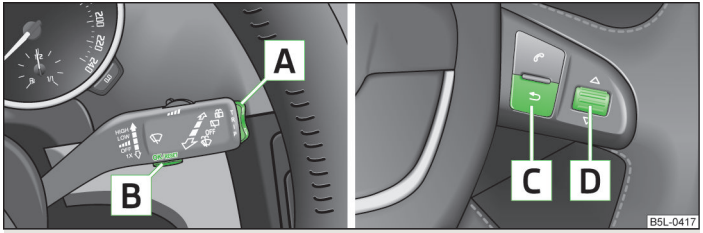

Fig. 6 **Multifunction display: Control elements on the lever/control elements on the multifunction steering wheel**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 12.

The rocker switch A » Fig. 6 and the button B are located on the windscreen wiper lever. Switching over and resetting is performed with the adjustment wheel D on the multifunction steering wheel.

Select memory

› Press the button B » Fig. 6 or the adjustment wheel D briefly.

Selecting functions using the windscreen wiper lever

› Briefly press the rocker switch A » Fig. 6 up or down. This opens the individual functions of the multifunction display one after the other.

Selecting functions using the multifunction steering wheel

› Press the button C » Fig. 6 to open the menu of the multifunction display.
› Turn the adjustment wheel D upwards or downwards. This opens the individual functions of the multifunction display one after the other.

Reseting

› Select the desired memory.
› Press longer on the button B » Fig. 6 or adjustment wheel D.

The following values for the selected memory will be set to zero with the button B or adjustment wheel D:

› Average fuel consumption
› Distance driven
› Average speed
› Driving time

Multifunction display details

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 12.

Outside temperature

The current outside temperature is shown in the display.

If the outside temperature drops below +4 °C, a snow flake symbol (warning signal for ice on the road) appears before the temperature indicator and an audible signal will sound. After pressing the rocker switch A » Fig. 6 on page 13 or the button C, the function shown last is indicated.

Driving time

The driving time which has elapsed since the memory was last erased, appears in the display. If you wish to measure the driving time from a particular time, you need to set the memory to zero at this point in time by pressing the button B » Fig. 6 on page 13 or the adjustment wheel D for more than 1 second.

The maximum time indicated in both memories is 19 hours and 59 minutes and on vehicles which are fitted with an information display, it is 99 hours and 59 minutes. The indicator is set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Current fuel consumption

The current fuel consumption level is shown in the display in litres/100 km[1]. You can use this information to adapt your driving style to the desired fuel consumption.

[1] On some models in certain countries, the display appears in kilometres/litre.

The display appears in litres/hour if the vehicle is stationary or driving at a low speed[1].

Average fuel consumption
The average fuel consumption since the memory was last erased is shown in the display in litres/100 km[2] » page 12.

To determine the average fuel consumption over a certain period of time, set the memory at the start of the new measurement to zero using button B » Fig. 6 on page 13 or with the adjustment wheel D. Dashes appears in the display for the first 100 m you drive after erasing the memory.

The display is updated regularly while you are driving.

Range
The estimated range in kilometres is shown on the display. It indicates the distance you can still drive with your vehicle based on the level of fuel in the tank and the same style of driving.

The display is shown in steps of 10 km. Once the fuel gauge pointer reaches the reserve marking, the range is displayed in 5 km.

The fuel consumption over the last 50 km is used to calculate the range. The range will increase if you drive in a more economical manner.

If the memory is set to zero (after disconnecting the battery), the fuel consumption of 10 ltr./100 km is calculated for the range; afterwards the value is adapted accordingly to the style of driving.

Distance travelled
The distance driven since the memory was last erased appears in the display » page 12. If you wish to measure the distance travelled from a particular point in time, you need to set the memory to zero at this point in time by pressing the button B » Fig. 6 on page 13 or the adjustment wheel D.

The maximum distance indicated in both memories is 1 999 km or 9 999 km on vehicles with an information display. The indicator is set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Average speed
The average speed since the memory was last erased is shown in the display in km/hour » page 12. If you wish to determine the average speed over a certain period of time, you need to set the memory to zero at the start of the measurement using the button B » Fig. 6 on page 13 or the adjustment wheel D.

A zero appears in the display for the first approx. 300 m you drive after erasing the memory.

The display is updated regularly while you are driving.

Current speed
The current speed which is identical to the display of the speedometer 2 » Fig. 2 on page 8 is indicated on the display.

Oil temperature
If the oil temperature is lower than 50 °C or if a fault in the system for checking the oil temperature is present, only - -.- is displayed instead of the oil temperature.

Warning against excessive speeds

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 12.

Adjust the speed limit while the vehicle is stationary
› Press button A » Fig. 6 on page 13 or turn adjustment wheel D to select menu item **Speed warn.**
› Press the button B » Fig. 6 on page 13 or the adjustment wheel D to activate the ability to set the speed limit (value flashes).
› Press button A or turn adjustment wheel D to set the desired speed limit, e.g. 50 km/h.
› Use the button B or the adjustment wheel D to confirm the set speed limit, or wait approx. 5 seconds and the setting is saved automatically (the value stops flashing).

This allows you to set the speed in 5 km/h intervals.

[1] On some models in certain countries, the display appears in --,- kilometres/litres if the vehicle is stationary.
[2] On some models in certain countries, the display appears in kilometres/litre.

Adjusting the speed limit while the vehicle is moving

› Press button A » Fig. 6 on page 13 or turn adjustment wheel D to select menu item **Speed warn.**
› Drive at the desired speed, e.g. 50 km/h.
› Press the button B or the adjustment wheel D to accept the current speed as the speed limit (the value flashes).

If you wish to change the set speed limit, it is changed in 5 km/h intervals (e.g. the accepted speed of 47 km/h increases to 50 km/h or decreases to 45 km/h).

› Press again the button B or the adjustment wheel D to confirm the speed limit, or wait approx. 5 seconds and the setting is saved automatically (the value stops flashing).

Change or delete speed limit

› Press button A » Fig. 6 on page 13 or turn adjustment wheel D to select menu item **Speed warn.**
› Pressing the button B or the adjustment wheel D deletes the speed limit.
› Pressing the button B or the adjustment wheel D again activates change mode for the speed limit.

If the set speed limit is exceeded, an audible signal will sound as a warning. At the same time, the **Speed warning** message appears in the display with the set speed limit.

The set speed limit value remains stored even after switching off the ignition.

MAXI DOT (information display)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Main menu 15
Settings 16
Door, boot lid and bonnet warning 17
Auto check control 17

The information display provides you with information on the **current operating state of your vehicle**. The information system also provides you with data (depending on the equipment installed in the vehicle) relating to the radio, mobile phone, multi-functional indicator, navigation system, the unit connected to the MDI input and the automatic gearbox » page 121.

WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

CAUTION

Pull out the ignition key if coming in contact with the display (e.g. when cleaning) to prevent any possible damage.

Main menu

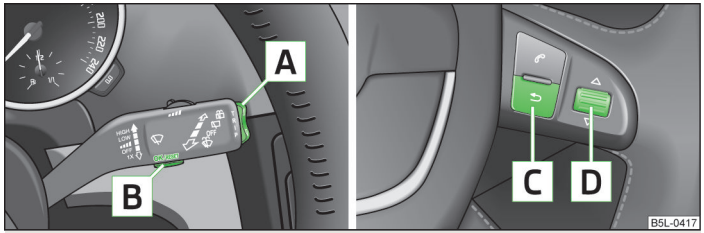

Fig. 7 **Information display: Control elements on the lever/control elements on the multifunction steering wheel**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 15.

Operating with the buttons on the windscreen wiper lever

› Press and hold rocker switch A » Fig. 7 to activate the **MAIN MENU**.
› Individual menu items can be selected by means of the rocker switch A. When the pushbutton B is briefly pressed, the information you have selected is displayed.

Operating with the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel

› Press and hold button C » Fig. 7 to activate the **MAIN MENU**.
› By briefly pressing the C button you will reach one level higher.
› The individual menus can be selected by pressing the adjustment wheel D. The selected menu is displayed after briefly pressing the adjustment wheel D.

The following information can be selected (depending on the equipment installed on the vehicle):
- **MFD** » page 12
- **Audio** » *Operating instructions for the radio*
- **Navigation** » *Operating instructions for the navigation system*
- **Phone** » page 98;
- **Aux. heating** » page 94
- **Assistants** » page 44 » page 148
- **Vehicle status** » page 17
- **Settings** » page 16

The **Audio** and **Navigation** menu items are only displayed when the factory-fitted radio or navigation system is switched on.

The **Aux. heating** menu item is only displayed if the vehicle is equipped with factory-fitted auxiliary heating.

The **Assistants** menu item is only displayed if the vehicle is fitted with cornering lights or fatigue detection.

Note

- If warning messages are shown in the information display, these messages must be confirmed with the button B on the windscreen wiper lever or with the adjustment wheel D on the multifunction steering wheel to call up the main menu.
- If the information display is not activated at that moment, the menu always shifts to one of the higher levels after approx. 10 seconds.
- The operation of the factory-fitted radio or navigation system is described in separate operating instructions to be found in the on-board literature.

Settings

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 15.

You can change certain settings by means of the information display. The current setting is shown on the information display in the respective menu at the top below the line.

The following information can be selected (depending on the equipment installed on the vehicle):

- **Language**
- **MFD displays**
- **Comfort**
- **Lights and visibility**
- **Time**
- **Winter tyres**
- **Units of measurement**
- **Assistants**
- **Alt. speed dis.**
- **Service**
- **Factory setting**
- **Back**

Select the **Back** menu item to return to one level higher in the menu.

Language
You can set the language for the warning and information texts here.

MFD displays
Activate or deactivate certain displays of the multifunction display here.

Comfort
The following functions can be activated, deactivated or adjusted here:

Rain closing	Switch on/off the function for automatically closing the window and panoramic tilt/slide sunroof in a locked vehicle when it starts raining[a]. If the function is set and it is not raining, the windows including the panoramic tilt/slide sunroof will close automatically after approx. 12 hours.
ATA confirm	Switch on/off the audible signal indicating activation of the anti-theft alarm system.
Central locking	Switch on/off the central locking and automatic locking function.
Window op.	Only convenience mode for the driver window or for all of the windows can be adjusted here.
Mirror down	Switch on/off the function for mirror lowering on the front passenger side when engaging the reverse gear[b].

Mirror adjust.	Switch on/off the function for left and right exterior mirror setting simultaneously.
Factory setting	Restore the Convenience factory setting.

a) This function is only available on vehicles with a rain sensor.
b) This function is only available on vehicles with an electrically adjustable driver seat.

Lights and visibility
The following functions can be activated, deactivated or adjusted here:

Coming Home	Switch on/off and adjust the light duration of the Coming Home function.
Leaving Home	Switch on/off and adjust the light duration of the Coming Home function.
Daytime running lights	Switch on/off the "DAY LIGHT" function.
Rear wiper	Switch on/off the function for automatic rear window wiping.
Lane ch. flash	Switch on/off the convenience flashing function.
Travel mode	Switch on/off the travel model function.
Factory setting	Restore the factory setting for the lighting.

Time
The time, time format (12 or 24 hour indicator) and the changeover between summer/winter time can be set here.

Winter tyres
Here, you can set the speed at which an audible signal should sound. This function is, for example, used for winter tyres where the maximum permissible speed is lower than the maximum speed of the vehicle.

When exceeding the speed, the following is shown on the information display:

Winter tyres: max. speed ... km/h.

Units of measurement
The units for the temperature, consumption and distance driven can be set here.

Assistants
The tones of the audible signals for the parking aid can be adjusted here.

Alt. speed dis.
The display of the second speed in mph or in km/h can be switched on here.

Service
Here you can have the remaining kilometres and days until the next service interval displayed, and reset the Service Interval Display.

Factory setting
The information display is returned to its factory settings by selecting the **Factory setting** menu.

Door, boot lid and bonnet warning

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 15.

If at least one door is open, or the boot or bonnet is open, the information display indicates the relevant **open** door or boot/bonnet.

An audible signal also sounds if the vehicle is travelling at more than 6 km/h.

Auto check control

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 15.

Vehicle condition
Certain functions and conditions of individual vehicle systems are checked continuously when the ignition is switched on and also while driving.

Some error messages and other information are displayed in the information display. The messages are displayed simultaneously with the symbols in the information display or with the warning lights in the instrument cluster » page 18.

The **Vehicle status** menu item is displayed in the menu if there is at least one error message. After selecting this menu the first of the error messages is displayed. Several error messages are shown on the display under the message e.g. **1/3**. This indicates that the first of a total of three error messages is being displayed.

Warning symbols

	Engine oil pressure too low	» page 21
	Clutches of the automatic gearbox DSG are too hot	» page 18

	Check engine oil level, engine oil sensor faulty	» page 197
	Problem with engine oil pressure	» page 18

Clutches of the automatic gearbox are too hot
A symbol in the information display indicates that the temperature of the clutches of the automatic gearbox is too high.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Gearbox overheated. Stop! Owner's manual!

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and wait until the symbol disappears - risk of gearbox damage! You can continue your journey as soon as the symbol disappears.

Problem with the engine oil pressure
If the symbol is shown in the information display, you must have your vehicle checked immediately by a specialist garage. The information about the maximum permissible engine speed is displayed together with this symbol.

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 46.

Note

▪ If warning messages are shown in the information display, these messages must be confirmed with the button B or with the adjustment wheel D » Fig. 7 on page 15 to open the main menu.
▪ As long as the operational faults are not rectified, the symbols are always indicated again. After they are displayed for the first time, the symbols continue to be indicated without any extra messages for the driver.

Warning lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Handbrake 19
Braking system 19
Seat belt warning light 19
Generator 19
Open door 20
Coolant temperature/coolant level 20
Boot lid 20
Electromechanical power steering 21
Engine oil 21
Traction Control System (ASR) 21
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 22
Traction control (ASR) switched off 22
Antilock brake system (ABS) 22
Rear fog lights 22
Bulb failure 22
Exhaust inspection system 23
Glow plug system (diesel engine) 23
EPC fault light (petrol engine) 23
Diesel particulate filter (diesel engine) 23
Fuel reserve 24
Airbag system 24
Tyre control display 24
Windscreen washer fluid level 25
Turn signal system 25
Fog lights 25
Cruise control system 25
Selector lever lock 25
Downhill Drive Support 25
Main beam 25

The indicator lights show certain functions/faults and may be accompanied by audible signals.

WARNING

- If illuminated indicator lights and the corresponding descriptions and warning notes are not observed, this may result in severe injuries or major vehicle damage.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. There is a risk of injuries, scalding, accidents and fire when working in the engine compartment, e.g. inspecting and replenishing oil and other fluids. It is essential to observe safety notes » page 192, *Engine compartment*.

Handbrake

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 18.

The indicator light (P) comes on if the handbrake is applied. An audible warning is also given if you drive the vehicle for at least 3 seconds at a speed of more than 6 km/h.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Release parking brake!

Braking system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 18.

The indicator light (!) illuminates if the brake fluid level is too low or there is a fault in the ABS.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Brake fluid: Owner's manual!

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the brake fluid » page 200.

WARNING

- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 46.
- The following guidelines should be observed when opening the bonnet and checking the brake fluid level » page 192, *Engine compartment*.
- If the warning light (!) is displayed together with warning light (ABS) » page 22, (ABS) *Antilock brake system (ABS)*, (STOP) **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the braking system or the ABS system can increase the vehicle's braking distance - risk of accident!

Seat belt warning light

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 18.

The indicator light comes on after the ignition is switched on as a reminder for the driver and front passenger to fasten the seat belt. The indicator light only goes out if the driver or front passenger has fastened his seat belt.

If the seat belt has not been fastened by the driver or front passenger, a permanent warning signal sounds at vehicle speeds greater than 20 km/h and simultaneously the indicator light flashes.

If the seat belt is not fastened by the driver or front passenger during the next 90 seconds, the warning signal is deactivated and the indicator light lights up permanently.

Generator

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 18.

If the indicator light lights up when the engine is running, the vehicle battery is not being charged.

Seek help from a specialist garage. The electrical system requires checking.

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 46.

CAUTION

If the indicator light (cooling system fault) comes on in addition to the indicator light when driving, stop the vehicle immediately and switch the engine off - risk of engine damage!

Open door

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 18.

The indicator light comes on, if one or several doors are opened.

The warning light comes on even when the ignition is switched off. The warning light lights up for a maximum of 5 minutes.

In vehicles with an information display, this warning light is replaced by a vehicle symbol » page 17.

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 46.

Coolant temperature/coolant level

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 18.

If the indicator light lights up or flashes, either the coolant temperature is too high or the coolant level is too low.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Check coolant! Owner's manual!

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, check the level of the coolant » page 199, and refill the coolant if necessary » page 199.

If the coolant is within the specified range, the increased temperature may be caused by an operating problem at the radiator fan. Check the fuse for the radiator fan, replace if necessary » page 227.

Do not continue driving if the warning light does not go off even though the coolant level is correct and the fuse for the fan is in working order!

Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 46.
- Carefully open the coolant expansion bottle. If the engine is hot, the cooling system is pressurized - risk of scalding! It is therefore best to allow the engine to cool down before removing the cap.
- Do not touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan may switch itself on automatically even if the ignition is off.

Boot lid

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 18.

The indicator light comes on if the boot lid is opened.

The warning light comes on even when the ignition is switched off. The warning light lights up for a maximum of 5 minutes.

In vehicles with an information display, this warning light is replaced by a vehicle symbol » page 17.

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 46.

Electromechanical power steering

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 18.

If the indicator light lights up, this indicates a partial failure of the power steering and the steering forces can be greater. Seek help from a specialist garage.

If the indicator light lights up, this indicates a complete failure of the power steering and the steering assist has failed (significantly higher steering forces). Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 46.

Note

If the vehicle battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the yellow indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition. The indicator light must go out after driving a short distance. Visit a specialist garage if the yellow indicator light does not go out after starting the engine again and driving a short distance.

Engine oil

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 18.

The warning light lights up red (low oil pressure)
The following is displayed in the information display:

Oil pressure: Owner's manual!

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the engine oil » page 197.

If the indicator light is flashing **do not drive any further** even if the oil level is correct. Also do not leave the engine running at an idling speed.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

The warning light lights up yellow (oil quantity too low)
The following is displayed in the information display:

Check oil level!

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the engine oil » page 197.

The indicator light will go out if the bonnet is left open for more than 30 seconds. If no engine oil has been replenished, the indicator light will come on again after driving about 100 km.

The warning light flashes yellow (engine oil level sensor faulty)
The following is displayed in the information display:

Oil sensor: Workshop!

If the engine oil level sensor is faulty, the indicator light flashes several times and an audible signal sounds when the ignition is turned on.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 46.

Traction Control System (ASR)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 18.

The indicator light flashes to show that the ASR is currently operating.

If the indicator light comes on immediately after starting the engine, the ASR can be switched off for technical reasons. Switch the ignition off and on again. If the indicator light does not light up after you switch the engine back on, the ASR is fully functional again.

If the indicator light lights up, there is a fault in the ASR.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Error: Traction control (TCS)

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Further information » page 138, *Traction Control System (TCS)*.

Note

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition. The indicator light must go out after driving a short distance.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 18.

The indicator light flashes to show that the ESC is currently operating.

If the indicator light comes on immediately after you start the engine, the ESC might be switched off due to technical reasons. Switch the ignition off and on again. If the indicator light does not light up after you switch the engine back on, the ESR is fully functional again.

If the indicator light lights up, there is a fault in the ESC.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Error: Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Further information » page 137, *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)*.

Note

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition. The indicator light must go out after driving a short distance.

Traction control (ASR) switched off

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 18.

The TCS is switched off by pressing the button » page 138, *Traction Control System (TCS)* and the warning light illuminates.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Traction control (ASR) deactivated.

Antilock brake system (ABS)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 18.

If the indicator light lights up, there is a fault in the ABS.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Error: ABS

The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system without the ABS.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 46.
- If the warning light » page 19 is displayed together with warning light , **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance - risk of accident!

Rear fog lights

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 18.

The warning light comes on when the rear fog lights are operating » page 45.

Bulb failure

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 18.

The indicator light comes on if a bulb is faulty:
› within a few seconds of the ignition being switched on;
› when switching on the defective light bulb.

The following is displayed in the information display:

INFORMATION Check front right low beam!

Exhaust inspection system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 18.

If the indicator light lights up, there is a fault in the exhaust inspection system. The engine control unit allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Glow plug system (diesel engine)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 18.

The indicator light comes on after the ignition has been switched on. The engine can be started immediately after the pre-glow indicator light goes out.

There is a fault in the glow plug system if the indicator light **does not** come on at all or **lights up continuously**.

If the indicator light begins to **flash** while driving, a fault exists in the engine control. The engine control unit allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

EPC fault light (petrol engine)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 18.

If the indicator light EPC lights up, there is a fault in the engine control. The engine control unit allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Diesel particulate filter (diesel engine)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 18.

The diesel particulate filter separates the soot particles from the exhaust. The soot particles collect in the diesel particulate filter where they are burnt on a regular basis.

If the indicator light lights up, soot has accumulated in the diesel particulate filter.

In order to clean the diesel particulate filter, and where traffic conditions permit », !, the vehicle should be driven at an even speed of at least 60 km/h, with engine speeds of 1800-2500 rpm and with the 4th or 5th gear engaged (automatic gearbox: position S) for at least 15 minutes or until the warning light goes out.

The indicator light only goes out after the diesel particulate filter has been successfully cleaned.

If the filter is not properly cleaned, the indicator light does not go out and the indicator light begins to flash.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Diesel particulate filter: Owner's manual!

The engine control unit allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode. After switching the ignition off and on again the indicator light, the indicator light also lights up.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

- The diesel particle filter achieves very high temperatures. Therefore do not park in areas where the hot filter can come into direct contact with dry grass or other combustible materials - risk of fire!
- Always adjust your speed to suit weather, road, region and traffic conditions. The recommendations indicated by the indicator light must not tempt you to disregard the national regulations for road traffic.

CAUTION

As long as the indicator light lights up, one must take into account an increased fuel consumption and in certain circumstances a power reduction of the engine.

Note

- To assist the combustion process of the soot particles, we recommend that regularly driving over short distances should be avoided.
- Using diesel fuel with an increased sulphur content can considerably reduce the life of the diesel particle filter. A ŠKODA service partner will be able to tell you which countries use diesel fuel with a high sulphur content.
- If the engine is turned off during the filter cleaning process or shortly afterwards, the cooling fan may turn on automatically for a few minutes.

Fuel reserve

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 18.

The indicator light will come on if the fuel level is less than 10.5 litres.

An audible signal sounds as a warning signal.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Please refuel. Range: ... km

Note

The text in the information display goes out only after refuelling and driving a short distance.

Airbag system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 18.

If the indicator light lights up, there is a fault in the airbag system.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Error: Airbag

The operational capability of the airbag system is monitored electronically, including when one of the airbags is switched off.

If a front, side or head airbag or belt tensioner has been switched off using the vehicle system tester:

› The warning light lights up for around 4 seconds after switching on the ignition and then flashes approximately another 12 seconds in 2 second intervals.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Airbag/belt tensioner deactivated.

If the airbag has been deactivated using the key switch in the storage compartment:

› The indicator light comes on for around 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.

› Switched off airbags are indicated in the middle of the dash panel by the indicator light OFF in the display PASSENGER AIR BAG coming on » page 173.

WARNING

If there is a fault, have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialist garage. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.

Tyre control display

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 18.

The indicator light lights up, if there is a substantial drop in inflation pressure in one of the tyres. Check and adjust the pressure in all tyres » page 206.

An audible signal sounds as a warning signal.

If the indicator light lights up, there is a fault in the system.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Further information » page 208, *Tyre pressure monitor*.

Note

If the battery has been disconnected, the indicator light illuminates after the ignition is switched on. The indicator light must go out after driving a short distance.

Windscreen washer fluid level

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 18.

If the windscreen washer fluid level is too low, the indicator light comes on. Top up with liquid » page 199.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Top up wash fluid!

Turn signal system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 18.

Either the left or right indicator light flashes depending on the position of the turn signal lever.

If a turn signal light fails, the indicator light flashes at twice its normal rate. This does not apply when towing a trailer.

Switching off the hazard indicator light system is switched on will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both indicator lights to flash.

Further information » page 43.

Fog lights

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 18.

The indicator light comes on when the fog lights are operating » page 45.

Cruise control system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 18.

The indicator light comes on when the cruise control is operating » page 145.

Selector lever lock

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 18.

If the indicator light lights up, operate the brake pedal. This is necessary, to be able to move the selector lever from position **P** or **N** » page 124.

Downhill Drive Support

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 18.

The warning light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

The warning light comes on when the speed of the car is less than 30 km/h and after pressing the OFF ROAD button » page 139.

The warning light flashes when the Downhill Drive Support actively intervenes.

If your vehicle exceeds the speed of 30 km/h, Downhill Drive Support is deactivated. The warning light goes out. If the speed is subsequently reduced below 30 km/h, the Downhill Drive Support is activated. The warning light comes on.

The Downhill Drive Support is activated again when the engine is switched off and the car is restarted within 30 seconds.

The Downhill Drive Support is deactivated after switching off the ignition.

In the event of a fault, the warning light does not come on when the speed of the car is less than 30 km/h and after pressing the OFF ROAD button.

Further information » page 139, *OFF ROADmode*.

Main beam

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 18.

The indicator light comes on when the main beam or headlight flasher are selected » page 43.

Unlocking and locking

Unlocking and locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle key ____ 26
Replacing the battery in the remote control key ____ 27
Child safety lock ____ 27
Opening/closing a door ____ 28
Emergency locking of the doors ____ 28

Vehicle key

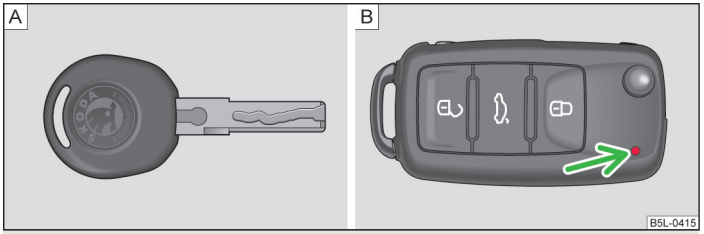

Fig. 8 **Key without remote control/key with remote control (remote control key)**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 26.

Two keys are provided with the vehicle. Depending on the equipment, your vehicle can be equipped with keys without radio remote control » Fig. 8 - A or with radio remote control» Fig. 8 - B.

WARNING

- Always withdraw the key whenever you leave the vehicle - even if it is only for a short time. This is particularly important if children are left in the vehicle. Otherwise, the children might start the engine or operate electrical equipment (e.g. power windows) – risk of injury!
- Do not withdraw the ignition key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a stop. The steering lock might otherwise engage unintentionally – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore it must be protected against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the groove of the keys absolutely clean. Impurities (textile fibres, dust, etc.) have a negative effect on the functionality of the locking cylinder and ignition lock.
- The operation of the remote control may temporarily be affected by interference from transmitters close to the car and which operate in the same frequency range (e.g. mobile phone, TV transmitter).
- The battery must be replaced if the central locking does react to the remote control at less than around 3 metres away » page 27.

Note

If you lose a key, please contact a specialist garage, who will be able to provide you with a new one.

Replacing the battery in the remote control key

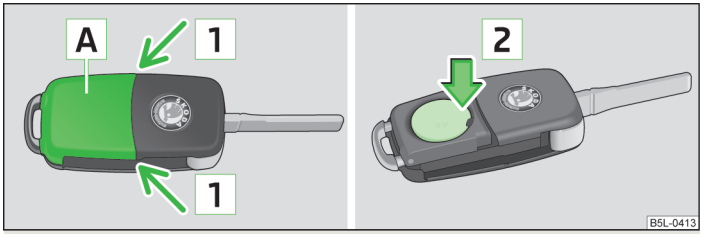

Fig. 9 **Remote control key: Remove cover/remove battery**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 26.

Each remote control key contains a battery that is located under the cover A » Fig. 9. The battery needs replacing if red indicator light » Fig. 8 on page 26 - B does not go on when you press a button on the remote control key. We recommend having the key batteries replaced by a specialist garage. However, if you would like to replace the discharged battery yourself proceed as follows.

› Flip out the key.
› Press off the battery cover with your thumb or using a flat screwdriver in the region of arrows 1 » Fig. 9.
› Remove the discharged battery from the key by pressing the battery downwards in the region of arrow 2.
› Insert the new battery. Ensure that the "+" symbol on the battery is facing upwards. The correct polarity is shown on the battery cover.
› Place the battery cover on the key and press it down until it clicks into place.

CAUTION

- Pay attention to the correct polarity when changing the battery.
- The replacement battery must have the same specification as the original battery.

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of the used battery in accordance with national legal provisions.

Note

- The system has to be synchronised, if the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control key after replacing the battery » page 32.
- If a key has an affixed decorative cover, this will be destroyed when the battery is replaced. A replacement cover can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Child safety lock

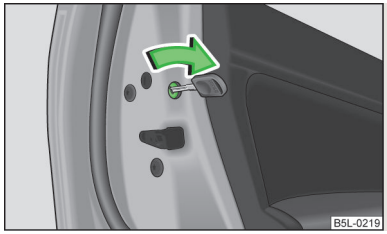

Fig. 10
Child safety locks on the rear doors

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 26.

The child safety lock prevents the rear door from being opened from the inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

You can switch the child safety lock on and off using the vehicle key.

Switching on
› Use the vehicle key to turn the slit in the rear door in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 10.

Switching off
› Use the vehicle key to turn the slit to the right in the opposite direction to the arrow.

Opening/closing a door

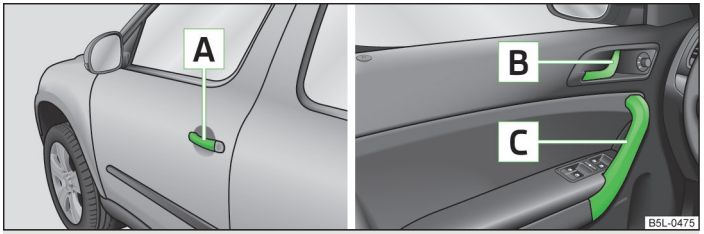

Fig. 11 **Door handle/door opening lever:**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 26.

Opening from the outside

› Unlock the vehicle and pull on door handle A » Fig. 11 on the door you wish to open.

Opening from the inside

› Pull on door opening lever B on the door you wish to open.

Closing from the inside

› Grasp pull handle C and close the door.

Emergency locking of the doors

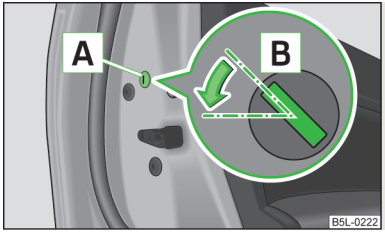

Fig. 12
Rear door: Emergency locking of the door

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 26.

An emergency locking mechanism is located on the front of the doors that have no locking cylinder; this mechanism is only visible after opening the door.

› Remove the panel A » Fig. 12.
› Insert the key into the slot B and turn it into the horizontal position in the direction of the arrow (mirror-inverted on the right doors).
› Replace the cover.

After closing the door, it no longer be opened from the outside. The door can be unlocked from the inside by pulling on the door handle again, and then opened from the outside.

Central locking system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Individual settings 29
Safe securing system 29
Unlocking the vehicle using the key 30
Locking the vehicle with the key 30
Vehicle locking/unlocking from the inside 31

When using the central locking and unlocking system, **all** the doors and the fuel filler flap are locked or unlocked at the same time (unless set differently in the **Settings** - **Convenience**menu item on the information display). The boot lid is unlocked when opening. It can be opened by pressing the handle above the licence plate » page 34, *Opening/closing*.

Indicator light in the driver's door

After locking the vehicle, the indicator light flashes for around 2 seconds in quick succession, afterwards it begins to flash evenly at longer intervals.

If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system » page 29 is not operating, the indicator light in the driver door flashes for about 2 seconds fast, goes out and starts to flash evenly at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

If the indicator light first flashes fast for about 2 seconds, then lights up for about 30 seconds continuously and then flashes slowly, there is a fault in the central locking system or in the interior monitor and in the towing protection » page 33. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Convenience operation of windows
The windows can be opened and closed when unlocking and locking the vehicle » page 37.

WARNING

- Locked doors prevent unwanted entry into the vehicle from outside, for example at road crossings.
- The central locking system also operates if the ignition is switched off. Children should never be left unattended in the vehicle since it is difficult to provide assistance from the outside when the doors are locked. Doors locked from the inside make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

CAUTION

If the safe securing system is activated» page 29, the door opening lever and the central locking buttons do not operate.

Note

- If required, you can have the individual settings activated by a specialist garage or you can activate them yourself using the information display » page 16, *Settings*.
- In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.
- If the central locking fails, only the driver's door can be locked or unlocked using the key. The other doors and the luggage compartment can be locked or unlocked manually.
  - Emergency locking of the door » page 28.
  - Emergency unlocking of the boot lid » page 35.

Individual settings

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 28.

Opening a single door
This selection function makes it possible to only unlock the driver's door. The other doors and the fuel filler flap remain locked and are only unlocked after being opened again.

Unlocking a vehicle side door
This selection function enables to unlock both doors on the driver's side. The other doors and the fuel filler flap remain locked and are only unlocked after being opened again.

Automatic locking and unlocking
All the doors and the boot lid are locked automatically once the car reaches a speed of about 15 km/h.

If the ignition key is withdrawn, the car is then automatically unlocked again. In addition, it is possible for the driver or front passenger to unlock the car by pressing the central locking button » page 31.

The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever of the respective door.

Safe securing system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 28.

The central locking system is equipped with a **safe securing system**. The door locks are blocked automatically if the vehicle is locked from the outside. The indicator light flashes for around 2 seconds in quick succession, afterwards it begins to flash evenly at longer intervals. It is not possible to open the doors with the door handle either from the inside or from the outside. This acts as an effective deterrent for attempts to break into your vehicle.

The safe securing system can be deactivated within 2 seconds by double locking the vehicle.

If the safe securing system is not operating, the warning light in the driver door flashes for about 2 seconds fast, goes out and starts to flash evenly at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

The safe securing system is activated again the next time the vehicle is unlocked and locked.

If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system is deactivated, the door can be opened from the inside by a single pull on opening lever of the respective door.

WARNING

If the vehicle is locked from the outside and the safe securing system is activated, there must not be any person in the vehicle as it is then no longer possible to open either a door or a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

Note

- The anti-theft alarm system is activated when the vehicle is locked even if the safe securing system is deactivated. The interior monitor is however not activated.
- You will be informed that the safe securing system has been activated after the vehicle has been locked by means of the message **CHECK DEADLOCK** on the instrument cluster display. In vehicles that are equipped with an information display, the **CHECK DEADLOCK! Owner's manual!**

Unlocking the vehicle using the key

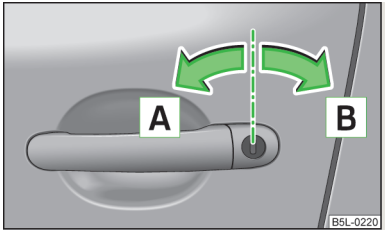

Fig. 13
Turning the key for unlocking and locking the vehicle

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 28.

› Turn the key in the driver's door locking cylinder in the direction of travel (unlocking position) A » Fig. 13.
› Pull the door handle and open the door.

› All the doors and the fuel filler flap are unlocked.
› The boot lid is then unlocked.
› The switched on interior lights come on over the door contact.
› The safe securing system is deactivated.
› The windows open while the key **is held** in the unlock position.
› The indicator light in the driver door stops flashing if the car is not fitted with an anti-theft alarm system » page 33.

Note

If the vehicle is equipped with an anti-theft alarm system, you must insert the key into the ignition lock and switch the ignition on within 15 seconds after unlocking the door in order to deactivate the anti-theft alarm system. The **alarm is triggered** if the ignition is **not switched on** within 15 seconds.

Locking the vehicle with the key

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 28.

› Turn the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the opposite direction of travel (lock position) B » Fig. 13 on page 30.

› The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are locked.
› The switched on interior lights will switch off over the door contact.
› The windows and the electric sliding/tilting roof close while the key is **held** in the lock position.
› The safe securing system is immediately activated.
› The indicator light in the driver door begins flashing.

Note

If the driver's door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

Vehicle locking/unlocking from the inside

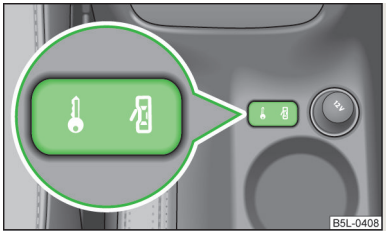

Fig. 14
Centre console: Central locking button

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 28.

If the vehicle was not locked from the outside, you can also unlock and lock it with the rocker switch » Fig. 14 without the ignition switched on.

Locking all doors and the boot lid

› Press the button in the area 🔒 » Fig. 14. The symbol 🔒 in the button comes on.

Unlocking all doors and the boot lid

› Press the button in the area 🔓 » Fig. 14. The symbol 🔒 in the button is no longer illuminated.

The following applies if your vehicle has been locked using the central locking button.

› It is not possible to open the doors or the boot lid from the outside (safety feature, e.g. when stopping at traffic lights etc.).
› The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever of the respective door.
› If at least one door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.
› In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked from the inside in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.

The central locking button can be used to control the convenience opening and closing of the windows » page 37.

Remote control

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unlocking/locking 32
Synchronisation 32

You can use the remote control key to:

› unlock and lock the vehicle,
› unlocking boot lid;
› open and close the windows » page 37, *Window convenience operation*.

The transmitter with the battery is housed in the handle of the remote control key. The receiver is located in the interior of the vehicle. The operating range of the remote control key is approx. 30 m. But this range of the remote control can be reduced if the batteries are weak.

The key has a fold-open key bit which can be used for unlocking and locking the car manually and also for starting the engine.

If a lost key is replaced or if the receiver unit has been repaired or replaced, the system must be initialised by a specialist garage. Only then can the remote control key be used again.

Note

- The remote control is automatically deactivated when the ignition is switched on.
- The operation of the remote control may temporarily be affected by interference from transmitters close to the car and which operate in the same frequency range (e.g. mobile phone, TV transmitter).
- The battery must be replaced if the central locking or anti-theft alarm system does react to the remote control at less than 3 metres away » page 27.
- If the driver door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked using the remote control key.

Unlocking/locking

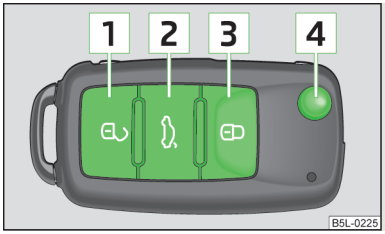

Fig. 15
Remote control key

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 31.

Unlocking the vehicle
› Press the button 1 » Fig. 15.

Locking the vehicle
› Press the button 3 » Fig. 15.

Deactivating the safe securing system
› Press the button 3 » Fig. 15 twice within 2 seconds. Further information » page 29.

Unlocking the boot lid
› Press the button 2 » Fig. 15. Further information » page 34, *Opening/closing*.

Folding out the key bit
› Press the button 4 » Fig. 15.

Folding in the key bit
› Press the button 4 » Fig. 15 and fold in the key bit.

Unlocking
The turn signal lights flash twice as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked. If the vehicle is unlocked using button 1 » Fig. 15 and none of the doors or the boot lid are opened within the next 30 seconds, the vehicle is automatically locked again and the safe securing system or anti-theft alarm system is reactivated. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

In addition, when the car is unlocked, the electrically adjustable seats and exterior mirrors move into the position assigned to this key. The stored setting of driver seat and exterior mirrors is retrieved.

Locking
The turn signal lights flash once to confirm that the vehicle has been correctly locked.

If the doors or the boot lid remain open after the vehicle has been locked, the turn signal lights do not flash until they have been closed.

WARNING

If the car is locked from the outside and the safe securing system is activated, there must not be any person in the car as it is then not possible to open either a door or a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

Note

Only operate the remote control when the doors and boot lid are closed and the vehicle is in your line of sight.

Synchronisation

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 31.

If the vehicle cannot be unlocked by actuating the remote control system then it is possible that the code in the key and the control unit in the vehicle are no longer synchronised. This can occur when the buttons on the radio-operated key are actuated a number of times outside of the operative range of the equipment or the battery on the remote control was replaced.

This means it is necessary to synchronise the code as follows:
› press any button on the remote control key;
› pressing of the button means that the door will unlock with the key within 1 minute.

Anti-theft alarm system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 33
Interior monitor and towing protection 33

The anti-theft alarm system increases the level of protection against people seeking to break into the vehicle. The system triggers audible and visual warning signals if an attempt is made to break into the vehicle.

Note

- The working life of the alarm siren is 5 years.
- Before leaving the vehicle, it must be checked that all of the windows, doors and the sliding/tilting roof are locked in order to ensure the full functionality of the anti-theft alarm system.
- Coding of the radio remote control and the receiver unit precludes the use of the radio remote control from other vehicles.

Operation

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 33.

How is the alarm system activated?
The anti-theft alarm system is activated when the vehicle is locked with the radio remote control or the key in the driver's door . It is activated 30 seconds after locking the door.

How is the alarm system deactivated?
The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated by pressing the symbol button on the radio remote control. The anti-theft alarm system is reactivated if the vehicle is not opened within 30 seconds after transmitting the radio signal.

The alarm system is also deactivated if you unlock the driver door using the key within 45 seconds of locking the vehicle.

If the vehicle is unlocked by inserting the key into the driver door, the key must be inserted into the ignition lock and the ignition switched on within 15 seconds of unlocking the door to deactivate the alarm system. The **alarm is triggered** if the ignition is **not switched on** within 15 seconds.

When is the alarm triggered?

The following security areas of the locked vehicle are monitored:
- bonnet;
- boot lid;
- doors;
- ignition lock;
- Vehicle inclination » page 33;
- Interior of the vehicle » page 33;
- A drop in voltage of the on-board power supply;
- Socket of the factory-fitted towing device.

An alarm is immediately triggered if either of the two battery terminals is disconnected while the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

How is the alarm switched off?
The alarm is turned off by pressing the symbol button on the radio remote control key or switching on the ignition.

Interior monitor and towing protection

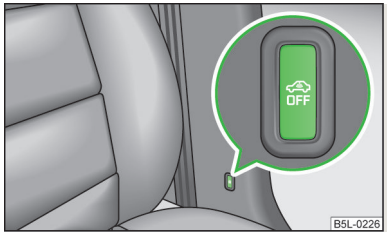

Fig. 16
Button for interior monitor and towing protection

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 33.

The interior monitor detects movements inside the car and then triggers the alarm.

Switching off

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the driver door.
› Press the symbol » Fig. 16 symbol button on the centre column on the driver's side; the symbol that lights up in the button changes from red to orange.
› Lock the vehicle within 30 seconds.

The interior monitor and the towing protection are switched on again automatically the next time the car is locked.

Note

- Switch off the interior monitor and the towing protection if there is a possibility of the alarm being triggered by movements from (e.g. children or animals) within the vehicle interior or if the vehicle has to be transported (e.g. by train or ship) or towed.
- The opened glasses storage compartment reduces the effectiveness of the interior monitor. To ensure the full functionality of the interior monitor, the glasses storage compartment must always be closed before locking the vehicle.

Boot lid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening/closing 34
Automatic locking 34
Emergency unlocking 35

WARNING

- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the boot lid. Otherwise, the boot lid might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving, even it was locked – risk of accident!
- Never drive with the boot lid open or ajar, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Do not press on the rear window when closing the boot lid, it could crack - risk of injury!

Note

- **After closing the boot lid, it is automatically locked within 1 second and the anti-theft alarm system is activated.** This applies only if the vehicle was locked before closing the boot lid.
- The function of the handle above the licence plate is deactivated when starting off or at a speed of 5 km/hour or more for vehicles with central locking. The function of the handle is activated again when the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

Opening/closing

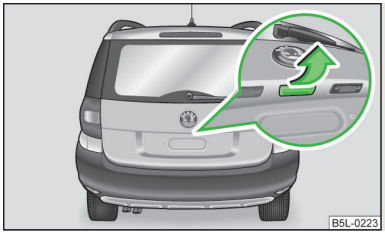

Fig. 17
Handle of boot lid

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 34.

After unlocking the vehicle, you can open the lid by pushing the handle located above the licence plate.

Opening

› Press the handle and simultaneously lift up the boot lid » Fig. 17.

Closing

› Pull down the boot lid and close it with a slight swing.

Automatic locking

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 34.

If the vehicle was locked before the boot lid was closed, the lid is immediately locked automatically when closed.

The period after which the boot lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

Delayed locking
If the boot lid was locked using the symbol button on the remote control key, it is possible to open the boot lid within a limited period of time.

There is a risk of unwanted entry into the vehicle before the boot lid is locked automatically. You should therefore always lock the vehicle using the symbol button on the remote control or with the key if no remote control is available » page 30.

Delayed locking can be deactivated by a specialist garage at any time.

Note

More detailed information about this is available from a ŠKODA Partner.

Emergency unlocking

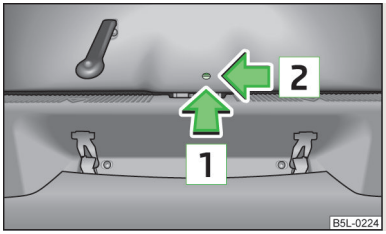

Fig. 18
Emergency unlocking of the boot lid

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 34.

The boot lid can be unlocked manually if there is a fault in the central locking system.

Unlocking
› Fold the rear seat backrest forward » page 63, *Rear seats*.
› Insert a screwdriver or similar tool into the opening in the trim in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 18 as far as the stop.
› Unlock the lid in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Open the boot lid.

Electric power windows

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Window open/close 36
Opening the windows in the front passenger door and in the rear doors 37
Power window force limiter 37
Window convenience operation 37
Operational faults 38

WARNING

- If the vehicle is locked from the outside, do not leave anybody in the vehicle as it is not possible to open the windows from the inside in the event of an emergency.
- The system is fitted with a force limiter » page 37. If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. However, the windows should be closed carefully – risk of injury.
- It is recommended to deactivate the electrically operated power windows in the rear doors (safety pushbutton) S » Fig. 19 on page 36 when children are being transported on the rear seats.
- When closing the windows, proceed with caution so as to avoid crushing injuries - risk of injury!

CAUTION

- Keep the windows clean to ensure the correct functionality of the electric windows.
- If the windows are frozen, first of all remove the ice » page 183, *Windows and exterior mirrors*. Only then can the electrical power windows be operated, as otherwise the window seal and the electrical power window mechanism could be damaged.
- In the winter, ice on the window may cause greater resistance as the window is closed. The window will stop when closing and will open again by several centimetres.
- Make sure that the windows are closed whenever you leave the locked vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

At high speeds, you should keep the windows closed to prevent unnecessarily high fuel consumption.

Note

▪ After switching the ignition off, it is still possible to open or close the windows for approx. 10 minutes. The power windows are only switched off completely once the driver or front passenger door are opened.
▪ When driving always use the existing heating, air conditioning and ventilation system for ventilating the interior of the vehicle. If the windows are opened, dust as well as other dirt can get into the vehicle and in addition the wind noise is more at certain speeds.
▪ The convenience opening of the windows by means of the key in the driver's lock is only possible within 45 seconds of deactivating or activating the alarm system.

Window open/close

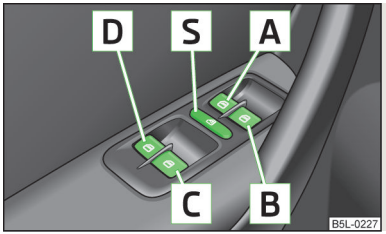

Fig. 19
Buttons on the driver's door

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 35.

The power windows operate only when ignition is switched on.

Opening
› The window is opened by pressing gently on the corresponding button. The opening process stops when one releases the button.

The window will also open fully automatically if you briefly press the button as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Closing
› The window is closed by pulling gently on the corresponding upper edge of the button. The closing process stops when one releases the button.

The window will also close fully automatically if you briefly pull the button as far as the stop. Renewed pulling of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

The buttons for the individual windows are located in the armrest of the driver's door » Fig. 19, front passenger seat and in the rear doors » Fig. 20 on page 37.

Buttons for the power windows » Fig. 19.

A Button for power window of the driver's door
B Button for power window of the front passenger door
C Button for power window of the rear right door
D Button for power window at the rear left door
S Safety pushbutton

Safety pushbutton
The buttons for power windows in the rear doors can be deactivated by pressing the safety pushbutton S » Fig. 19. The buttons for the power windows in rear doors are activated again by pressing the safety pushbutton S again.

If the buttons for the rear doors are deactivated, the indicator light in the safety switch S lights up.

Note

The window lift mechanism is equipped with protection against overheating. Repeated opening and closing of the window can cause this mechanism to overheat. If this happens, it will not be possible to operate the window for a short time. You will be able to operate the window again as soon as the overheating protection has cooled down.

Opening the windows in the front passenger door and in the rear doors

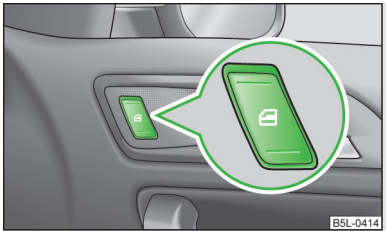

Fig. 20
Button arrangement in the front passenger door

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 35.

A button for the relevant window is provided in these doors.

Opening
› Lightly press the appropriate button **down** and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.
› Additionally, the window can be opened automatically (fully open) by pressing the button **down** to the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Closing
› Lightly press the appropriate button **up** and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.
› Additionally, the window can be closed automatically (fully closed) by pulling the button **upwards** to the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Power window force limiter

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 35.

The electrically operated power windows are fitted with a force limiter. It reduces the risk of bruises or injuries when closing the windows.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents the window from being closed during the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time it is not possible to automatically close the window. The force limiter is still switched on.

The force limiter is only switched off if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds - **the window will now close with full force!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

Window convenience operation

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 35.

The electrically powered windows can be opened and closed as follows when unlocking and locking the vehicle.

Opening
› Press and hold the symbol button on the remote control key.
› Hold the key in the driver's lock in the unlock position.
› Press and hold he central locking button in the area of the symbol.

Closing
› Press and hold the symbol button on the remote control key.
› Hold the key in the driver's lock in the lock position.
› Press and hold he central locking button in the area of the symbol.

You can interrupt the opening or closing process for the windows immediately by releasing the key or the lock button.

Operational faults

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 35.

Electrically operated power windows do not operate

If the battery has been disconnected and then reconnected while the window was opened, the electrically operated power windows do not operate. The system must be activated. Proceed as follows in order to re-establish the function:
› switch on the ignition;
› pull the top edge of the button in the driver's door to close the window;
› release the button;
› pull the relevant button upwards again for approx. 3 seconds.

Operation in winter
In the winter, ice accumulating on the surface of the window may cause there to be more resistance when closing the window. The window will stop and move back several centimetres.

It is necessary to deactivate the force limiter to close the window » page 37.

Panoramic sunroof

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 38
Opening and closing the sun screen 39
Convenience operation 39
Emergency operation 40
Activation after the disconnecting and reconnecting the battery 40

The panoramic sunroof (hereinafter referred to solely as sliding/tilting roof) with sun screen can only be operated with the control dial » Fig. 21 on page 38 when the ignition is switched on. The control dial has several positions.

The sliding/tilting roof or sun screen can still be opened, closed and tilted for approx. 10 minutes after switching the ignition off. However, as soon as one of the front doors is opened, it is no longer possible to operate the sliding/tilting roof or the sun screen.

! WARNING

Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully – risk of injury!

! CAUTION

During the winter, any ice or snow in the vicinity of the sliding/tilting roof must be removed before opening in order to prevent any damage to the opening mechanism and seal.

i Note

▪ If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sliding/tilting roof does not close fully. This is why the rotary switch must be set to the switch position A » Fig. 21 on page 38 and pressed forward for about 10 seconds.
▪ When the sliding/tilting roof is in the comfort position, the intensity of the wind noise is reduced.

Operation

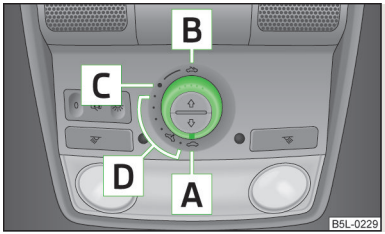

Fig. 21
Control dial for the sliding/tilting roof

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 38.

Comfort position
› Turn the switch to position C » Fig. 21.

Open partially
› Turn the switch to a position in area D » Fig. 21.

Open fully

› Turn the switch to position B » Fig. 21 and hold it in this position (spring-tensioned position).

Tilting and closing

› To tilt, press the switch on the recess in the direction of the roof.
› To close, press the switch on the recess down and then push it forwards.

Closing

› Turn the switch to position A » Fig. 21.

Force limiter

The sliding/tilting roof is fitted with a force limiter. The sliding/tilting roof stops and moves back several centimetres when it cannot be closed because there is something in the way (e.g. ice). The sliding/tilting roof can be fully closed without a force limiter by pressing the notch on the control dial downwards and then pushing it forward until the sliding/tilting roof is fully closed » page 38, ! in section *Introduction*.

Opening and closing the sun screen

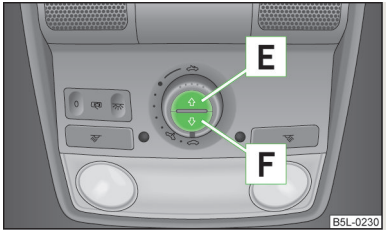

Fig. 22
Buttons for sun screen

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 38.

The sun screen can be closed or opened separately using the buttons » Fig. 22.

Opening

› Briefly press the button E » Fig. 22 to open fully.
› Press and hold the button E to open in the desired position. The opening process stops when one releases the button.

Closing

› Briefly press the button F » Fig. 22 to close fully.
› Press and hold the button F to close in the desired position. The closing process stops when one releases the button.

Convenience operation

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 38.

You can also operate the sliding/tilting roof and the sun screen from the outside using the remote control key.

Closing

› Press and hold the symbol button on the remote control key.

The closing process stops immediately when one releases the button.

Tilting roof

› Press and hold the symbol button on the remote control key.

The sun screen is closed or opened at the same time when closing or tilting the sliding/tilting roof.

WARNING

Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully – risk of injury! The force limiter does not work when convenience closing is in operation.

Note

The sliding/tilting roof can only be tilted, not opened, using convenience operation.

Emergency operation

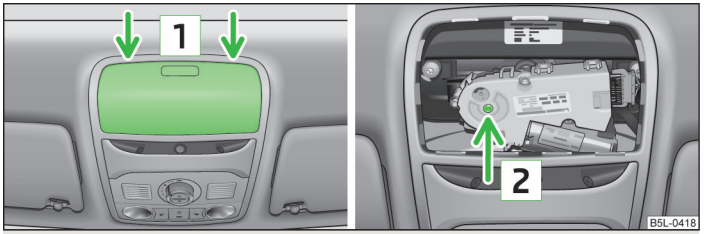

Fig. 23 **Point for positioning screwdriver/opening for positioning the key**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 38.

The sliding/tilting roof can be closed or opened manually if the system is faulty. The emergency operation device for the sliding roof is located underneath the glasses storage box 1 » page 77, *Glasses storage box*

› Open the glasses storage box.
› Carefully insert an approximately 5 mm wide screwdriver into the slot in the positions shown by the arrows 1 » Fig. 23.
› Carefully fold the glasses storage box downwards by gently pressing down and turning the screwdriver.
› Insert an SW 4 allen key into the opening 2 to the stop, and close or open the sliding/tilting roof.
› Reinstall the glasses storage box by first inserting the plastic plugs and then pushing the entire part upwards.

Have the fault rectified by a specialist garage.

Note

After each emergency operation, it is necessary to activate the roof » page 40.

Activation after the disconnecting and reconnecting the battery

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 38.

The sliding/tilting roof and the sun screen must be activated after disconnecting and reconnecting the battery.

To activate the sliding/tilting roof, press the notch on the control dial downwards and forwards for approx. 10 seconds.

To activate the sun screen, press and hold the switch F » Fig. 22 on page 39 for approx. 10 seconds.

If the sliding/tilting roof or sun screen is not fully closed or pushed shut when disconnecting and reconnecting the battery, they must first be closed or pushed shut » page 38 » page 39. Only then is it possible to perform the activation.

Lights and visibility

Lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Switching lights on and off 42
Headlight beam adjustment 42
Function DAY LIGHT (daytime running lights) 42
Turn signal and main beam 43
Automatic driving lamp control 44
Dynamic cornering lights 44
Fog lights 45
Foglights with the CORNER function 45
Rear fog light 45
Tourist lights 45
COMING HOME/LEAVING HOME function 46
Hazard warning light system 46
Parking light 47
Instrument lighting 47

Unless otherwise stated, the lights only work when the ignition is switched on.

On models fitted with **right-hand steering** the position of certain switches differs from that shown in » Fig. 24 on page 42. The symbols which mark the switch positions are identical, however.

The low beam continues to shine while the ignition is switched on and the light switch is in the position or **AUTO**. After switching off the ignition, the low beam is switched off automatically and only the side lights come on. The side lights also go out after the ignition key is removed.

WARNING

- Never drive with only the side lights on! The side lights are not bright enough to light up the road sufficiently in front of you or to be seen by other oncoming traffic. Therefore always switch on the low beam when it is dark or if visibility is poor.
- The automatic driving lamp control **AUTO** only operates as a support and does not release the driver from his responsibility to check the light and, if necessary, to switch on the light depending on the light conditions. The light sensor cannot, for example, detect rain or snow. Under these conditions we recommend switching on the low beam or fog lights!
- The activation of the lights should only be undertaken in accordance with national legal requirements.
- The driver is always responsible for the correct settings and use of the lights.

Note

- If the light switch is in the position , the ignition key is removed and the driver's door is open, an audible warning signal will sound. The audible warning signal is switched off by means of the door contact when the driver's door is closed (ignition off), however, the side lights remain on to illuminate the parked vehicle if necessary.
- If there is a fault in the light switch, the low beam comes on automatically.
- In the event of cool or humid weather conditions, the headlights can be misted up from inside. The temperature difference between interior and external area of the headlight lenses is decisive. When the driving lights are switched on, the light outlet surfaces are free from mist after a short period, although the headlight lenses may still be misted up in the peripheral areas. It also concerns reverse light and turn signal lights. This mist has no influence on the life of the lighting system.

Switching lights on and off



Fig. 24
Dash panel: Light switch

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 41.

Switching on the parking light
› Turn the light switch » Fig. 24 to position ⇛.

Switching on the low beam and main beam
› Turn the light switch » Fig. 24 to position ≡D.
› Push the lever gently forwards into the spring-tensioned position to switch on the main beam » Fig. 26 on page 43.

Switching off lights (except daytime running lights)
› Turn the light switch » Fig. 24 to position 0.

Headlight beam adjustment



Fig. 25
Dash panel: Lights and visibility

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 41.

Turning the rotary switch » Fig. 25 from position - to 3 gradually activates the headlight beam adjustment, thereby shortening the beam of light.

Settings

The positions correspond approximately to the following car load.
- - Front seats occupied, boot empty.
- 1 All seats occupied, boot empty.
- 2 All seats occupied, boot loaded.
- 3 Driver seat occupied, boot loaded.

! WARNING

Always adjust the headlight range adjustment in such a way that:
- it does not dazzle other road users, especially oncoming traffic;
- and the range is sufficient for safe driving.

i Note

- We recommend you adjust the headlight beam when the low beam is switched on.
- Headlights fitted with Xenon bulbs adapt automatically to the load and driving state of the vehicle (e.g. accelerating, braking) when the ignition is switched on and when driving. Vehicles which are equipped with Xenon bulbs do not have a manual headlight range adjustment control.

Function DAY LIGHT (daytime running lights)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 41.

Switching on daytime running lights
› Turn the light switch to position 0 or AUTO » Fig. 24 on page 42.

Deactivating the daytime running lights
› Pull the turn signal light lever towards the steering wheel within 3 seconds of switching on the ignition and at the same time, slide it downwards and hold it in this position for at least 3 seconds.

Activating the daytime running lights

› Pull the turn signal light lever towards the steering wheel within 3 seconds of switching on the ignition and at the same time, slide it upwards and hold it in this position for at least 3 seconds.

On vehicles with an information display, the daytime running lights can also be activated or deactivated via the menu:

- **Settings**
  - **Lights & Vision**

On vehicles with separate lights for daytime running lights in the fog lights, the parking lights and the licence plate light do not come on when activating the daytime running lights (neither front nor rear).

When the daytime running lights are switched on, the lighting of the instrument cluster is switched on as well.

Turn signal and main beam

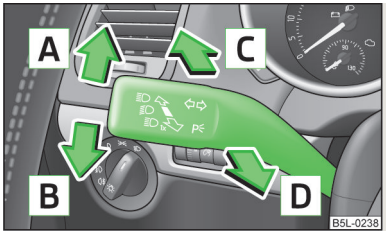

Fig. 26
Operating lever: Turn signal and main beam operation

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 41.

The lever is also used to operate the parking light and the headlight flasher.

Right ⇨ and left ⇦ turn signal light

› Push the lever » Fig. 26 upwards A or downwards B.
› If you only wish to flash three times (the "convenience turn signal"), briefly push the lever to the upper or lower pressure point and release again. This feature can be activated/deactivated via the information display » page 15.
› Turn signal for changing lanes - to only flash briefly, move the lever up or down to the pressure point and hold it in this position.

Main beam

› Switch on the low beam » page 42.
› Push the lever away from the steering wheel in the direction of arrow C (spring-tensioned position).
› The main beam is switched off by pulling the lever towards the steering wheel (spring-tensioned position) in the direction of arrow D.

Headlight flasher

› Pull the lever towards the steering wheel (spring-tensioned position) in the direction of arrow D - the main beam and indicator light in the instrument cluster come on.

Parking light

Description of the operation » page 47, *Parking light*

CAUTION

Only use the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users will not be dazzled.

Note

- The **turn signal system** only operates when the ignition is switched on. The corresponding indicator light ⇦ or ⇨ in the instrument cluster also flashes.
- The turn signal is automatically cancelled after negotiating a curve.
- The indicator light flashes at twice its normal rate if a bulb for the turn signal light fails.

Automatic driving lamp control



Fig. 27
Dash panel: Light switch

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 41.

Switching on automatic driving lamp control
› Turn the light switch » Fig. 27 to position **AUTO**.

Switching off automatic driving lamp control
› Turn the light switch » Fig. 27 to position 0, or .

If the light switch is in the position **AUTO**, the symbol illuminates when the ignition is switched on **AUTO** next to the light switch. If the low beam is activated with the light sensor, the symbol illuminates additionally next to the light switch.

If the light comes on automatically, the side lights and low beam as well as licence plate light light up at the same time.

If the automatic driving lamp control is switched on, the light is regulated with the light sensor in the rear mirror holder. If the light intensity drops below the set value, e.g when driving during the day into a tunnel, the low beam and the side lights as well as the licence plate light come on automatically. If the light intensity increases again, the lights switch off automatically.

Rain lights
If the windscreen wiper is switched on in rain sensor mode for longer than 10 seconds or in permanent wipe mode (position 2 or 3) » page 52 for longer than 15 seconds, the side lights and low beam are switched on automatically. The light switches off if the windscreen wipe is in operation rain sensor for more than around 4 minutes or is not switched on in the operation permanent wipe.

Note

Do not affix any stickers in front of the light sensor, so that its functionality is not impaired or disabled.

Dynamic cornering lights

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 41.

The dynamic cornering lights are used to illuminate corners by means of the cone of light from the front headlight swivelling together with Xenon lights. This function is active when the speed of the car increases to more than 10 km/h.

The swivelling function of the headlights can be switched off/on via the **Assistants** menu item in the main menu of the information display » page 15.

WARNING

If the dynamic cornering lights are defective, the headlights are automatically lowered to the emergency position, which avoids the possibility of dazzling oncoming traffic. Thus the illuminated length of the road is shortened. Drive carefully and visit a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Fog lights

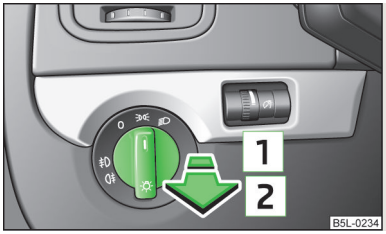

Fig. 28
Dash panel: Light switch

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 41.

Switching on
› First of all, turn the light switch » Fig. 28 to position or .
› Pull the light switch to position 1.

The indicator light lights up in the instrument cluster when the fog lights are switched on » page 18.

Foglights with the CORNER function

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 41.

The fog lights with the function CORNER are designed to improve the illumination of the surrounding area near the vehicle when turning, parking, etc.

The fog lights with the function CORNER are adjusted according to the steering angle or after switching on the turn signal light [1] in the following circumstances:
› the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running or it moves with a speed of maximum 40 km/h;
› the daytime running lights are not switched on;
› the low beam is switched on or the light switch is in the position **AUTO** and the intensity of the ambient light causes the low beam to be switched on;
› the fog lights are not switched on;
› no reverse gear is engaged.

Note

If the reverse gear is engaged during the active function CORNER, both fog lights illuminate.

Rear fog light

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 41.

Switching on
› First of all, turn the light switch » Fig. 28 on page 45 to position or .
› Pull the light switch to position 2.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the rear fog light is switched on » page 18.

Only the rear fog light on the trailer lights up if the vehicle has a factory-fitted towing device or a towing device from ŠKODA original accessories and it is driven with a trailer and the rear fog light switched on.

The rear fog light is located in the rear light array on the driver's side.

Tourist lights

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 41.

Xenon headlight
This mode makes it possible to drive in countries with opposing traffic system, driving on the left/right, without dazzling the oncoming vehicles. When the mode "tourist light" is active, the side to side swivel of the headlights is deactivated.

[1] If both switch on versions are conflicting, for example if the steering wheel is turned to the left and the right turn signal light is switched on, the turn signal light has the higher priority.

The "tourist light" mode is activated/deactivated via the information display in the menu:

- **Settings**
- **Lights and visibility**
  - **Travel mode**
    - **Switched off**
    - **Activated**

Halogen headlight
When using Halogen headlights, it is necessary to stick a sticker over a certain part of the headlights in order to prevent the dazzling of oncoming traffic.

You can purchase headlight stickers from the range of the ŠKODA original accessories.

COMING HOME/LEAVING HOME function

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 41.

When it is dark, this function makes it possible to switch on the lights for a short time after leaving the vehicle or when approaching the vehicle.

Switching on the COMING HOME function
› The light switch is in the position automatic driving lamp control **AUTO**.
› Switch off the ignition.
› The light switches on after the driver's door is opened.

Switching on the LEAVING HOME function
› After leaving the vehicle, the light switch is in the position automatic driving lamp control **AUTO**.
› Unlock the vehicle with the radio remote control and the light is switched on.

Depending on the equipment fitted the COMING HOME/LEAVING HOME function switches on the following lights:
› Parking lights;
› Low beam;
› Entry lighting in the exterior mirrors;
› Licence plate light.

The COMING HOME/LEAVING HOME function is controlled with the light sensor in the mount of the interior rear mirror. If the light intensity is higher than the set value of the light sensor, the light is not switched on after opening the driver's door or unlocking the vehicle with the radio remote control.

Switching off the COMING HOME function
The light goes out 10 seconds after closing all of the doors and the boot lid.

If a door or the boot lid remains open, the light goes out after 60 seconds.

Switching off the LEAVING HOME function
The light goes out 10 seconds after unlocking the vehicle with the radio remote control, switching on the ignition or locking the vehicle.

If no door is opened, the vehicle is locked automatically after 30 seconds.

Note

- If the COMING HOME/LEAVING HOME function is switched on constantly, the battery will be heavily discharged particularly over short distances.
- The illumination period for the COMING HOME/LEAVING HOME function can be changed by means of the information display.

Hazard warning light system



Fig. 29
Dash panel: Switch for hazard warning lights

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 41.

› Press switch ⚠ » Fig. 29 to switch the hazard warning light system on or off.

All the turn signal lights on the vehicle flash at the same time when the hazard warning light system is switched on. The indicator light for the turn signals and the indicator light in the switch also flash at the same time. The hazard warning light system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

The hazard warning light system is switched on automatically if an airbag is deployed in the event of an accident.

Note

The hazard warning light system must be switched on if, for example:
- you encounter a traffic congestion;
- your vehicle breaks down or an emergency situation occurs.

Parking light

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 41.

Parking light P
› Switch off the ignition.
› Pull the lever » Fig. 26 on page 43 upwards or downwards - the parking light on the right or left-hand side of the vehicle is switched on.

Parking light on both sides
› Turn the light switch » Fig. 24 on page 42 to position ≫ and lock the vehicle.

Note

- The parking light P can only be activated if the ignition is switched off.
- If the right or left turn signal light has been switched on and the ignition is switched off, the parking light is not automatically switched on.

Instrument lighting



Fig. 30
Dash panel: Instrument lighting

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 41.

› Switch on the light.

› Turn the control dial » Fig. 30 to the desired intensity of the instrument lighting.

The illumination intensity of the Information display » page 15 is set automatically. It is only possible to adjust the instrument lighting with the control dial if the light intensity drops below the set value of the light sensor.

Interior lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Interior lights at the front 48
Interior lights at the rear 48
Illuminated storage compartment on front passenger side 49
Front door warning light 49
Entry lighting 49
Boot light 49

Interior lights at the front

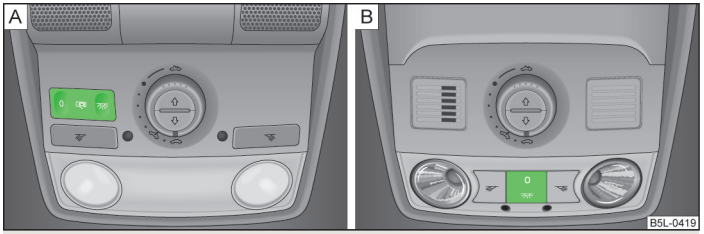

Fig. 31 **Interior lights at the front**

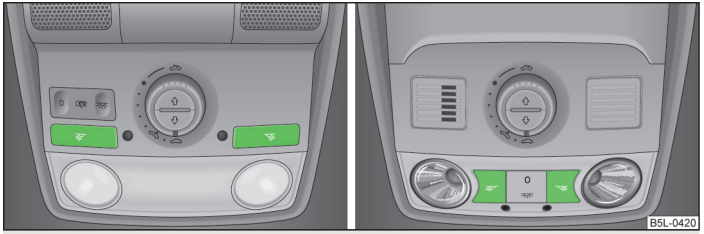

Fig. 32 **Reading lights**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 47.

Switching on
› Press the switch » Fig. 31 in the area of the symbol .

Switching off
› Press the switch » Fig. 31 in the area of the symbol **0**.

Operating with the door contact switch
› Place the switch into the middle position. On vehicles without an interior monitor, the middle position is marked with the symbol » Fig. 31 - A.

Reading lights
› Press switch or » Fig. 32 to switch the reading lights on or off.

If operating lights with the door contact switch is enabled, the light will come on when:
› the vehicle is unlocked;
› one of the doors is opened;
› or the ignition key is removed.

If operating lights with the door contact switch is enabled, the light will go off when:
› the vehicle is locked;
› the ignition is switched on;
› about 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

If a door remains open, or if the switch is in the position the interior light goes out after 10 minutes to prevent the battery from discharging.

Note

We recommend having these bulbs replaced by a ŠKODA service partner.

Interior lights at the rear

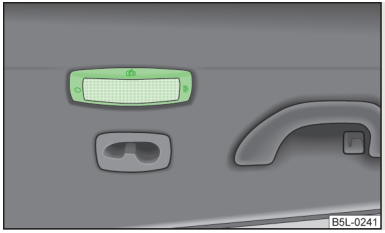

Fig. 33
Interior lights at the rear

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 47.

Switching on
› Press the cover glass » Fig. 33 in the area of the symbol .

Switching off
› Press the cover glass » Fig. 33 in the area of the symbol **0**.

Operating with the door contact switch
› Place the cover glass » Fig. 33 in the middle position .

Illuminated storage compartment on front passenger side

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 47.

› When opening the flap of the storage compartment on the front passenger side the lighting in the storage compartment comes on.
› The light switches on automatically when the parking light is switched on and goes out when the flap is closed.

Front door warning light

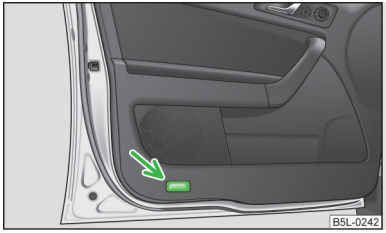

Fig. 34
Front door: Warning light

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 47.

The warning light is located in the lower door trim panel » Fig. 34.

The warning light goes on every time the door is opened. The light goes out about 10 minutes after opening the door in order to avoid discharging the battery of the vehicle.

There is a reflector installed on some vehicles instead of the warning light.

Entry lighting

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 47.

The lighting is positioned on the bottom edge of the exterior mirror.

The light beam is directed towards the entry area of the front door.

The light comes on after the doors have been locked or on opening the boot lid. The light goes out after switching on the ignition or within 30 seconds of closing all of the doors and the boot lid.

If a door or the boot lid remains open, the light goes out within 2 minutes if the ignition is switched off.

WARNING

If the entry light is on, do not touch its cover - risk of burns!

Boot light

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 47.

The light comes on automatically when the boot lid is opened. If the lid remains open for more than about 10 minutes, the boot light switches off automatically.

Visibility

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Windscreen and rear window heater 50
Sun visors 50

Windscreen and rear window heater

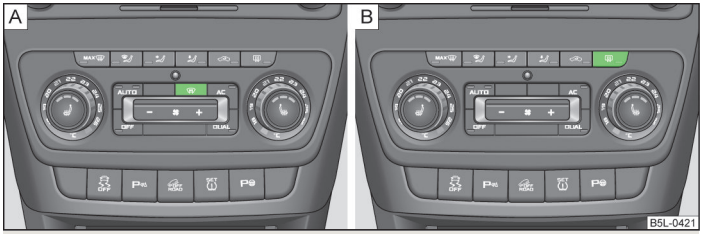

Fig. 35 **Switch for windscreen heater/switch for rear window heater**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 49.

Windscreen heater

› The windscreen heater is switched on or off by pressing the » Fig. 35 - A symbol switch; the warning light in the switch lights up or goes out.

Rear window heater

› The rear window heater is switched on or off by pressing the » Fig. 35 - B symbol switch; the warning light in the switch lights up or goes out.

The windscreen and rear window heater only operates when the engine is running.

The windscreen and rear window heater automatically **switches off** after approximately 10 minutes.

For the sake of the environment

The heating should be switched off as soon as the window is de-iced or free from mist. The reduced current consumption will have a favourable effect on fuel economy » page 129, *Saving electricity*.

Note

- If the on-board voltage drops, the windscreen and rear window heater switches off automatically, to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » page 204, *Automatic load deactivation*.
- The position and shape of the switch may vary according to the model.

Sun visors

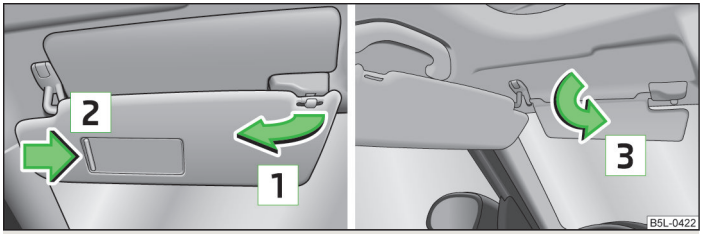

Fig. 36 **Sun visor/double sun visor**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 49.

The sun visor for the driver or front passenger can be pulled out of the fixture and swivelled towards the door in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 36.

The vanity mirrors in the sun visors are provided with covers. Push the cover in the direction of the arrow 2.

On vehicles that are equipped with a double sun visor, the auxiliary visor can be unfolded in the direction of the arrow 3 after swivelling the sun visor towards the door.

WARNING

The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects, such as ball-point pens, etc. are attached to them. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.

Windscreen wipers and washers

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Activating the windscreen wipers and washers 52
Automatic rear window wiper 53
Alternative park position of the rear window wiper 53
Headlight cleaning system 53
Replacing the windscreen wiper blades 54
Replacing the rear window wiper blade 54

The windscreen wipers and the wash system only operate if the ignition is switched on and the bonnet is closed[1].

If the intermittent wipe is switched on, the intervals are also controlled depending on speed.

The rain sensor automatically regulates the break between the individual wiper strokes depending on the intensity of the rain.

The rear window is wiped once if the windscreen wipers are on when reverse gear is selected.

After the windscreen wiper switches off each time or the ignition switches off for the third time, the position of the windscreen wiper changes, this counteracts an early fatigue of the wiper rubbers.

The rear window wiper only operates if the boot lid is closed.

Top up with windscreen wiper fluid » page 199.

WARNING

- Properly maintained windscreen wiper blades are essential for clear visibility and safe driving » page 54.
- Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures, without heating the windscreen beforehand. Otherwise the window cleaner could freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.
- The rain sensor only operates as a support. The driver is not released from the responsibility to set the function of the windscreen wipers manually depending on the visibility conditions.

CAUTION

- In cold temperatures and during the winter, check before the journey or before switching on the ignition that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers are switched on when the blades are frozen to the windscreen, this may damage both the blades and windscreen wiper motor!
- If the ignition is switched off while the windscreen wipers are switched on, the windscreen wipers will continue wiping in the same mode after the ignition is turned back on. The windscreen wipers could freeze up in cold temperatures between the time the ignition was turned off and when it was turned back on again.
- Carefully detach frozen wiper blades from the front or rear window.
- Remove snow and ice from the windscreen wipers before driving.
- If the windscreen wipers are handled carelessly, there is a risk of damage to the windscreen.
- Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. These can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.
- The ignition must not be switched on if the front windscreen wiper arms are folded out. The wiper blades would move back into their rest position and while doing so damage the paintwork of the bonnet.

[1] On vehicles which do not have a contact switch for the bonnet, the windshield wiper and wash system operates also when the bonnet is opened.

Note

▪ If the slower 2 » Fig. 37 on page 52 or the faster 3 wiper setting is switched on and the vehicle speed decreases to below 4 km/h, the lower wiper step is switched on automatically. At a speed increase of more than 8 km/h the previous wiper setting is established again.
▪ If there is an obstacle on the windscreen, the wiper will try to push away the obstacle. If the obstacle continues to block the wiper, the wiper stops automatically after 5 attempts to eliminate the obstacle, in order to avoid a damage to the wiper. Remove the the obstacle and switch the wiper on again.
▪ The windscreen washer nozzles for the windscreen are heated when the engine is running and the outside temperature is less than approx. +10 °C.
▪ The content of the windscreen washer fluid reservoir is 3 litres. On vehicles fitted with the headlight cleaning system, the volume is 5.5 litres. On vehicles fitted with auxiliary heating, the content of the windscreen wiper reservoir is 4.5 litres.
▪ The wiper blades should be cleaned on a regular basis with a windscreen cleaner to avoid any smears. The wiper blades should be cleaned with a sponge or cloth if they are heavily soiled by insect residues, for example.

Activating the windscreen wipers and washers

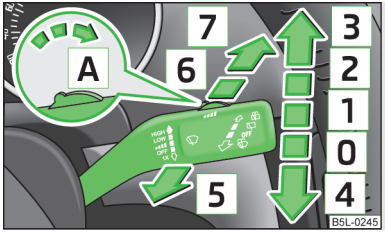

Fig. 37
Operating lever: Operation of the windscreen wipers and washer

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 51.

Flick wipe
› If you only wish to wipe the windscreen **briefly**, push the lever into the spring-tensioned position 4 » Fig. 37. If the lever is held in the lower position for more than 1 second, the wiper wipes faster.

Periodic wiping
› Position the lever upwards into position 1 » Fig. 37.
› Set the desired break between the individual wiper strokes with the switch A.

Slow wipe
› Position the lever upwards into position 2 » Fig. 37.

Fast wipe
› Position the lever upwards into position 3 » Fig. 37.

Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen
› Pull the lever towards the steering wheel into the spring-tensioned position 5 » Fig. 37, the washer system is activated immediately, while the windscreen wipers start wiping a little later. The wash system and the windscreen wiper operate simultaneously at a speed of more than 120 km/h.
› Release the lever. The windscreen wash system stops and the wiper continues for another 3 - 4 wiper strokes (depending on the period of spraying of the windscreen). At a speed of more than 2 km/h, the wiper wipes once again 5 seconds after the last wiper stroke in order to wipe the last drops from the windscreen. This function can be activated/deactivated by a specialist garage.

Rain sensor
› Place the lever in position 1 » Fig. 37.
› The sensitivity of the sensor can be set individually with the switch A.

Wiping the rear window pane
› Push the lever away from the steering wheel into position 6 » Fig. 37 and the windscreen wiper will operate every 6 seconds.

Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window
› Press the lever completely away from the steering wheel into the spring-tensioned position 7 » Fig. 37, the washer system is activated immediately, while the windscreen wiper starts wiping a little later. The wiper and washer system will operate as long as the lever is held in this position.
› Release the lever. The washer system stops and the wiper continues for another 2 to 3 wiper strokes (depending on the duration of the spraying process). **The lever will stay in position after releasing it 6**.

Switching windscreen wipers off
› Move the lever back into the home position 0 » Fig. 37.

Winter position
If the windscreen wipers are in rest position, they cannot be folded out from the windscreen. For this reason we recommend adjusting the windscreen wipers in winter so that they can be folded out from the windscreen easily.

This rest position is set as follows:
› Switch on the windscreen wipers.
› Switch off the ignition. The windscreen wipers remain in the position in which they were when switching off the ignition.

The service position can also be used as a winter position » page 54.

Automatic rear window wiper

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 51.

If the windscreen wiper is in position 2 » Fig. 37 on page 52 or 3 the rear window is wiped every 30 or 10 seconds if the vehicle's speed exceeds 5 km/h.

When the rain sensor is active (the lever is in the position 1) the function is only active if the windscreen wipers operate in continuous mode (no break between each wiping process).

Activation/deactivation

The function of the automatic rear window wiper is activated/deactivated in the information display in the menu:
- **Settings**
  - **Lights and visibility**

Alternative park position of the rear window wiper

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 51.

Each time after switching off the engine for the second time, the wiper blade of the rear window wiper is tilted. This prolongs the life of the wiper blade.

Activation/deactivation
› Switch on the ignition.
› Push the operating level into the position 6 » Fig. 37 on page 52 five times in succession within 5 seconds.
› Switch off the ignition. After switching on the ignition again, the alternative park position of the rear window wiper is activated/deactivated.

Headlight cleaning system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 51.

The headlights are being cleaned after the windscreen has been sprayed for the first time and fifth time, the low beam or main beam are switched on and the windscreen wiper lever was held in the position 5 » Fig. 37 on page 52 for about 1 second.

The headlight washer nozzles are moved forward out of the bumper by the water pressure for cleaning the headlights.

You should remove stubborn dirt (such as insect residues) from the headlight lenses at regular intervals, for example when refuelling. The following guidelines must be observed » page 183, *Headlight lenses*.

To ensure the proper operation of the cleaning system during the winter, any snow should be removed from the washer nozzle fixtures and ice should be cleared with a de-icing spray.

! CAUTION

Never remove the nozzles from the headlight cleaning system by hand - risk of damage!

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades

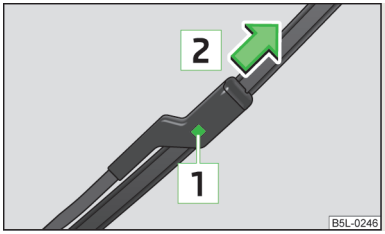

Fig. 38
Windscreen wiper blade

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 51.

When in the rest position, the wiper arms cannot be fold down from the windscreen. Before replacing the windscreen wiper blade, put the windscreen wiper arms into the service position.

Service position for changing wiper blades
› Closing the bonnet.
› Switch the ignition off and on again.
› Then press the windscreen wiper lever into position 4 » Fig. 37 on page 52 within 10 seconds – the wiper arms move into the service position.

Removing the wiper blade
› Lift the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen.
› Press the locking button 1 » Fig. 38 to unlock the wiper blade and pull off in the direction of the arrow 2.

Attaching the wiper blade
› Push the windscreen wiper blade until the stop and it locks in place.
› Check that the wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the wiper arms back to the windscreen.

The windscreen wiper arms move back into the rest position - after switching on the ignition and changing the position of the window wiper lever or when driving at a speed of more than 6°km/h.

Windshield wiper blades in proper condition are essential to obtain good visibility. Wiper blades should not be allowed to become dirtied by dust, insect remains and preserving wax.

Juddering or smearing of the wiper blades could then be due to wax residues left on the windshield by vehicle washing in automatic vehicle wash systems. It is therefore important to **degrease** the lips of the windshield wiper blades after every pass through an **automatic vehicle wash system**.

Replacing the rear window wiper blade

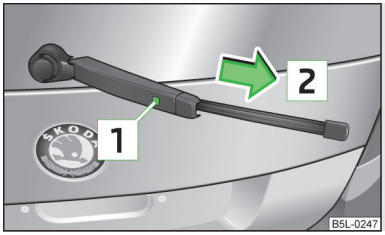

Fig. 39
Rear window wiper blade

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 51.

Removing the wiper blade
› Lift the wiper arm away from the window » Fig. 39.
› Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the direction of the wiper arm.
› Hold the upper part of the wiper arm and unlock the securing mechanism 1.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 2.

Attaching the wiper blade
› Push the windscreen wiper blade until the stop and it locks in place.
› Check that the wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the wiper arm back to the windscreen.

Rear window

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manually dimmed interior mirror 55
Automatically dimmed interior mirror 55
Additional interior mirror 55

External mirror 56
Automatically dimmed exterior mirror on the driver's side 57

Manually dimmed interior mirror

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 54.

Basic setting

› Pull the lever on the bottom edge of the mirror forward.

Dimming mirror

› Push the lever on the bottom edge of the mirror backwards.

Automatically dimmed interior mirror

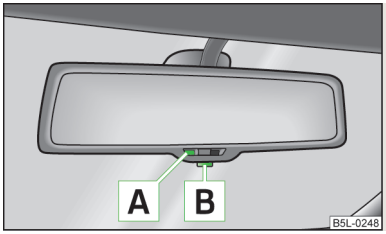

Fig. 40
Automatically dimmed interior mirror

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 54.

Switching on automatic dimming

› Press the button B » Fig. 40, the indicator light A lights up.

Switching off automatic dimming

› Press the button B again, the indicator light A goes out.

If the automatic dimming is switched on, the mirror dims **automatically** depending on the light striking the mirror from the rear. The mirror has no lever on the bottom edge of the mirror. After the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror always moves back into the normal position.

Do not attach external navigation devices to the windscreen or in the vicinity of the automatically dimmed interior mirror » !.

WARNING

The display lighting on the external navigation device may cause the automatically dimmed interior mirror to malfunction – risk of accident.

Note

- Automatic mirror dimming operates only properly if the light striking the rear of the interior rear-view mirror is not affected by other objects.
- Do not affix any stickers in front of the light sensor, so that they do not impair the automatic dimming function or put it out of operation.
- If the automatic interior mirror dimming is switched off, the exterior mirror dimming is also switched off.

Additional interior mirror

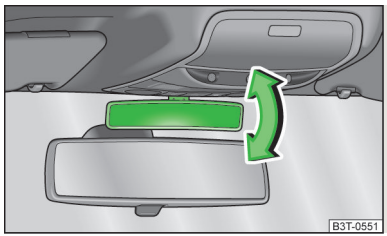

Fig. 41
Additional interior mirror

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 54.

The additional interior mirror allows the driver a wider field of view of the rear seats.

Adjusting the angle

› Take hold of both the upper and lower edge of the mirror such that you are not touching the surface of the mirror.
› Adjust the mirror in direction of arrow to the desired position.

WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle. Use the additional interior mirror only to such an extent that you are in full control of your vehicle at any time.

External mirror

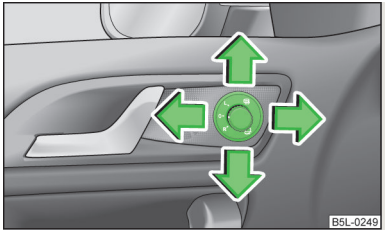

Fig. 42
Inner part of door: Rotary knob

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 54.

Adjust the rear mirror before commencing to drive so that there is a clear view to the rear.

Heating of the external mirror
› Place the rotary knob into the position » Fig. 42.

The exterior mirror heater only operates when the engine is running and up to an outside temperature of +20 °C.

Adjusting left and right exterior mirrors simultaneously
› Place the rotary knob into the position **L** » Fig. 42. The movement of the mirror surface is identical to the movement of the rotary knob.

It is possible to adjust both mirrors simultaneously or each individual mirror in the information display » table on page 16 in the **Mirror adjust.** menu item.

Adjusting the right-hand exterior mirror
› Place the rotary knob into the position **R** » Fig. 42. The movement of the mirror surface is identical to the movement of the rotary knob.

Switching off operating control
› Place the rotary knob into the position **0** » Fig. 42.

Folding-in both of the exterior mirrors with the rotary knob
› Place the rotary knob into the position .

The mirrors are folded back into the driving position after the rotary knob is turned from the position to a different one.

It is only possible to fold in both exterior mirrors when the ignition is switched on and at a speed of up to 15 km/h.

Folding-in both of the exterior mirrors using the remote control key
› If all of the windows are closed, press and hold the lock button 3 » Fig. 15 on page 32 on the radio remote control for approx. 2 seconds.

The exterior mirrors are folded back into the driving position after opening the door or switching on the ignition.

Tilting surface of front passenger exterior mirror
On vehicles fitted with the memory function for the driver's seat, the surface of the mirror tilts down slightly when the reverse gear is engaged and the rotary knob is in the **R** » Fig. 42 position. This provides an aid in seeing the kerb of the pavement when parking the car.

The mirror returns into its initial position, after the rotary knob is moved out of the position **R** and put into another position or if the speed is more than 15 km/h.

Memory function for exterior mirrors
On vehicles fitted with a memory function for the driver seat, the relevant setting for the exterior mirrors is also stored automatically when the seat position is stored » page 60.

WARNING

- Convex (curved outward) or a spherical exterior mirrors increase the vision field. They do, however, make objects appear smaller in the mirror. These mirrors are therefore only of limited use for estimating distances to the following vehicles.
- Whenever possible use the interior mirror for estimating the distances to the following vehicles.

CAUTION

Never mechanically fold in or fold back the exterior mirrors with the fold-in function by hand as this will damage the electric drive.

Note

- If the exterior mirrors were folded in using the rotary knob, they can only be folded back into the driving position using the rotary knob.
- If the exterior mirrors were folded in using the remote control key and if the rotary knob was in the fold-in position before the ignition was switched on, the mirrors will remain in the fold-in position the next time the ignition is switched on. The mirrors are folded back into the driving position after the rotary knob is turned from the position to a different one.
- Do not touch the surface of the exterior mirrors if the exterior mirror heater is switched on.
- If the power setting function fails at any time, the exterior mirrors can be set by hand by pressing on the edge of the mirror surface.
- Contact a specialist garage if there is a fault with the power setting function for the exterior mirrors.

Automatically dimmed exterior mirror on the driver's side

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 54.

The exterior mirror on the driver's side is dimmed together with the interior mirror. If the automatic dimming is switched on, the mirror dims **automatically** depending on the light striking the mirror from the rear.

When the interior lights are switched on or the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror always moves back into the basic position (not dimmed).

Note

- Automatic mirror dimming operates only properly if the light striking the rear of the interior rear-view mirror is not affected by other objects.
- Do not affix any stickers in front of the light sensor, so that they do not impair the automatic dimming function or put it out of operation.
- If the automatic interior mirror dimming is switched off, the exterior mirror dimming is also switched off.

Seats and stowing

Front seats

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manually adjusting the front seats 59
Folding front passenger seat 59
Electric front seat adjustment 60
Memory function for the electrically adjusted seat 60
Remote control key memory function 61
Front seat heating 62

The driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the pedals can be fully pressed to the floor with slightly bent legs.

The seat backrest on the driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the upper point of the steering wheel can be easily reached with slightly bent arms.

Correct adjustment of the seats is particularly important:
› for safely and quickly reaching the controls;
› for a relaxed body position that reduces fatigue;
› **for achieving maximum protection from the seat belts and the airbag system.**

WARNING

- Caution when adjusting the seat! You may suffer injuries or bruises as a result of adjusting the seat without paying proper attention.
- As the electric front seats can also be adjusted when the ignition is switched off (even when the ignition key is withdrawn), never leave children unattended in the car.
- The seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, as this will impair the function of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!
- Never carry more people than the number of seats in the vehicle.
- Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened » page 175, *Transporting children safely* with a suitable restraint system.

WARNING (Continued)

- The front seats and head restraints must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers.
- Do not carry any objects on the front passenger seat except objects designed for this purpose (e.g. child seats) – risk of accident!

WARNING

As the **driver**, observe the following instructions:
- Only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!
- Ensure that there are no objects in the driver's footwell, as these may get caught in the pedal apparatus when driving or braking. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or acceleration pedals.

WARNING

As the **front passenger**, observe the following instructions.
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!

Note

- After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.
- For safety reasons, it is not possible to store the seated position in the seat memory and remote control key memory if the inclination angle of the seat backrest is more than 102° in relation to the seat cushion.
- When saving the driver's seat and exterior mirror settings, any previous settings will be deleted.

Manually adjusting the front seats

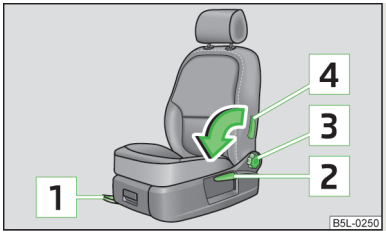

Fig. 43
Controls for manual seat adjustment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 58.

Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction
› Pull the lever 1 » Fig. 43 up and push the seat into the desired position.
› Release the lever 1 and push the seat until the lock clicks into place.

Adjusting height of seat
› To lift the seat, pull or pump the lever 2 » Fig. 43 upwards.
› To lower the seat, push or pump the lever 2 downwards.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest
› To adjust the angle of the backrest, relieve any pressure from the seat backrest (do not lean on it) and turn the handwheel 3 » Fig. 43.

Adjusting lumbar support
› Turn the lever 4 » Fig. 43 until you have set the most comfortable curvature of the seat upholstery in the area of your spine.

Folding front passenger seat

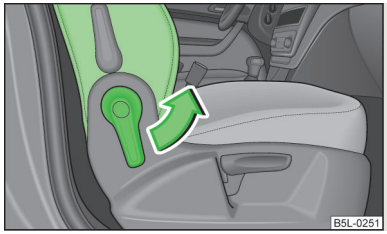

Fig. 44
Foldable front passenger seat

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 58.

The front passenger seat can be folded forwards into the horizontal position if required.

Folding the seat backrest forwards
› Pull the lever in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 44 and fold the seat rest forwards until the lock is heard to engage..

Folding the seat backrest back into position
› Pull the lever in the direction of the arrow and fold the seat rest backwards until the lock is heard to engage.

! WARNING

- The front passenger airbag should be switched off when transporting objects on the front passenger seat which was folded forwards » page 173, *Deactivating the front passenger airbag*.
- Adjust the seat backrest only when the vehicle is stationary.
- When moving the seat backrest, keep limbs out of the area between the seat and seat backrest – risk of injury!
- When moving the seat backrest always make sure the seat backrest has been properly secured - check that it is by pulling on the seat backrest.

WARNING (Continued)

- If the front passenger seat backrest is folded, passengers may only be conveyed on the outer seat behind the driver.
- Never transport objects on the seat backrest which was folded forwards, which:
  - impair driver visibility;
  - make it impossible for the driver to control the vehicle, e.g. if they are placed under the pedals, or could protrude into the driver's zone;
  - could lead to injury to passengers due to a change of direction or braking manouvre when accelerating sharply.

Electric front seat adjustment

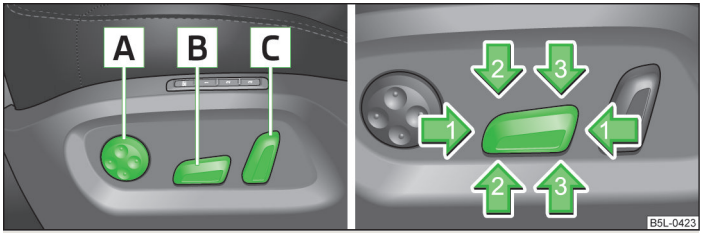

Fig. 45 **Controls for the electric seat adjustment**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 58.

Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction
› Press the switch B » Fig. 45 forwards or backwards in the direction of arrow **1**.

Set the height of the seat cushion
› Press the switch B » Fig. 45 upwards or downwards.

Adjust the angle of the seat cushion
› Press the switch B » Fig. 45 in the direction of the arrow **2** or **3**.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest
› Press the switch C » Fig. 45 in the direction of the desired setting.

Reducing or increasing the curvature of the lumbar support
› Press the switch A » Fig. 45 forwards or backwards.

Raising or lowering the curvature of the lumbar support
› Press the switch A » Fig. 45 upwards or downwards.

The adjusted driver's seat position can be set in the memory of the seat » page 60 or the remote control key » page 61.

Note

If the movement of the seat is inadvertently interrupted during an adjustment, once again press the switch in the appropriate direction and complete the adjustment of the seat.

Memory function for the electrically adjusted seat

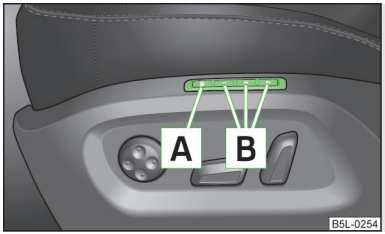

Fig. 46
Memory buttons and SET button

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 58.

The memory function for the driver's seat provides the option to store the positions of the driver's seat and the external mirrors. Each of the three memory buttons B » Fig. 46 can be assigned a set position.

Storing seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward
› Switch on the ignition.
› Adjust the seat to the desired position.
› Adjust both of the exterior mirrors » page 56.
› Press the button SET A » Fig. 46.
› Within 10 seconds after pressing the SET button, press the desired memory button B.

An acknowledgment sound confirms the storage in the seat memory.

Storing exterior mirror setting for reversing
› Switch on the ignition.
› Press the required memory button B » Fig. 46.
› Move the rotary knob for the exterior mirror control into position R » page 56.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Move the right exterior mirror into the desired position » page 56.
› Take the vehicle out of gear.

The adjusted position of the exterior mirror is stored in the seat memory.

Retrieving the saved setting
The retrieval is possible when turned the ignition is switched on and the vehicle speed is less than 5 km/h or when the ignition key is inserted in the ignition lock.

› Press and hold the desired memory button B » Fig. 46 for a short while.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment
› Press any button on the driver's seat.
› The movement can be stopped by pressing the button on the remote control key and opening the driver's door.

Note

Each time new seat and exterior mirror settings for forward travel are saved, the individual setting for the right exterior mirror for reverse travel must also be saved again.

Remote control key memory function

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 58.

The function of automatically storing the positions of the driver's seat and the external mirrors when the vehicle is locked can be activated in the memory of the remote control key.

When this function is activated, the current positions of the driver's seat and the external mirrors are saved in the memory of the remote control key each time the vehicle is locked. When the vehicle is next unlocked using the same key, the driver's seat and the external mirrors assume the positions stored in the memory of this key.

Activating the function
› Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.
› Press and hold any memory button B » Fig. 46 on page 60. After the seat has assumed the position stored under this button, at the same time press the button on the remote control key within 10 seconds.

The successful activation of the function is confirmed by an audible signal.

The seat and external mirror positions which are already saved in the memory button are **not** saved in the memory of the key.

The seat can be adjusted to the required position if necessary » page 60.

After locking the vehicle, the current positions of the driver's seat and the external mirrors are saved in the memory of the remote control key.

Deactivating the function
› Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.
› Press and hold the SET button A » Fig. 46 on page 60. At the same time, press the button on the remote control key within 10 seconds.

The successful deactivation of the function is confirmed by an audible signal.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment
› Press any button on the driver's seat.
› The movement can be stopped by pressing the button on the remote control key and opening the driver's door.

Note

Once the function has been activated, it remains active until deactivation.

Front seat heating



Fig. 47
Dash panel: Control for heating the front seats

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 58.

The seat backrests and seats can be heated electrically.

The seat heating can only be switched on when the engine is running.

The seat heaters on the driver's and front passenger's seat can be switched on and regulated by pressing the button in the area of the symbol or » Fig. 47.

By pressing the button once, the heating is switched to the highest intensity - level 3, which is indicated by all three of the indicator lights in the switch lighting up.

With repeated pressing of the switch, the intensity of the heating is down-regulated up to the switch-off. The intensity of the heating is indicated by the number of illuminated indicator lights in the switch.

WARNING

If, as an occupant, you have a subdued pain and/or temperature sensitivity, e.g. through medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend not to use the seat heating. This can lead to burns on the back, the posterior and the legs which are difficult to heal. If the seat heating is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.

CAUTION

- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply pressure at specific points to avoid damaging the heating elements for the seat heaters.
- Do not use the seat heaters if the seats are not occupied by persons or if objects, such as a child seat, bag, etc., are fastened or stored on them. A fault of the heating elements in the seat heating can occur.
- Do not clean the seats using moisture » page 186.

Note

If the on-board voltage drops, the seat heating is switched off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » page 204, *Automatic load deactivation*.

Head restraints

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Adjusting, removing and installing the head restraints 63
Rear centre head restraint 63

Best protection is achieved if the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head.

The position of the front and rear outer head restraints is adjustable in height. The middle rear head restraint is adjustable in two positions.

The head restraints must be adjusted to match the size of the seat occupant. Correctly adjusted head restraints together with the seat belts offer effective protection for the occupants » page 159, *Correct seated position*.

WARNING

- The head restraints must be correctly adjusted in order to offer effective protection for the occupants in the event of an accident.
- Never drive with the head restraints removed - risk of injury.
- If the rear seats are occupied, the rear head restraint must not be in the lower position.

Adjusting, removing and installing the head restraints

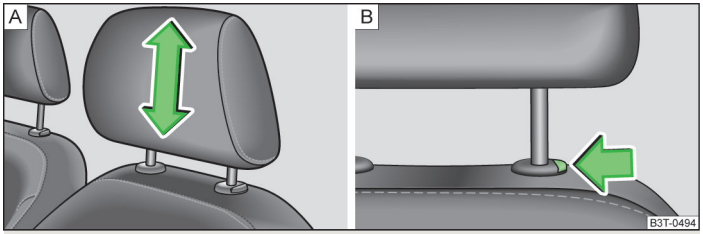

Fig. 48 **Head restraint: adjusting/removing**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 62.

Adjusting the height of a head restraint

› Grasp the side of the head restraint with both hands and push it upwards as required » Fig. 48 - A.
› To move the head restraint downwards, press and hold the safety button » Fig. 48 - B with one hand and press the head restraint downwards with the other hand.

Removing and installing a head restraint

› Pull the head restraint out of the seat backrest as far as the stop.
› Press the locking button in direction of the arrow » Fig. 48 - B and pull the head restraint out.
› To re-insert the head restraint, push it far enough down into the seat backrest until the locking button clicks into place.

Rear centre head restraint

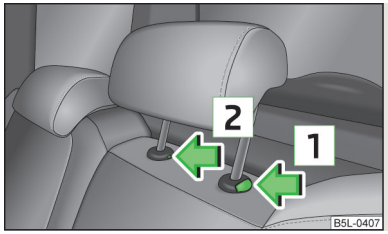

Fig. 49
Rear seats: middle head restraint

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 62.

Applies to vehicles using the TOP TETHER system.

Removing/installing

› Pull the head restraint out of the seat backrest as far as the stop.
› Press the locking button in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 49, simultaneously press the locking button into the opening 2 using a flat screwdriver with a width of maximum 5 mm and pull out the head restraint.
› To re-insert the head restraint, push it far enough down into the seat backrest until the locking button clicks into place.

Rear seats

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Adjusting seats forwards/backwards 64
Adjusting the seat backrest tilt 64
Folding the seat backrest forward and folding the seat fully forward 64
Unlocking and removing seats 65
Adjusting seats in crosswise direction 65
Folding seats back into their original position 66

Adjusting seats forwards/backwards

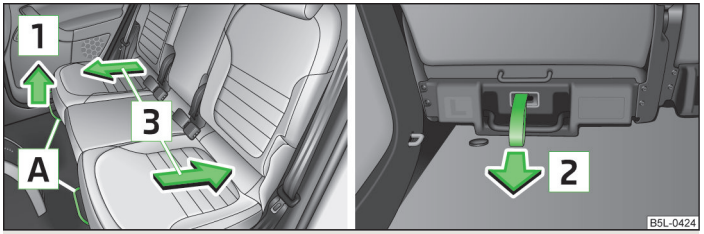

Fig. 50 **Releasing at the front/rear**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 63.

› Pull the lever A » Fig. 50 up in the direction of arrow 1 or on the release loop in direction of arrow 2 and move the seat into the desired position 3.

WARNING

The following guidelines must be observed » page 160, *Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats.*

Adjusting the seat backrest tilt

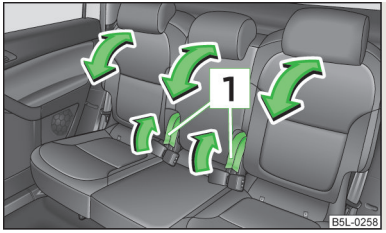

Fig. 51
Adjusting the seat backrest

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 63.

› Pull the lever 1 » Fig. 51 and adjust the required inclination of the seat backrest.

WARNING

Check for yourself that the seat backrest is engaged by pulling on it.

Folding the seat backrest forward and folding the seat fully forward

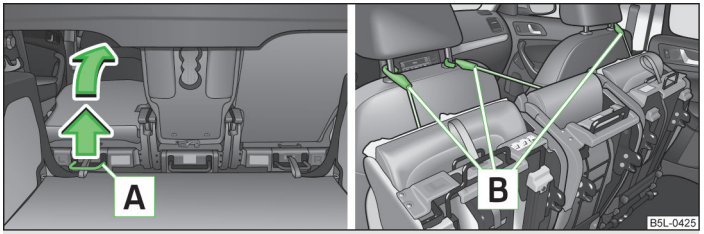

Fig. 52 **Fold seat fully forwards/lock folded forward seats**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 63.

Folding the seat backrest forwards

› Put the belt tongue into the opening of the wheel housing on the respective side of the vehicle - safety position.
› Remove the head restraint from the rear middle seat » page 63.
› Push the outer rear seats towards the rear as far as they will go » page 64, *Adjusting seats forwards/backwards*.
› Pull on the lever 1 » Fig. 51 on page 64 and fold the seat backrests of the outer rear seats onto the seat cushion as far as the stop.
› Fold the middle rear seat backrest forwards in the same way, then pull once more on the lever 1 » Fig. 51 on page 64 and press the seat backrest downwards until it is heard to lock into a lower position.

Folding seats fully forwards and locking them

› If the outer rear seat is fully folded forward, push it towards the rear as far as it can go.
› Pull the lever A » Fig. 52 up and fold the seat forwards fully.
› Secure the folded forward seat with the aid of the fixing belt B to a guide rod of the head restraint for the front seat » Fig. 52.

WARNING

▪ Immediately lock the folded forward seat to a guide rod on the front head restraint using the fixing belt - risk of injury.
▪ The following guidelines must be observed » page 160, *Correct seated position for the driver*.

CAUTION

▪ Before folding the rear middle seat forward, make sure that the storage compartment, the ashtray and the cup holder in the rear part of the centre console are closed - risk of damage.
▪ If the outer seat is not in the rear end position when folding forward, damage can occur to the locking bolts when unlocking the seat.

Unlocking and removing seats

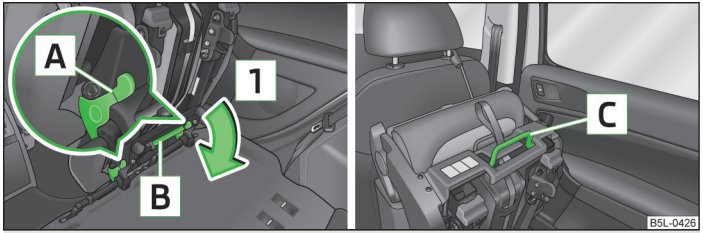

Fig. 53 **Unlocking the folded forward seat/carrying handles on the seat cushion**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 63.

› Fold the seat forward » page 64, *Folding the seat backrest forward and folding the seat fully forward*.
› Unlock the folded forward seat by pressing the seat locks A in direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 53.
› Remove the seat using the carrying handles B or C.

WARNING

The following guidelines must be observed » page 160, *Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats*.

Note

The outer seats are not mutually interchangeable. In the rear area the left seat is marked with the letter **L** and the right seat with the letter **R**.

Adjusting seats in crosswise direction

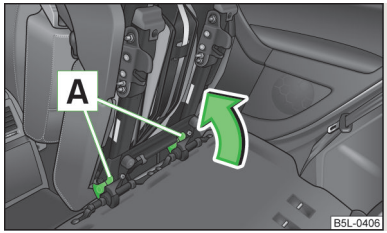

Fig. 54
Locking seats

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 63.

› Remove the middle seat » page 65, *Unlocking and removing seats*.
› Fold the outer seat forward » page 64 and unlock » Fig. 53 on page 65.
› Move the folded forward and unlocked seat on the guide towards the middle of the vehicle up to the stop.
› Lock the folded forward seat by pressing the seat locks A in the direction of arrow » Fig. 54.

Folding seats back into their original position

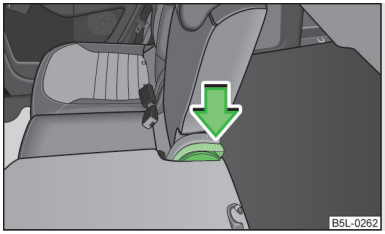

Fig. 55
Folding the seat backrest back into position

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 63.

› If the seat is removed, first of all position it on the guide and lock the seat » Fig. 54 on page 65. Pull the seat upwards to ensure that the seat is locked correctly.
› Fold the seat in the horizontal position until it can be heard to click. Check for yourself that the seat can no longer be lifted by pulling it up.
› Press the lever » Fig. 55 and fold back the seat backrest. Check for yourself that the seat backrest is engaged by pulling on it.
› Remove the tongue of the lock from the safety position.
› Secure the guide loop of the seat belt on the side of the outer seats until it is heard to lock.

WARNING

▪ The belt locks must be in their original position after folding back the seat cushions and backrests - they must be ready to use.
▪ The seat backrests must be securely engaged so that objects from the boot cannot slip into the passenger compartment on sudden braking – risk of injury!
▪ When folding the seat backrest always make sure that it has safely locked into position, this is confirmed by the position and a visible marking on the cover of the lever.

Note

The seat belts of the outer seats must always be guided through the guide loops next to the head restraints. Otherwise the seat belts can slip behind the seats.

Boot

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Class N1 vehicles 67
Fastening elements 67
Folding hooks 68
Fastening strip with moveable hook 68
Fixing nets 68
Boot cover 69
Net partition 69

Please observe the following for the purpose of maintaining good handling characteristics of your vehicle:

› Distribute loads as evenly as possible.
› Place heavy objects as far forward as possible.
› Attach the items of luggage to the lashing eyes or using the fixing net » page 67.

In the event of an accident, there is such a high kinetic energy which is produced by small and light objects that they can cause severe injuries. The magnitude of the kinetic energy is dependent on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and the weight of the object. The speed at which the vehicle is travelling is in this case the more significant factor.

Example: In the event of a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, an unsecured object with a weight of 4.5 kg produces an energy, which corresponds to 20 times its own weight. This means that it results in a weight of approx. 90 kg " ". You can imagine the injuries that can occur, if this "object" flies through the interior compartment and hits an occupant.

WARNING

- Store the objects in the boot and attach them to the lashing eyes.
- Loose objects in the passenger compartment can be thrown forward during a sudden manoeuvre or in case of an accident and can injure the occupants or other oncoming traffic. This risk is still increased, if the objects which are flying around are hit by a deployed airbag. In this case, objects that are thrown back may injure the occupants – risk to life.
- Please note that transporting heavy objects alters the handling properties of the vehicle due to the displacement of the centre of gravity – risk of accident! The speed and style of driving must be adjusted accordingly.
- If the items of luggage or objects are attached to the lashing eyes with unsuitable or damaged lashing straps, injuries can occur in the event of braking manoeuvres or accidents. To prevent items of luggage from being thrown forward, always use suitable lashing straps which must be firmly attached to the lashing eyes.
- The transported items must be stowed in such a way that no objects are able to slip forward on sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of injury!
- When transporting fastened objects which are sharp and dangerous in the boot that has been enlarged by folding the rear seats forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats » page 160, *Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats*.
- If the rear seat next to the folded forward seat is occupied, ensure maximum safety, e.g. by placing the goods to be transported in such a way that the seat is prevented from folding back in case of a rear collision.
- Never drive with the boot lid open or ajar, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Under no circumstances should the permissible axle loads and the permissible total vehicle weight be exceeded – risk of accident!
- Never transport people in the boot!

CAUTION

Please ensure that the heating elements for the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of abrasive objects.

Note

Tyre pressure must be adjusted to the load » page 206, *Service life of tyres*.

Class N1 vehicles

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 66.

On class N1 vehicles, which are not fitted with a protective grille, a lashing set which complies with the standard EN 12195 (1 - 4) must be used for fastening the load.

Fastening elements

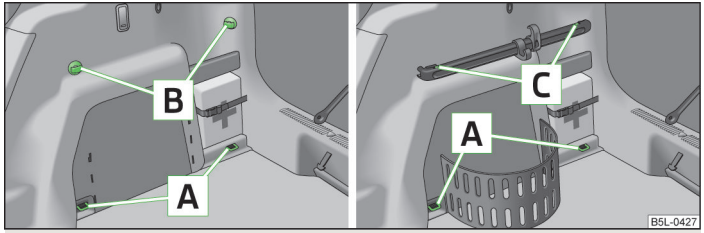

Fig. 56 **Boot: Lashing eyes and fastening elements/lashing eyes and fastening strip**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 66.

The boot provides the following fastening elements » Fig. 56.

A Lashing eyes for fastening items of luggage and fixing nets.
B Fastening elements for fastening fixing nets.
C Fastening strip with integrated hooks

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the lashing eyes is 3.5 kN (350 kg).

Folding hooks

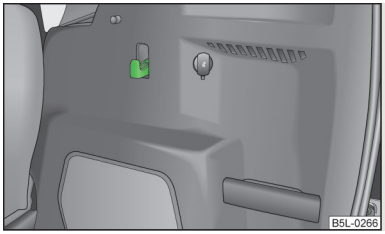

Fig. 57
Boot: folding hooks

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 66.

Folding hooks for attaching small items of luggage, such as bags etc., are provided on both sides of the boot » Fig. 57.

! CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the hook is 7.5 kg.

Fastening strip with moveable hook

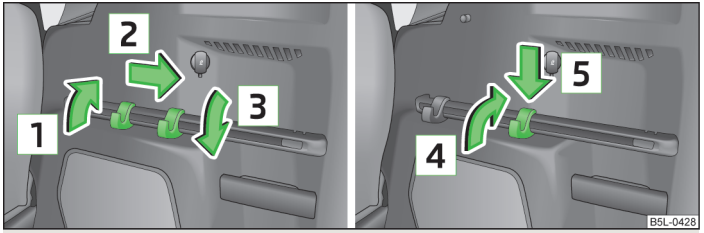

Fig. 58 **Boot: Fastening strip with moveable hook/remove hook**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 66.

A fastening strip is located on both sides of the boot with two moveable hooks each, in order to attach small items of luggage, such as bags, etc. » Fig. 58.

Move the hook into another position

› Fold up the hook in direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 58 until an angle of approx. 45° is reached.
› Move the hook in the direction of the arrow 2 into the desired position and fold down the hook as far as the stop in direction of arrow 3.

Remove the hook from the fastening strip

› Fold the hook in the direction of the arrow 4 » Fig. 58 until it slackens.

Install the hook on the fastening strip

› Position the hook on the fastening strip in the vertical position in the direction of the arrow 5 » Fig. 58 and lightly press it on.
› Fold the hook down in the opposite direction of the arrow 4 until it locks fully.

! CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of each hook is 7.5 kg.

Fixing nets

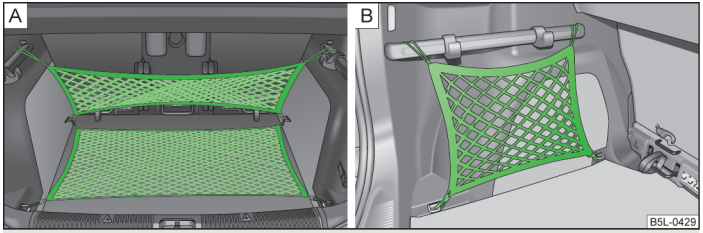

Fig. 59 **Fixing nets**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 66.

Fixing examples of the fixing net as double horizontal pockets, floor fixing net » Fig. 59 A and double vertical pockets » Fig. 59 - B.

WARNING

Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of the fixing nets. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!

CAUTION

- The maximum permissible load of the fixing nets is 1.5 kg.
- Do not place any sharp objects in the nets – risk of net damage.

Boot cover

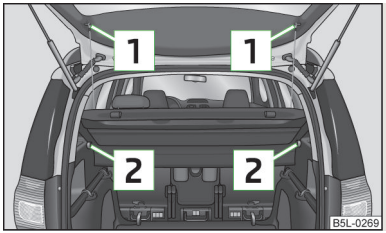

Fig. 60
Removing the boot cover

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 66.

The boot cover can be removed if you wish to transport bulky goods.

› Folding the seat backrests forward to make it easier to remove the boot cover » page 64, *Adjusting the seat backrest tilt*.
› Unhook the support straps 1 » Fig. 60.
› Place the cover in the horizontal position.
› Pull the boot cover out of the holders 2 to the rear or press on the bottom of the boot cover at the front.
› Fold the slackened front part of the boot cover over the head restraints of the rear seats.
› Slightly tilt the boot cover and remove it to the rear.
› To reinstall, first of all push the boot cover into the holders 2 and then hook the support straps 1 on the boot lid.

The removed boot cover can be stowed behind the seat backrests.

WARNING

No objects should be placed on the boot cover, the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.

CAUTION

Please ensure that the heating elements for the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of objects placed in this area.

Note

Opening the boot lid also lifts up the boot cover.

Net partition

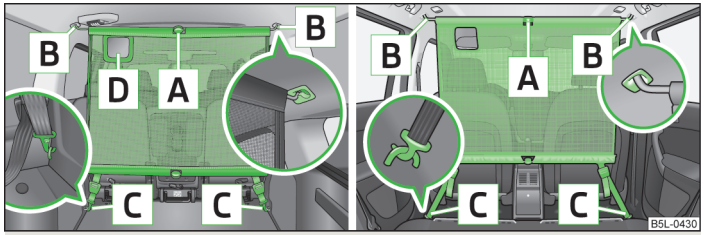

Fig. 61 **Using the net partition behind the front/rear seats**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 66.

The net partition can either be installed behind the rear seats or behind the front seats.

Installing the net partition behind the rear seats

› Remove the boot cover » page 69, *Boot cover*.
› Remove the net partition from the bag.
› Unfold both parts of the cross rod until they are heard to engage.
› First of all insert the cross rod into the mount B » Fig. 61 on one side and push it forward. In the same way, insert the cross rod into the mount B on the other side of the vehicle.

› Hang the carabines C at the ends of the strap into the lashing eyes behind the rear seats.
› Pull the belts through the tensioning clasp.

Removing the net partition
› Undo the belts on both sides and unhook the carabines C » Fig. 61.
› Push the cross rod first of all on the one side and then on the other side towards the rear.
› Remove the cross rod from the mounts B.

Packing the net partition
› Press the red button of the joint A » Fig. 61- the joint becomes loose.
› Put the separation net folded together in the bag and close it.
› Attach the bag with the aid of the plastic carabines to the eyes on the left and right boot trim panel.

Installing and removing the net partition behind the rear seats is carried out analogously as behind the rear seats. Use the lower fixing eyes on the carrier rails in order to attach the carabines. To enlarge the boot, the rear seats can be removed.

Installing and removing the net partition behind the rear seats with variable loading floor » page 70 is carried out analogously as behind the rear seats without variable loading floor. Use the lower fixing eyes on the carrier rails in order to attach the carabines.

The opening D » Fig. 61 in the net partition is designed to feed through the three-point seat belt » page 165.

Variable loading floor in boot

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Removing the variable loading floor ____ 70
Removing and installing carrier rails ____ 71

The variable loading floor makes it easier to handle bulky goods and creates an even boot floor when the rear seat backrests are folded forward.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg.

Note

▪ The room under the variable loading floor can be used to stow objects.
▪ If the variable loading floor is installed, no flexible storage compartment can be installed.

Removing the variable loading floor

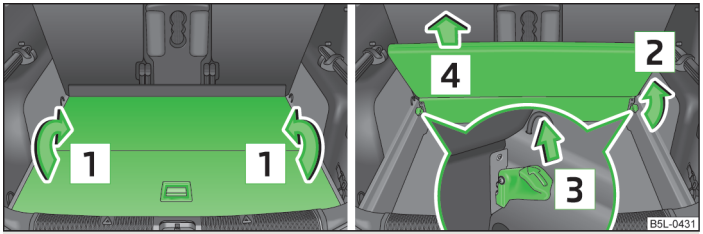

Fig. 62 **Boot: Folding up/removing the variable loading floor**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 70.

Remove variable loading floor
› Fold up the loading floor by moving it in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 62.
› Fold up the variable loading floor in direction of arrow 2.
› Pull on both sides of the locking levers in direction of arrow 3.
› Remove the variable loading floor in direction of arrow 4.
› The variable loading floor is installed in the reverse order.

Secure the variable loading floor in the raised position
› Fold up the hooks on the fastening strip in direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 58 on page 68.
› Fold up the variable loading floor behind the rear back backrests.
› Fold down the hooks in direction of arrow 3 as far as the stop.
› Support the variable loading floor on the hooks folded downwards.

Removing and installing carrier rails

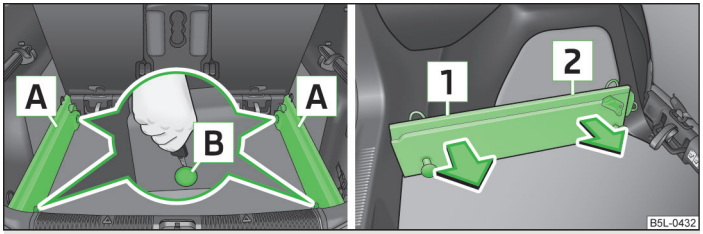

Fig. 63 **Slacken check points/remove carrier rails**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 70.

Removing

› Slacken the check points B » Fig. 63 on the carrier rails using the vehicle key or a flat screwdriver.
› Grasp the carrier rail A at position 1 and slacken it by pulling in the direction of arrow.
› Grasp the carrier rail A at position 2 and slacken it by pulling in the direction of arrow.

Install

› Position the carrier rails on the sides of the boot.
› Press both check points on each carrier rail B up to the stop.
› Check the attachment of the carrier rails by pulling it.

! WARNING

Pay attention when installing the variable loading floor that the carrier rails and the variable loading floor are correctly fixed, otherwise the occupants are at risk.

Variable loading floor with spare wheel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Using the variable loading floor with spare wheel 71
Removable storage box 72

Using the variable loading floor with spare wheel

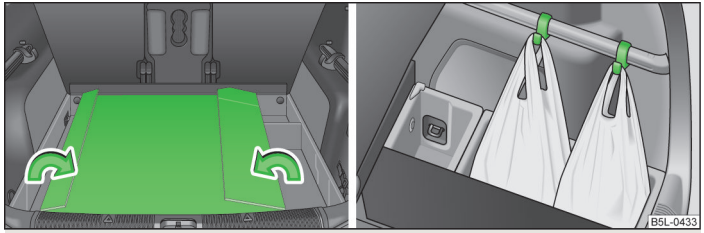

Fig. 64 **Fold the side parts of the loading floor/example for using the variable loading floor**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 71.

You can fold down the side parts of the variable loading floor in direction of arrow in order to enlarge the space foreseen for stowing items of luggage » Fig. 64.

i Note

- If the variable loading floor with spare wheel is installed, no flexible storage compartment can be installed.
- The variable loading floor with spare wheel can be secured in the raised position in the same way as the variable loading floor without spare wheel » page 70, *Secure the variable loading floor in the raised position.*

Removable storage box

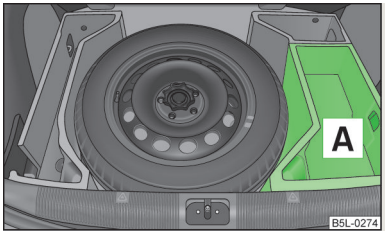

Fig. 65
Boot: Storage box

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 71.

The storage box A is housed under the variable loading floor. This can be removed where necessary.

There is a storage space for the vehicle tool kit under the storage box » page 214, *Vehicle tool kit*.

WARNING

The removable storage box must be located under the variable loading floor for the safe use of the variable loading floor.

Roof rack system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Roof load 72

WARNING

- The transported items on the roof rack must be securely attached – risk of accident!
- Always secure the load with appropriate and undamaged lashing straps or tensioning straps.
- Distribute the load evenly over the roof rack system.
- Transporting heavy or large objects on the roof rack alters the handling properties of the vehicle due to the displacement of the centre of gravity or the increased wind exposure area – risk of accident! The style of driving and speed must therefore be adapted to the current circumstances.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving/braking manoeuvres.
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The permissible roof load, permissible axle loads and permissible total vehicle weight must not be exceeded under any circumstances – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Only use roof rack systems approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s.
- If other roof rack systems are used or if the roof bars are not fitted correctly, any resulting damage to the vehicle is not covered by the warranty. It is therefore essential that the supplied fitting instructions for the roof rack system are observed.
- On vehicles with a panoramic sunroof, make sure that the tilted panorama roof does not strike any items which are transported.
- Ensure that the boot lid does not hit the roof load when opened.

For the sake of the environment

The increased aerodynamic drag results in a higher fuel consumption.

Roof load

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 72.

The maximum permissible roof load (including roof rack system) of **100 kg** and the maximum permissible total weight of the vehicle should not be exceeded.

The full permissible roof load cannot be used if a roof rack system with a lower load carrying capacity is used. In this case, the roof rack system must only be loaded up to the maximum weight limit specified in the fitting instructions.

Cup holders

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Cup holder in front centre console ____ 73
Cup holder in rear centre console ____ 73

WARNING

- Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder. If the vehicle moves, they may spill – risk of scalding!
- Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.

CAUTION

- Do not leave open beverage containers in the cup holder during the journey. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking which may cause damage to the electrical components or seat upholstery.
- The cup holder in the rear part of the centre console must be closed (otherwise it could get damaged) before folding forward the rear middle seat.

Cup holder in front centre console

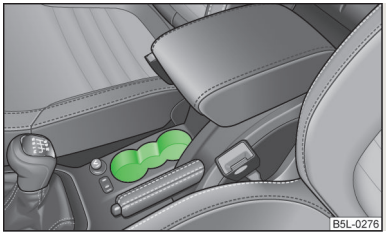

Fig. 66
Front centre console: Cup holder

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 73.

Two beverage containers can be placed into the recesses » Fig. 66.

Cup holder in rear centre console

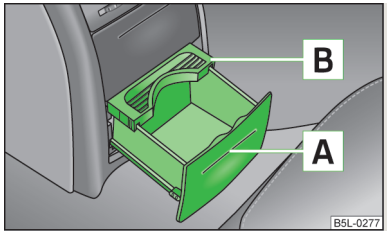

Fig. 67
Centre console at rear: Cup holder

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 73.

› Press on the panel in the area A » Fig. 67 - the cup holder comes out.
› Pull the cup holder out as far as the stop.
› Adjust the cup holder by moving the locking plate B.

Ashtray

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front ashtray ____ 74
Rear ashtray ____ 74

Front ashtray

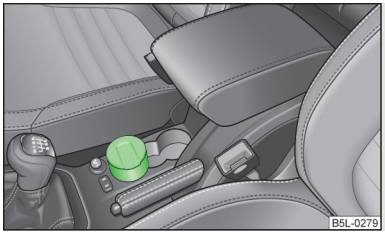

Fig. 68
Centre console: Front ashtray

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 73.

Removing
› Pull out the ashtray » Fig. 68 upwards.

Install
› Insert the ashtray vertically.

WARNING

Never place flammable objects in the ashtray – risk of fire!

CAUTION

When removing, do not hold the ashtray at the cover – risk of breakage.

Rear ashtray

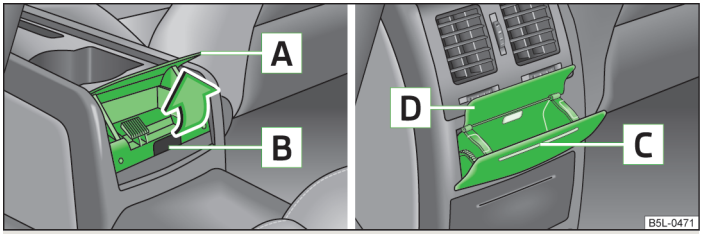

Fig. 69 **Rear ashtray: low centre console/high centre console**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 73.

Opening the ashtray on the low centre console
› Grasp the ashtray cover at the lower edge A and fold it open in the direction of arrow » Fig. 69.

Remove the ashtray from the low centre console
› Grasp the ashtray at the handle B » Fig. 69 and remove from above.

Removing the ashtray from the low centre console
› Place the ashtray insert into the console and press it in.

Opening the ashtray on the high centre console
› Press on the top part of the ashtray cover in area C » Fig. 69.

Removing the ashtray from the high centre console
› Carefully push the ashtray cover downwards as far as the stop.
› Grasp the ash tray insert at the cover D » Fig. 69and remove.

Inserting the ashtray into the high centre console
› Place the ashtray insert in the mount and press it in.

WARNING

Never place flammable objects in the ashtray – risk of fire!

CAUTION

The ashtray in the rear part of the centre console must be closed (otherwise it could get damaged) before folding forward the rear middle seat.

Storage compartments

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Storage compartment on the front passenger side 75
Cooling the storage compartment on the front passenger side 76
Storage compartment on the dash panel 76
Storage compartment in the front centre console 76
Map pockets on the front seats 77
Glasses storage box 77
Storage compartments in the doors 77
Storage compartment under the front passenger's seat 78
Front armrest with storage compartment 78
Folding table on the front seat rest 79
Folding table on the middle seat rest 79
Storage compartment in the rear centre console 80
Storage compartments in the boot 80
Flexible storage compartment 81

WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dash panel. These objects might slide or fall down when driving and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic – risk of accident!
- When driving, ensure that no objects from the centre console or from other storage compartments can get into the driver's footwell. You would then no longer be able to apply the brakes or operate the clutch or accelerator pedal – risk of accident!

Storage compartment on the front passenger side

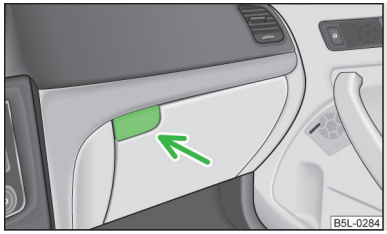

Fig. 70
Dash panel: Storage compartment on the front passenger side

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 75.

Open/close

› Press the button » Fig. 70 and the lid folds down.
› Lift the lid upwards until it clicks into place.

A pen holder is provided in the stowage compartment.

WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

Cooling the storage compartment on the front passenger side

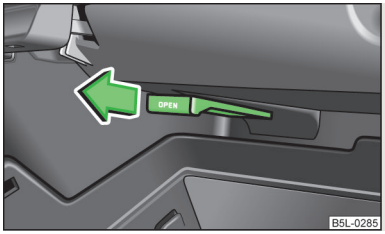

Fig. 71
Storage compartment: Using cooling system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 75.

› Open the air supply by pulling the lever in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 71.
› The air supply is closed by pressing the lever.

Opening the air supply when the air conditioning system is switched on allows cooled air to flow into the storage compartment.

Opening the air inlet when the air conditioning system is on causes fresh or interior air to flow into the storage compartment.

We recommend closing the air supply if it is operated in heating mode or the cooling system for the storage compartment is not being used.

Storage compartment on the dash panel

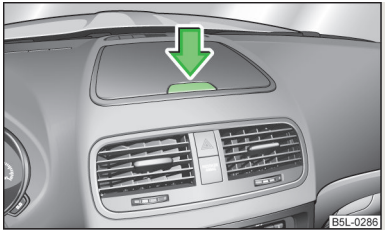

Fig. 72
Dash panel: Stowage compartment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 75.

› Press on the button » Fig. 72 in direction of arrow, the cover then folds upwards.

Certain models do not have a storage compartment lid.

! WARNING

- The storage compartment is not a substitute for the ashtray and must also not be used for such purposes – risk of fire!
- The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.
- Do not put any highly inflammable objects or objects which are sensitive to heat (e.g. lighters, sprays, spectacles, carbonated drinks) in the storage compartment.

Storage compartment in the front centre console

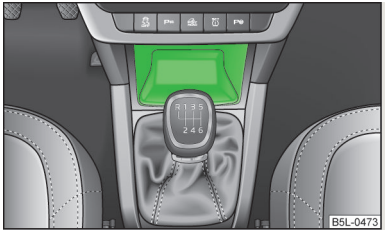

Fig. 73
Front centre console: Stowage compartment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 75.

The open storage compartment in the centre console is designed for the storage of small objects.

! WARNING

The storage compartment is not a substitute for the ashtray and must also not be used for such purposes – risk of fire!

Map pockets on the front seats



Fig. 74
Front seat rests: Map pockets

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 75.

Map pockets are located on the rear of the seat backrests » Fig. 74.

The map pockets are intended for storage of maps, magazines, etc.

WARNING

Never put heavy items in the map pockets – risk of injury!

CAUTION

Never put large objects into the map pockets, e.g. bottles or objects with sharp edges - risk of damaging the pockets and seat coverings.

Glasses storage box

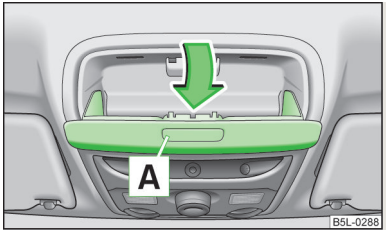

Fig. 75
Detail of the headliner: Glasses storage box

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 75.

› Press the button A » Fig. 75 and the compartment folds down.

CAUTION

- Do not put any heat-sensitive objects in the glasses storage box - they may be damaged.
- The compartment must only be opened when removing or inserting the spectacles and otherwise must be kept closed.
- On vehicles that are fitted with an anti-theft alarm system, the opened glasses storage box reduces the effectiveness of the sensors for the interior monitor.

Storage compartments in the doors

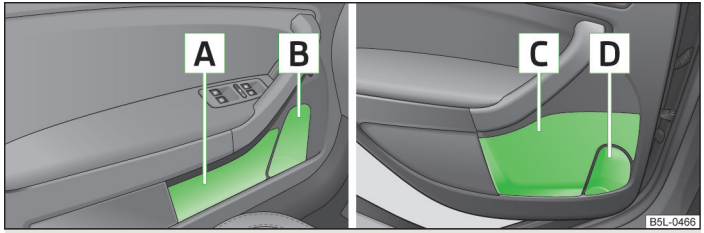

Fig. 76 **Storage compartment: in the front door/in the rear door**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 75.

In the area B » Fig. 76 of the storage compartment of the front doors and in the area D of the storage compartment of the rear doors is a bottle holder.

WARNING

Use the area A » Fig. 76 of the storage compartment only for storing objects which do not project so that the effectiveness of the side airbag is not impaired.

Storage compartment under the front passenger's seat

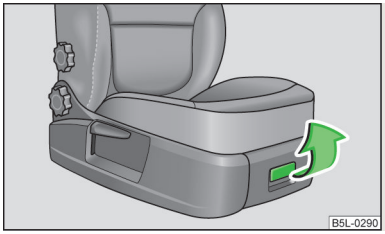

Fig. 77
Front passenger seat: Stowage compartment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 75.

› To open the lid, pull the handle » Fig. 77.
› When closing the lid, hold the handle until the compartment is closed.

CAUTION

The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects of up to 1.5 kg. in weight.

Front armrest with storage compartment

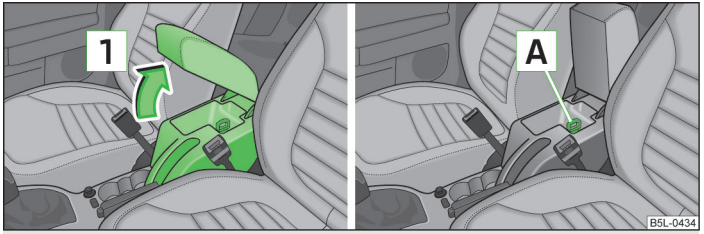

Fig. 78 **Armrest: Storage compartment/cooling of storage compartment**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 75.

The armrest is adjustable for height and length.

Opening the storage compartment
› Open the lid of the armrest in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 78.

Closing storage compartment
› Open the lid to the stop, only then can it be folded downwards.

Setting height
› First of all fold the cover downwards and then lift it in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 78 into one of the 4 fixed positions.

Adjusting in the forward/back direction
› Push the cover into the desired position.

Opening air inlet
› Pull the lock A » Fig. 78 upwards.

Closing air inlet
› Carefully push the lock A » Fig. 78 downwards until it stops.

On vehicles fitted with air conditioning, the storage compartment is equipped with a lockable inlet for thermally treated (warmed-up) air.

When the air vent is opened, the air flows into the stowage compartment with a temperature corresponding to the control dial settings on the A/C unit, depending on the outer climate conditions.

The air inlet in the storage compartment is connected to position through adjustment of the control dial for air distribution. This setting causes the maximum amount of air to flow into the storage compartment (depending on the rotary regulator position for the fan).

The storage compartment can, for example, be used to temper drinks cans, etc.

If you do not use the air inlet in the storage compartment, the inlet should always be kept closed.

Note

Push the armrest cover all the way back to the stop before applying the handbrake.

Folding table on the front seat rest

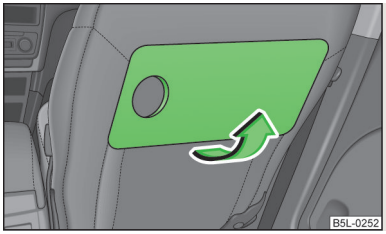

Fig. 79
Folding table on the front seat rest

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 75.

› Fold the table into the horizontal position by pulling in the direction of arrow » Fig. 79.
› Pushing against the direction of the arrow folds the table back into the vertical position.

WARNING

- The folding table must not be in the horizontal position while driving - risk of injury.
- Do not put any hot drinks in the cup holder in the folding table - risk of scalding!
- Do not use any vessels made of brittle materials (e.g. glass, porcelain) - risk of injury.

CAUTION

The folding table on the seat backrest of the front passenger seats is designed to hold smaller objects up to a maximum total weight of 10 kg.

Folding table on the middle seat rest

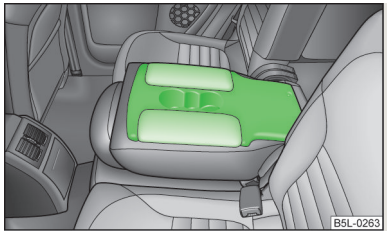

Fig. 80
Rear seats: Armrest

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 75.

The medium seat rest can be used after folding the » page 64, *Folding the seat backrest forward and folding the seat fully forward* armrest forward or the table with the cup holder » Fig. 80.

Two beverage containers can be placed into the recesses.

WARNING

- Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder. If the vehicle moves, they may spill – risk of scalding!
- Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.

CAUTION

- Do not leave open beverage containers in the cup holder during the journey. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking which may cause damage to the electrical components or seat upholstery.
- If the middle rear seat backrest should be folded forward for lengthy periods, then make sure that the belt locks are not located below it - this can warp the upholstery or fabric.

Storage compartment in the rear centre console

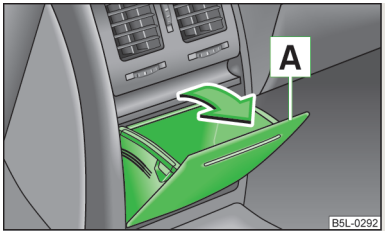

Fig. 81
Centre console at rear: Stowage compartment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 75.

The storage compartment is equipped with a removable insert.

› Open the storage compartment by pulling on the upper edge of the storage compartment A in the direction of arrow » Fig. 81.

WARNING

The storage compartment is not a substitute for the ashtray and must also not be used for such purposes – risk of fire!

CAUTION

The storage compartment in the rear part of the centre console must be closed (otherwise it could get damaged) before folding forward the rear middle seat.

Storage compartments in the boot

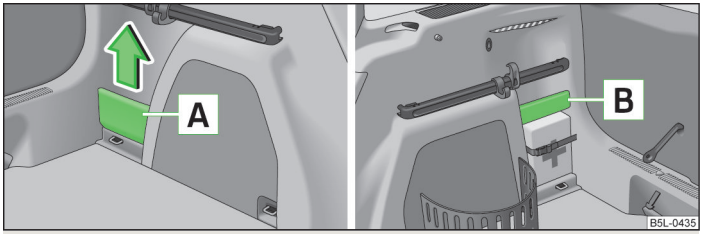

Fig. 82 **Boot: Storage compartments**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 75.

The cover for the side compartment A » Fig. 82can be removed, thus enlarging the boot.

› Grasp the top part of the cover A and carefully remove it in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 82.

CAUTION

- The removable storage compartment A » Fig. 82 on the left side is suitable for stowing small objects weighing up to 1.5 kg.
- The storage compartment B » Fig. 82 on the right side is suitable for stowing small objects weighing up to 0.5 kg.

Flexible storage compartment

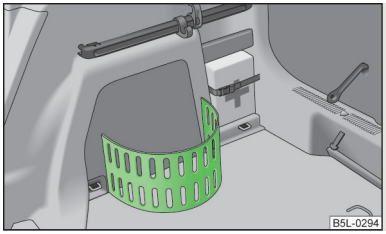

Fig. 83
Flexible storage compartment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 75.

The flexible storage compartment can be built into the right-hand side of the boot.

Install

› Insert both ends of the flexible storage compartment into the openings of the right side trim panel of the boot and push it downwards until it locks.

Removing

› Grasp the flexible storage compartment on the two upper corners.
› Press the upper corners inwards and release the storage compartment by pulling upwards.
› Remove by pulling towards you.

! CAUTION

The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects with a maximum total weight of 8 kg.

Useful equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Cigarette lighter 81
12-volt power socket 82
Removable through-loading bag 82
Clothes hooks 83
Parking ticket holder 83

Cigarette lighter

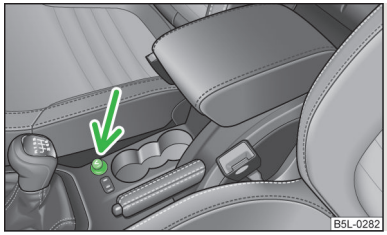

Fig. 84
Centre console: Cigarette lighter

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 81.

Using the system

› Press in the button of the cigarette lighter » Fig. 84.
› Wait until the button pops forward.
› Remove the cigarette lighter immediately and use.
› Place the cigarette lighter back into the socket.

! WARNING

- Take care when using the cigarette lighter! Improper use of the cigarette lighter can cause burns.
- The cigarette lighter also operates when the ignition is switched off or the ignition key withdrawn. Therefore never leave children unattended in the vehicle.

i Note

- The cigarette lighter socket can also be used as a 12Volt socket for electrical appliances » page 82, *12-volt power socket*.
- Further information » page 187, *Modifications, repairs and technical alterations*.

12-volt power socket

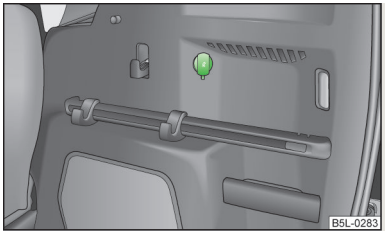

Fig. 85
Boot: Power socket

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 81.

Overview of the 12-volt power socket
In the front centre console » Fig. 84 on page 81.

In the boot » Fig. 85.

Using the socket in the front centre console
› Open the socket cover » Fig. 85.
› Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

Using the socket in the boot
› Remove the socket cover or the cigarette lighter » Fig. 84 on page 81.
› Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

Further information » page 187, *Modifications, repairs and technical alterations*.

WARNING

- Improper use of the 12-volt power socket and the electrical accessories can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. The 12-volt power socket and any connected appliances can also be operated when the ignition is switched off or the ignition key is withdrawn.
- If the connected electric device becomes too hot, switch it off and disconnect it from the power supply immediately.

CAUTION

- The 12-volt power socket can only be used for connecting approved electrical accessories with a total power uptake of up to 120 watt.
- Never exceed the maximum power consumption, otherwise the vehicle's electrical system can be damaged.
- If electrical components are switched on when the engine is not running, this will cause the car battery to discharge – risk of battery discharge!
- Only use matching plugs to avoid damaging the 12-volt power socket.
- Only use accessories that have been tested for electromagnetic compatibility in accordance with the applicable directives.
- Before turning the ignition on or off, and before starting the car, switch off the device connected to the 12-volt power socket to prevent any damage caused by voltage fluctuations.
- Observe the operating instructions for the connected devices!

Note

The 12-volt power socket can only be used for connecting approved electrical accessories with a power uptake of up to 120 watt.

Removable through-loading bag

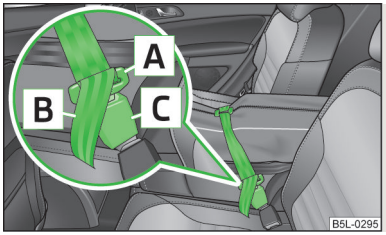

Fig. 86
Securing the removable through-loading bag

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 81.

The removable through-loading bag is solely used for transporting skis.

Loading
› Open a rear side door of the vehicle.
› Fold the middle seat backrest forward » page 63, *Rear seats*.

› Place the empty removable through-loading bag in the gap between the front and rear seats in such a way that the end of the bag with the zip lies in the boot.
› Open the boot lid.
› Push the skis into the removable through-loading bag from the boot » !.
› Close the removable through-loading bag with the zip.

Securing

› Pull the securing belt with both lock tongues out of the pocket of the removable through-loading bag.
› Insert the lock tongues A » Fig. 86 in the belt locks of the rear middle seat belt C, first of all on the one side and then on the other side.
› Place the securing belt in the middle of the skis between the heel and the tip of the bindings and pull the securing belt tight at the free end of the belt B.

! WARNING

- After placing the skis into the through-loading bag, you must secure the through-loading bag with the securing belt A.
- The securing belt must hold the skis tight.
- Ensure that the securing belt for skis grasps the middle between the tip and the heel element of the binding (see also imprint on the removable through-loading bag).
- The total weight of the skis which are transported must not exceed 10 kg.

i Note

- The removable through-loading bag is foreseen for two pairs of skis.
- Place the skis and sticks in the removable through-loading bag with the tips facing to the rear.
- If there are several pairs of skis in the removable through-loading bag, ensure that the bindings are positioned at the same height.
- The removable through-loading bag must never be folded together or stowed when moist.

Clothes hooks

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 81.

The clothes hooks are located on the middle pillar and on the handle of the headliner above each of the rear doors.

! WARNING

- Ensure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impair your vision to the rear.
- Only use the hooks for hanging light items of clothing and ensure that there are no heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets.
- Do not use clothes hangers for hanging up items of clothing otherwise this may reduce the effectiveness of head airbags.

! CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the hooks is 2 kg.

Parking ticket holder

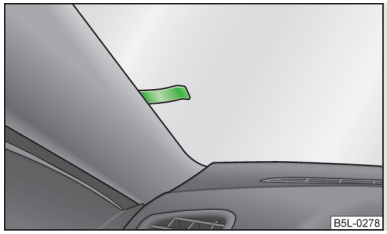

Fig. 87
Windscreen: Parking ticket holder

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 81.

The note holder is designed e.g. for attaching car park tickets.

! WARNING

The attached note has to always be **removed** before starting off in order not to restrict the driver's vision.

Heating and air-conditioning

Heating, ventilation, cooling

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Air outlet vents 85
Using the air conditioning system economically 85
Operational problems 86

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

If the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and air humidity drops in the vehicle. The well-being of the occupants of the car is enhanced as a result of this particularly at high outside temperatures and a high air humidity. The system prevents the windows misting up during the cold season of the year.

It is possible to briefly activate recirculated air mode to enhance the cooling effect.

Please refer to the information regarding recirculated air mode for the air-conditioning system » page 90 or for Climatronic » page 93.

The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of ice, snow or leaves to ensure that the heating and cooling system operates properly.

After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is quite normal and not an indication of a leak!

WARNING

- For your own safety and that of other road users, ensure that all the windows are free of ice, snow and misting. Please familiarize yourself about how to correctly operate the heating and ventilation systems, how to demist and defrost the windows, as well as with the cooling mode.
- Do not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air can cause fatigue of the driver and passengers, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

Note

- The used air streams out through the vents in the boot.
- We recommend that you do not smoke in the vehicle when the recirculating air mode is operating since the smoke which is drawn at the evaporator from the interior of the vehicle forms deposits in the evaporator of the air conditioning system. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).
- To ensure that the heating and air conditioning systems work properly, do not block up the air outlet vents with any objects.

Air outlet vents

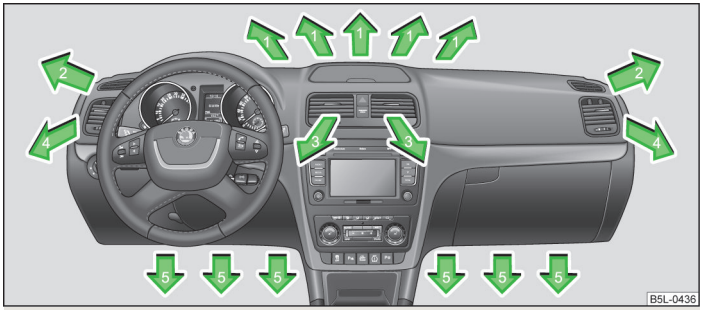

Fig. 88 **Air vents at the front**



Fig. 89 **Air vents at the rear**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 84.

Open the air outlet vents 3 and 4
› Turn the horizontal wheel (to the right) » Fig. 88.

Open the air outlet vents 6
› Turn the vertical wheel (between the settings) » Fig. 89.

Close air outlet vents 3 and 4
› Turn the horizontal wheel into the end position (to the left).

Close air outlet vents 6
› Turn the vertical wheel into the end position.

Change air flow of air outlet vents 3 and 4
› In order to change the strength of the air flow, swivel the horizontal lamellas with the aid of the moveable adjuster.
› In order to change the lateral direction of the air flow, swivel the vertical lamellas with the aid of the moveable adjuster.

Change air flow of air outlet vents 6
› In order to change the height of the air flow, swivel the horizontal lamellas with the aid of the vertical wheel upwards or downwards.
› In order to change the lateral direction of the air flow, swivel the vertical lamellas with the aid of the horizontal wheel.

The air outlet vents **3**, **4** » Fig. 88 and **6** » Fig. 89 can be closed and opened individually.

The air outlet vents **6** are only fitted on vehicles with the higher centre console.

Warmed, unwarmed or cooled air will flow out of the air outlet vents according to the setting of the regulator of the heating or the air conditioning system and the atmospheric conditions.

Using the air conditioning system economically

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 84.

The compressor on the air conditioning system uses power from the engine when in cooling mode which will effect the fuel consumption.

It recommended to open the windows or the doors of a vehicle for which the interior has been strongly heated through the effect of direct sunlight in order to allow the heated air to escape.

The cooling system should not be switched on while travelling when the window is open.

If the desired interior temperature can also be achieved without activating the cooling system, fresh air mode should be selected.

For the sake of the environment

Pollutant emissions are also reduced when fuel is saved.

Operational problems

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 84.

If the cooling system does not operate at outside temperatures higher than +5 °C, there is a problem in the system. The reasons for this may be.

› One of the fuses has blown. Check the fuse and replace if necessary » page 225.
› The cooling system has switched off automatically for a short time because the coolant temperature of the engine is too hot » page 9.

If you are not able to resolve the operational problem yourself, or if the cooler output has reduced, switch off the cooling system and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Heating

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 86
Setting the heating 87
Recirculated air mode 87

Operation

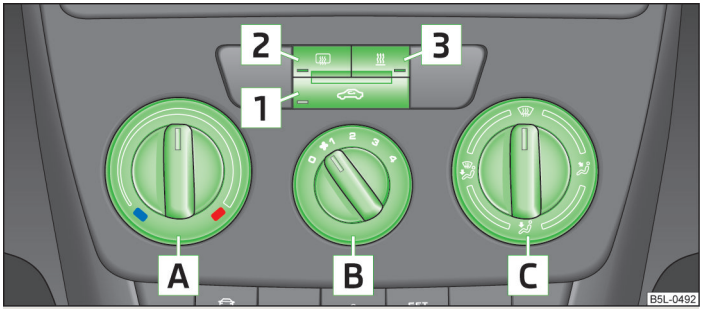

Fig. 90 **Heating: Control elements**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 86.

Setting temperature

› Turn the control dial A » Fig. 90 to the right to increase the temperature.
› Turn the control dial A to the left to decrease the temperature.

Controlling blower

› Turn the blower switch B » Fig. 90 into one of the positions, 1 to 4, to switch the blower on.
› Turn the blower switch B into position 0 to switch the blower off.
› If you wish to shut off the fresh air supply, use the button 1 » page 88, ! in section *Recirculated air mode*.

Regulating the air distribution

› The direction of the inlet air flow is controlled with air distribution regulator C » Fig. 90 » page 85.

Rear window heater

› Press the button 2. Further information » page 50, *Windscreen and rear window heater*.

Auxiliary heating (parking heating)

› Press the button 3 to directly switch on/off the auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation). Further information » page 94, *Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)*.

All controls apart from the blower switch B » Fig. 90 can be set to any desired intermediate position.

The blower should always be on to prevent the windows from misting up.

Note

If the air distribution is positioned towards the windows, the total amount of air is used to defrost the windows and thus no air will be fed to the footwell. This can lead to restriction of the heating comfort.

Setting the heating

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 86.

Recommended basic settings of the heating controls for the respective operating modes:

Set-up	Setting of the control dial			Button 1	Air outlet vents 4
	A	B	C		
Defrosting the windshield and side windows	To the right up to the stop	3		Do not switch on	Open and align with the side window
Free windshield and side windows from mist	Desired temperature	2 or 3	/	Do not switch on	Open and align with the side window
The fastest heating	To the right up to the stop	3		Briefly switch on	Opening
Comfortable heating	Desired temperature	2 or 3	/	Do not switch on	Opening
Fresh air mode - ventilation	To the left up to the stop	Desired position		Do not switch on	Opening

Note

- Controls A, B, C and the button 1 » Fig. 90 on page 86.
- Air outlet vents **4** » Fig. 88 on page 85.
- We recommend that you leave the air outlet vents **3** » Fig. 88 on page 85 in the opened position.

Recirculated air mode

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 86.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

Switching on

› Press the » Fig. 90 on page 86 button.

The warning light in the button lights up.

Switching off

› Press the button » Fig. 90 on page 86 again.

The warning light in the button goes out.

Recirculated air mode is switched off automatically if the air distribution control C is turned to position » Fig. 90 on page 86. Recirculated air mode can be switched on again from this setting by repeatedly pressing the button.

WARNING

Do not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air can cause fatigue of the driver and passengers, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

Air conditioning system (manual air conditioning system)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 88
Setting the air conditioning system 90
Recirculated air mode 90

The cooling system only operates if the following conditions are met:

✓ A/C Switched on.
✓ The engine is running.
✓ The outside temperature is above approx. +2 °C.
✓ The blower switch is switched on (positions 1-4).

Under certain circumstances, air at a temperature of about 5 °C can flow out of the vents when the cooling system is switched on.

Lengthy and uneven distribution of the air flow out of the vents and large differences in temperature, such as when getting out of the vehicle, may cause colds in sensitive persons.

Note

We recommend that you have the air conditioning system cleaned by a specialist garage once every year.

Operation

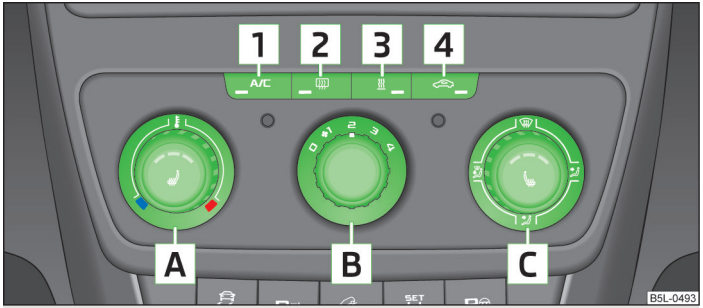

Fig. 91 **The air conditioning system: Control elements**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 88.

Setting temperature

› Turn the control dial A » Fig. 91 to the right to increase the temperature.
› Turn the control dial A to the left to decrease the temperature.

Controlling blower

› Turn the blower switch B » Fig. 91 into one of the positions, 1 to 4, to switch the blower on.
› Turn the blower switch B into position 0 to switch the blower off.
› Press button 4 to shut off the fresh air supply » Fig. 91.

Regulating the air distribution

› The direction of the inlet air flow is controlled with air distribution regulator C » Fig. 91 » page 85, *Air outlet vents*.

Switching the cooling system on and off

› Press the button A/C 1 » Fig. 91. The warning light lights up in the button.

› Pressing the button A/C again switches off the air conditioning system. The indicator light in the button goes out.

Rear window heater

› Press the button 2 » Fig. 91. Further information » page 50, *Windscreen and rear window heater*.

Auxiliary heating (parking heating)

› Press the button 3 » Fig. 91 to directly switch on/off the auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation). Further information » page 94, *Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)*.

Note

- The whole heat output will be needed to defrost the windscreen and side windows. No warm air will be fed to the footwell. This can lead to restriction of the heating comfort.
- The warning light in the button A/C » Fig. 91 lights up after activation, even if not all of the conditions for the function of the cooling system have been met. By lighting up of the indicator light in the button, the operational readiness of the cooling system is signalled.

Setting the air conditioning system

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 88.

Recommended basic settings of the control elements of the air conditioning system for the respective operating modes:

Set-up	Setting of the control dial			Button		Air outlet vents 4
	A	B	C	1	4	
Defrost/defog windscreen and side windows[a)]	Desired temperature	3 or 4		Automatically switched on	Do not switch on	Open and align with the side window
The fastest heating	To the right up to the stop	3		Switched off	Briefly switch on	Opening
Comfortable heating	Desired temperature	2 or 3	/	Switched off	Do not switch on	Opening
The fastest cooling	To the left up to the stop	briefly 4, then 2 or 3		Activated	Briefly switch on	Opening
Optimal cooling	Desired temperature	1, 2 or 3		Activated	Do not switch on	Open and align to the roof
Fresh air mode - ventilation	To the left up to the stop	Desired position		Switched off	Do not switch on	Opening

[a)] We recommend that you do not use this setting in countries with high humidity levels. This can result in heavy cooling of the window glass and the following fogging from outside.

Note

- Controls A, B, C and the button 1 and 4 » Fig. 91 on page 88.
- Air outlet vents **4** » Fig. 88 on page 85.
- We recommend that you leave the air outlet vents **3** » Fig. 88 on page 85 in the opened position.

Recirculated air mode

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 88.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

Switching on

› Press the button 4 » Fig. 91 on page 88, and the warning light in the button illuminates.

Switching off

› Press the button again, and the warning light in the button goes out.

Recirculated air mode is switched off automatically if the air distribution control C » Fig. 91 on page 88 is turned to position . Recirculated air mode can be switched on again from this setting by repeatedly pressing the button .

WARNING

Do not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air can cause fatigue of the driver and passengers, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning system)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Overview of control elements 91
Automatic mode 92
Switching cooling system on and off 92
Setting the temperature 92
Recirculated air mode 93
Controlling the blower 93
Defrosting the windscreen 94

The Climatronic maintains fully automatically a convenience temperature. This is achieved by automatically varying the temperature of the air flow, the blower stages and air distribution. The system also takes sunlight into account, which eliminates the need to alter the settings manually. The **automatic mode** » page 92 ensures maximum well-being of the occupants at all times of the year.

Description of Climatronic system

The cooling system only operates if the following conditions are met:
› engine running;
› outside temperature above approx. +2 °C;
› A/C 13 » Fig. 92 on page 91 switched on.

The AC compressor is switched off at a high coolant temperature in order to provide cooling at a high load of the engine.

Recommended setting for all periods of the year.
› Set the desired temperature, we recommend 22 °C.
› Press the button AUTO 8 » Fig. 92 on page 91.
› Move the air outlet vents **3** and **4** » Fig. 88 on page 85 so that the air flow is directed slightly upwards.

Note

▪ We recommend that you have Climatronic cleaned by a specialist garage once every year.
▪ On vehicles equipped with a factory-fitted radio or radio navigation system, the Climatronic information is also shown on their displays. This function can be switched off, see operating instructions for the radio or navigation system.

Overview of control elements

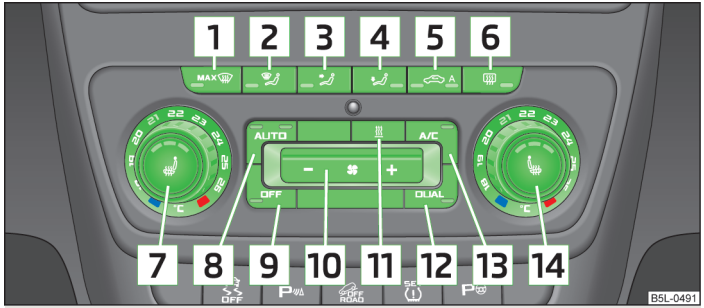

Fig. 92 **Climatronic: Control elements**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 91.

The buttons

1 Defrost windscreen intensively
2 Air flow to the windows
3 Air flow to head
4 Air flow in the footwell
5 Recirculated air mode with air quality sensor
6 Rear window heater

The buttons/control dial

7 Setting of the temperature for the left side, operation of the seat heating of the left front seat
8 Automatic mode AUTO
9 Switching off Climatronic OFF
10 Setting the blower speed
11 Depending upon vehicle equipment: Button for directly switching on/off the auxiliary heating » Fig. 93 on page 95 or switching on/off the windscreen heater » Fig. 35 on page 50
12 Switching on/off of the temperature setting in dual mode DUAL
13 Switching the cooling system on/off A/C
14 Setting of the temperature for the right side, operation of the seat heating of the right front seat

Note

Below the top row of buttons is located the interior temperature sensor. Do not stick anything on or cover the sensor, otherwise it could have an unfavourable effect on the Climatronic.

Automatic mode

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 91.

The automatic mode is used in order to maintain a constant temperature and to demist the windows in the interior of the car.

Switching on

› Set a temperature between +18 °C and +26 °C.
› Move the air outlet vents **3** and **4** » Fig. 88 on page 85 so that the air flow is directed slightly upwards.
› Press the button AUTO 8 » Fig. 92 on page 91. The indicator light in the top right or left corner lights up, depending on which mode was last selected.

If the warning light in the top right corner of the button AUTO lights up, the Climatronic operates in "HIGH" mode. The "HIGH" mode is the standard setting of the Climatronic.

When pressing again the button AUTO, the Climatronic changes into the "LOW" mode and the indicator light in the top left corner lights up. The Climatronic uses only in this mode the lower blower speed. However taking into account the noise level, this is more comfortable, yet be aware that the effectiveness of the air conditioning system is reduced particularly if the vehicle is fully occupied.

By pressing the button AUTO again, it is changed to "HIGH" mode.

Automatic mode is switched off by pressing one of the buttons for the air distribution or by increasing/decreasing the blower speed. The temperature is nevertheless regulated.

Switching cooling system on and off

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 91.

› Press the A/C » Fig. 92 on page 91 button. The warning light lights up in the button.
› Pressing the button A/C again switches off the air conditioning system. The indicator light in the button goes out. Only the function of the ventilation remains active when no lower temperature than the outside temperature can be reached.

Setting the temperature

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 91.

The interior temperature for the left and right side can be set separately.

› The temperature for both sides can be set with the control dial 7 » Fig. 92 on page 91 after switching on the ignition.
› If you wish to set the temperature for the right side, turn the control dial 14. The indicator light in the button DUAL lights up, this indicates that differing temperatures for the left and right side can be set.

If the indicator light in the button DUAL is illuminated, the temperature for both sides cannot be set with the control dial 7. You can reactivate this function by pressing the button DUAL. The indicator light in the button goes out.

The interior temperature can be set between +18 °C and +26 °C. The interior temperature is regulated automatically within this range. If a temperature lower than +18 °C is selected, a blue symbol lights up at the start of the numerical scale. If a

temperature higher than +26 °C is selected, a red symbol lights up at the start of the numerical scale. In both limit positions the Climatronic operates at maximum cooling or heating capacity, respectively. The temperature is not controlled in this case.

Lengthy and uneven distribution of the air flow out of the vents (especially around the feet) and large differences in temperature, for example, when getting out of the vehicle, can cause susceptible individuals to catch a cold.

Recirculated air mode

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 91.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam. If a considerable increase in concentration of pollutants is recognized by the air quality sensor, when the automatic air distribution control is switched on, the air distribution control will temporarily be switched off. If the concentration of pollutants decreases to the normal level, the air distribution control is automatically switched off so that fresh air can be guided into the vehicle interior. In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior. When the automatic air distribution control is switched on, an air quality sensor measures the concentration of pollutants in the drawn in air.

Switching recirculated air mode on

› Repeatedly press the button 5 » Fig. 92 on page 91 until the warning light on the left-hand side of the button lights up.

Switch on automatic air distribution control

› Repeatedly press the button until the warning light on the right-hand side of the button lights up.

Switch off automatic air distribution control temporarily

› If the air quality sensor does not automatically switch on the recirculated air mode in the event of an unpleasant odour, you can switch it on yourself by pressing the button . The indicator light lights up in the button on the left side.

Switching recirculated air mode off

› Press the AUTO button or repeatedly press the button until the warning lights in the button go out.

WARNING

Do not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air can cause fatigue of the driver and passengers, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

Note

- If the windscreen mists up, press the button MAX 1 » Fig. 92 on page 91. Press the button AUTO when the windscreen is demisted.
- The automatic air distribution control operates only if the outside temperature is higher than approx. 2 °C.

Controlling the blower

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 91.

The Climatronic system controls the blower stages automatically in line with the interior temperature. However, the blower stages can be manually adapted to suit your particular needs.

› Repeatedly press the button » Fig. 92 on page 91 on the left side (reduce blower speed) or on the right side (increase blower speed).

If the blower is switched off, the Climatronic system is switched off.

The set blower speed is displayed above the button when the respective number of indicator lights come on.

WARNING

- "Stale air" may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases.
- Do not switch off the Climatronic system for longer than necessary.
- Switch on the Climatronic system as soon as the windows mist up.

Defrosting the windscreen

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 91.

Switching on

› Press the button MAX 1 » Fig. 92 on page 91.
› Press the button 11 » Fig. 92 on page 91.

Switching off

› Press the button MAX 1 » Fig. 92 on page 91 again or press the button 8 AUTO.
› Press the button 11 » Fig. 92 on page 91 again.

The temperature control is controlled automatically. More air flows out of the air outlet vents **1** and **2** » Fig. 88 on page 85.

Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Switching directly on/off 95
System settings 95
Radio remote control 96
Replacing the battery in the radio remote control 96

Auxiliary heating (parking heating)
The auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating) functions in connection with the air-conditioning system or Climatronic.

It can be used when stationary, when the engine is switched off to preheat the vehicle and while driving (e.g. during the heating phase of the engine).

The engine is also preheated, if the auxiliary heating is switched on when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is switched off.

The auxiliary heating (parking heating) warms up the coolant by combusting fuel from the vehicle tank. The coolant warms up the air, which (if the blower speed is not set to zero) flows into the passenger compartment.

Auxiliary ventilation
The auxiliary ventilation enables fresh air to flow into the vehicle interior by switching off the engine, whereby the interior temperature is effectively decreased (e.g. with the vehicle parked in the sun).

WARNING

- The auxiliary heating (parking heating) must never be operated in closed rooms – risk of poisoning!
- The auxiliary heating (parking heating) must not be allowed to run during refuelling – risk of fire.
- The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating is located on the underside of the vehicle. Therefore, if you wish to operate the auxiliary heating, do not park the vehicle in such a way that the exhaust gases from the auxiliary heating can come into contact with highly flammable materials (e.g. dry grass) or easily inflammable substances (e.g. spilt fuel) - risk of fire.

Note

- If the auxiliary heating runs, the fuel consumption comes from the vehicle tank. The auxiliary heating automatically controls the filling level in the fuel tank. If only a low quantity of fuel is present in the fuel tank, the function of the auxiliary heating is blocked.
- The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating, which is located on the underside of the vehicle, must not be clogged and the exhaust flow must not be blocked.
- If the auxiliary heating and ventilation is running, the vehicle battery discharges. If the auxiliary heating and ventilation has been operated several times over a longer period, the vehicle must be driven a few kilometres in order to recharge the vehicle battery.
- The auxiliary heating only switches the blower on, if it has achieved a coolant temperature of approx. 50 °C.
- At low outside temperatures, this can result in a formation of water vapour in the area of the engine compartment. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
- After switching off the auxiliary heating, the coolant pump runs for a short period.
- The auxiliary heating and ventilation does not switch on or comes on, if the vehicle battery indicates a low loading state » page 204, *Automatic load deactivation*.
- The auxiliary heating (parking heating) does not switch on, if the following was shown in the information display or before switching off the ignition: **Please refuel.**

▪ The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of ice, snow or leaves in order to ensure that the auxiliary heating operates properly.
▪ So that warm air can flow into the vehicle interior after switching on the auxiliary heating, you must maintain the comfort temperature normally selected by you, leave the fan switched on and leave the air outlet vents in an open position. It is recommended to put the air flow in the position or .

Switching directly on/off



Fig. 93
Button for direct switching on/off of the auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) on the operating part of the air conditioning system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 94.

The auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) can be **directly** switched on or off at any time using the button » Fig. 93 on the operating part of the air-conditioning system, on the operating part of the Climatronic system or via the radio remote control » page 96.

If the auxiliary heating and ventilation has not already been switched off, it switches off automatically after the running time set in the **Running time** menu.

System settings

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 94.

The following menu items can be selected in the **Aux. heating** menu in the information display (depending on the vehicle equipment):
▪ **Day of the wk.** - Set the current day of the week.
▪ **Running time**- Set the required running time in 5 minute increments. The running time can be 10 to 60 minutes.
▪ **Mode** - Set the desired heating/ventilation mode.
▪ **Starting time 1**, **Starting time 2**, **Starting time 3** - for each pre-set time, the day and the time (hour and minute) can be set for switching on the auxiliary heating and/or ventilation. An empty position can be found between Sunday and Monday when selecting the day. If this empty position is selected, the activation is performed without taking into account the day.
▪ **Activate** - Activate pre-set mode.
▪ **Deactivate** - Deactivate pre-set mode.
▪ **Factory setting** - Restore factory setting.
▪ **Back** - Return to main menu.

Only one programmed pre-set time can be active.

The last programmed pre-set time remains active.

After the auxiliary heating activates at the set time, it is necessary to pre-set a time again.

If the pre-set menu is closed by selecting the **Back** menu item or if no changes are made on the display for more than 10 seconds, the set values are stored, but the pre-set time is not activated.

An indicator light on the button » Fig. 93 on page 95 is illuminated when the system is running.

The running system deactivates after expiration of the operating period or can be deactivated earlier by pressing the button to directly switch on/off the auxiliary heating or by using the radio remote control.

Radio remote control

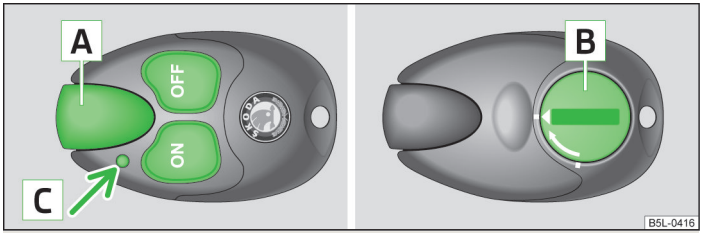

Fig. 94 **Auxiliary heating: Radio remote control**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 94.

› For switching on, press the button (ON) » Fig. 94.
› For switching off, press the button (OFF).

The transmitter and the battery are housed in the housing of the remote control. The receiver is located in the interior of the vehicle.

If the battery is properly charged, the effective range is up to 600 m. To switch on/off the auxiliary heating, hold the radio remote control vertically with the antenna A » Fig. 94 facing upwards. The antenna must not be covered with the fingers or the palm of the hand during this process. Obstacles between the radio remote control and the vehicle, bad weather conditions and a weaker battery can clearly reduce the range.

The auxiliary heating can only be switched on/off safely using the radio remote control, if the distance between the radio remote control and the vehicle is at least 2 m.

Warning light in the radio remote control
The indicator light in the radio remote control C » Fig. 94 indicates after a keystroke if the remote control signal was received by the auxiliary heating and if the battery is adequately charged.

Display indicator light	Importance
Lights up green for 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating was switched on.
Lights up red for 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating was switched off.
Slowly flashes green for 2 seconds.	The ignition signal was not received.
Quickly flashes green for 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating is blocked, e. g because the tank is nearly empty or there is a fault in the auxiliary heating.
Flashes red for 2 seconds.	The switch off signal was not received.
Lights up orange for 2 seconds, then green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was received.
Lights up orange for 2 seconds, then flashes green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was not received.
Flashes orange for 5 seconds.	The battery is discharged, however the switching on or off signal was not received.

CAUTION

The radio remote control comprises electronic components and must therefore be protected against water, severe impacts and direct sunlight.

Replacing the battery in the radio remote control

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 94.

If the indicator light on the radio remote control indicates a weak or discharged battery, C » Fig. 94 on page 96, it must be replaced. The battery is located under a cover B » Fig. 94 on page 96 on the back of the radio remote control.

› Insert a flat, blunt object, such as a coin, into the gap on the battery cover, turn the cover in the opposite direction of the arrow up to the mark and unlock it.
› Change the battery, replace the battery cover and lock it by moving it in the direction of the arrow.

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of the used battery in accordance with national legal provisions.

Note

- Pay attention to the correct polarity when changing the battery.
- The replacement battery must have the same specification as the original battery.

Communication and multimedia

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Mobile phones and two-way radio systems ____ 98
Operating the phone on the multifunction steering wheel ____ 99
Symbols in the information display ____ 100
Phone Phonebook ____ 100

Mobile phones and two-way radio systems

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 98.

ŠKODA permits the operation of mobile phones and two-way radio systems with a professionally installed external aerial and a maximum transmission power of up to 10 watts.

Please consult a ŠKODA Partner for information about the possibility of installing and operating mobile phones and two-way radio systems with a transmission power of more than 10 W.

Operating mobile phones or two-way radio systems may interfere with the functionality of the electronic systems in your vehicle.

The reasons for this are as follows:
› no external aerial;
› external aerial incorrectly installed;
› transmission power greater than 10 watts.

WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle. Use the telephone system only to such an extent that you are in full control of your vehicle at any time.
- The national regulations for using a mobile phone in a vehicle must be observed.
- If a mobile phone or a two-way radio system is operated in a vehicle without an external aerial or an external aerial which has been installed incorrectly, this can increase the strength of the electromagnetic field inside the vehicle.
- Two-way radio systems, mobile phones or mounts must not be installed on airbag covers or within the immediate deployment range of the airbags.
- Never leave a mobile phone on a seat, on the dash panel or in another area, from which it can be thrown during a sudden braking manoeuvre, an accident or a collision - risk of injury.
- If travelling by air, the Bluetooth® function for the hands-free system must be switched off by a specialist garage.

Note

- We recommend that the installation of mobile phones and two-way radio systems in a vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.
- Not all mobile phones that enable Bluetooth® communication are compatible with the universal telephone preinstallation GSM II or GSM III. Ask a ŠKODA Partner whether your phone is compatible with the universal telephone preparation GSM II or GSM III.
- The range of the Bluetooth® connection to the hands-free system is restricted to the vehicle interior. The range is dependent on local factors, e.g. obstacles between the devices and mutual interferences with other devices. If your mobile phone is in a jacket pocket, for example, this can lead to difficulties when establishing a connection with the hands-free-system or transferring data.

Operating the phone on the multifunction steering wheel

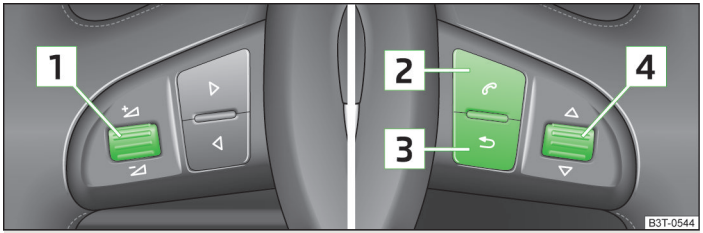

Fig. 95 **Multifunction steering wheel: Control buttons for the telephone**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 98.

The driver can set the basic functions of the telephone by simply operating the buttons located on the steering wheel so that he can concentrate on the traffic situation without being distracted as little as possible by operating the telephone » Fig. 95.

This applies only if your vehicle has been equipped with the universal telephone preinstallation at the factory.

The buttons operate the functions for the operating mode of the current telephone.

If the side lights are switched on, the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel are illuminated.

Button/dial	Action	Operation
1	Press briefly	Switch on/off the voice control (Button PTT - Push to talk) Cancellation of the played message
1	Turn upwards	Increase volume
1	Turn downwards	Decrease volume
2	Press briefly	Accept call, end call, entry in the main menu of the telephone, list of the dialed numbers, call the dialed contact
2	Press button for a long period of time	Reject call, private call[a)] Reject call, list of the last calls, access to the main menu of the phone, list of dialled numbers[b)]
3	Press briefly	Reach one level higher in the menu (according to the current position in the menu)
3	Press button for a long period of time	Leave the phone menu
4	Press briefly	Confirm menu selection
4	Press button for a long period of time	To the next initial letter in the telephone book
4	Turn upwards	The last chosen menu selection, name
4	Turn downwards	The next menu selection, name

Button/dial	Action	Operation
4	Quickly turn upwards	To the previous initial letter in the telephone book
4	Quickly turn downwards	To the next initial letter in the telephone book

a) Applies to GSM II.
b) Applies to GSM III.

Symbols in the information display

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 98.

Symbol	Importance	Valid for
	Charge status of the phone battery[a]	GSM II, GSM III
	Signal strength[a]	GSM II, GSM III
	A phone is connected with the hands-free system.	GSM II, GSM III when connected via the HFP profile
	The hands-free system is visible to other devices	GSM II, GSM III when connected via the HFP profile
	A phone is connected with the hands-free system.	GSM III when connected via the rSAP profile
	The hands-free system is visible to other devices	GSM III when connected via the rSAP profile
	A multimedia unit is connected to the hands-free system	GSM II, GSM III
	A UMTS network is available	GSM III
	Internet connection via the hands-free system	GSM III when connected via the rSAP profile

a) This function is only supported by some mobile phones.

Phone Phonebook

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 98.

A phone phonebook is part of the hands-free system. This phone phonebook can be used depending on the type of mobile phone.

After the first connection of the telephone, the system begins to load the phone book from the phone and the SIM card into the memory of the control unit.

Each time the telephone has established a new connection with the hands-free system, an update of the relevant phone book is performed. The updating can take a few minutes. During this time the phone book, which was stored after the last update was completed, is available. Newly stored telephone numbers are only shown after the updating has ended.

The update is interrupted if a telephone event (e.g. incoming or outgoing call, voice control dialogue) occurs during the updating procedure. After the telephone event has ended, the updating starts anew.

GSM II
The internal phonebook provides 2 500 free memory locations. Each contact can contain up to 4 numbers.

On vehicles fitted with the Columbus navigation system, a maximum of 1 200 telephone contacts are shown on the display of this appliance.

If the number of contacts loaded exceeds 2 500, the phone book is not complete.

GSM III
The internal phonebook provides 2 000 free memory locations. Each contact can contain up to 5 numbers.

On vehicles fitted with the Columbus navigation system, a maximum of 1 000 telephone contacts are shown on the display of this appliance.

If the mobile phone's telephone book has more than 2 000 contacts, the following message will appear in the information display:

Phone book not fully loaded

Universal telephone preinstallation GSM II

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Connecting the mobile phone to the hands-free system 101
Inserting the mobile phone and adapter 102
Managing telephone calls with the help of the adapter 103
Operate the telephone via the information display 103

The universal telephone preinstallation GSM II ("hands-free system") includes a convenience mode for the mobile phone via voice control, the multifunction steering wheel, the adapter, radio or the navigation system.

The universal telephone preinstallation GSM II comprises the following functions.
- Phone Phonebook » page 100.
- Convenience operation of the telephone via the multifunction steering wheel » page 99.
- Managing telephone calls via the adapter » page 103.
- Operation of the telephone via the information display » page 103.
- Voice control of the telephone » page 109.
- Music playback from the telephone or other multimedia units » page 112.

All communication between a mobile phone and your vehicle's hands-free system is established with the help of Bluetooth® technology. The adapter serves only for charging the telephone and for transmitting the signal to the vehicle's external aerial.

Note

The following guidelines must be observed » page 98, *Mobile phones and two-way radio systems*.

Connecting the mobile phone to the hands-free system

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 101.

To connect a mobile phone with the hands-free system, the two devices must be paired. Detailed information on this is provided in the operating instructions for your mobile phone.

The following steps must be carried out for the connection.
- Activate Bluetooth® and the visibility of your mobile phone on your telephone.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Select the **Phone** - **New user** menu in the information display and wait until the control unit has completed the search.
- Select the phone you wish to connect from the list of units found.
- Confirm the PIN[1].
- If the hands-free system announces (as standard **SKODA_BT**) on the display of the mobile phone, enter the PIN[1] within 30 seconds and wait, until the connection is established[2].
- After terminating the connection, confirm the creation of a new user profile in the information display.

If there is no free space available to create a new user profile, delete an existing user profile.

[1] Depending on the Bluetooth® version on the mobile phone, an automatically generated 6-digit PIN (SSP) is either displayed, or the PIN **1234** has to be entered manually.

[2] Some mobile phones have a menu, in which the authorisation for establishing a Bluetooth® connection is completed by inputting a code. If the authorisation input is required, it must always be performed when re-establishing the Bluetooth connection.

During the connecting procedure, no other mobile phone may be connected with the hands-free system.

Up to four mobile phones can be paired with the hands-free system, whereby only one mobile phone can communicate with the hands-free system.

The visibility of the hands-free system is automatically switched off 3 minutes after the ignition is switched on and is also deactivated when the mobile phone has connected to the hands-free system.

Restoring the visibility of the hands-free system

If you have not managed to connect your mobile phone with the hands-free system within 3 minutes of switching on the ignition, the visibility of the hands-free system can be reestablished for 3 minutes in the following ways.
› By turning the ignition off and on.
› By turning voice control off and on.
› Via the **Bluetooth** - **Visibility** menu item in the information display.

Creating a connection with an already paired mobile phone
After switching on the ignition, the connection is automatically established for the already paired mobile phone[1]. Check on your mobile phone if the automatic connection has been established.

Disconnecting the connection
› By withdrawing the ignition key.
› By disconnecting the hands-free system in the mobile phone.
› By disconnecting the user in the **Bluetooth** - **User** menu item in the information display.

Solving connection problems

If the system reports **No paired phone found**, check the operating status of the mobile phone.
› Is the mobile phone switched on?
› Is the PIN code entered?
› Is Bluetooth® active?
› Is the visibility of the mobile phone active?
› Has the mobile phone already been paired with the hands-free system?

[1] Some mobile phones have a menu, in which the authorisation for establishing a Bluetooth® connection is completed by inputting a code. If the authorisation input is required, it must always be performed when re-establishing the Bluetooth connection.

Note

▪ If a suitable adapter is available for your mobile phone, only use your mobile phone in the adapter inserted in the telephone mount so that the radiation in the vehicle drops to a minimum.
▪ Placing the mobile phone in the adapter inserted in the telephone mount ensures optimum sending and receiving power.

Inserting the mobile phone and adapter

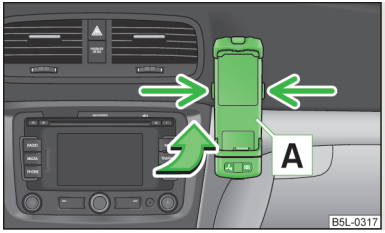

Fig. 96
Universal telephone preinstallation

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 101.

Only one telephone mount is factory-fitted. An adapter for the mobile phone can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Inserting the adapter and mobile phone
› First of all push the adapter A in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 96 up to the stop into the mount. Then press the adapter slightly downwards, until it locks securely into position.
› Insert the mobile phone into the adapter A (as specified in the instructions from the manufacturer of the adapter).

Removing the adapter and mobile phone
› Simultaneously press the locks on the mount » Fig. 96 and remove the adapter with the mobile phone.

CAUTION

Taking the mobile phone out of the adapter during the call can lead to interruption of the connection. When removing the mobile phone, the connection to the factory-fitted antenna is interrupted, which reduces the quality of the transmitting and receiving signal. The charging of the mobile phone battery is also interrupted.

Managing telephone calls with the help of the adapter

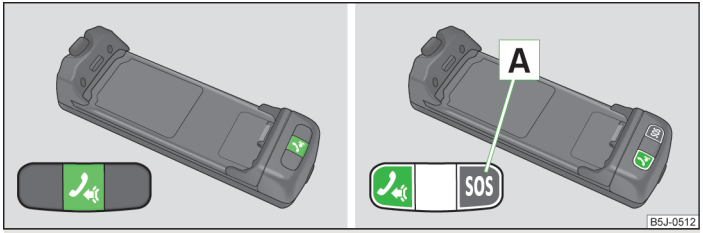

Fig. 97 **Principle sketch: Adapter with one button/adapter with two buttons**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 101.

Function overview of the (PTT - "push to talk") button on the adapter » Fig. 97:
› Switch on/off voice control;
› Accept/end a call.

On some adapters include the button SOS **A** » Fig. 97 in addition to the button . After pressing this button for 2 seconds, the number 112 (Emergency call) is dialled.

Note

On vehicles fitted with the Columbus navigation system , the buttons and SOS do not work.

Operate the telephone via the information display

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 101.

The following menu items can be selected from the **Phone** menu.
- **Phone book**
- **Dial number**[1)]
- **Call lists**
- **Voice mailbox**
- **Bluetooth**[1)]
- **Settings**[2)]
- **Back**

Phone book

The **Phone book** menu item lists the contacts downloaded from the telephone memory and the mobile phone SIM card.

Dial number

Any telephone number can be entered in the **Dial number** menu item. The required digits must be selected one after the other using the adjustment wheel, and then confirmed by pressing the adjustment wheel. You can select digits **0-9**, symbols **+, ✳, #** and the **Cancel**, **Call** and **Delete** functions.

Call lists

The following menu items can be selected in the **Call register** menu item.
- **Missed** - List of missed calls
- **Dialled** - List of dialled numbers
- **Received** - List of received calls

Voice mailbox

In the **Voice mailbox** menu item, you can set the number of the voice mailbox[1)] and then dial the number.

Bluetooth

The following menu items can be selected from the **Bluetooth** menu item.
- **User** - Overview of the stored users
- **New user** - Search for new mobile phones in the reception range
- **Visibility** - Switches on the visibility of the phone for other devices

1) On vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system, this function can be accessed via the navigation system menu; refer to the operating instructions for the Amundsen+ navigation system.
2) This function is not available in vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system.

- **Media player** - Playback via Bluetooth®
  - **Active device** - Connected device
  - **Paired devices** - List of paired devices
  - **Search** - Device search
- **Phone name** - option to change the name of the phone (default SKODA_BT)

Settings

The following menu items can be selected from the **Settings** menu item.
- **Phone book** - Phone book
  - **Update**[1] - Update the phone book
  - **List** - Arrange the entries in the phone book
    - **Surname** - Arrange according to surname
    - **First name** - Arrange according to first name
- **Ring tone** - Ring tone setting

Back
Return in the Start menu of the telephone.

Universal telephone preinstallation GSM III

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Connecting the phone to the hands-free system ____ 104
Operate the telephone via the information display ____ 105
Internet connection via Bluetooth ® ____ 107

The universal telephone preinstallation GSM II ("hands-free system") includes a convenience mode for the mobile phone via voice control, the multifunction steering wheel, the radio or navigation system.

The universal telephone preparation GSM III includes the following functions:
› Phone Phonebook » page 100.
› Convenience operation via the multifunction steering wheel » page 99.
› Operation of the telephone via the information display » page 105.
› Voice control of the telephone » page 109.
› Music playback from the telephone or other multimedia units » page 112.
› Internet connection » page 107.
› Display of SMS messages » page 106.

All communication between a telephone and the hands-free system of your vehicle can only be established with the help of the following profiles of Bluetooth® technology.

rSAP - Remote SIM access profile
After connecting the telephone with the hands-free system via the **rSAP** profile, the telephone deregisters from the GSM network, and communication with the network is only enabled by the control unit via the vehicle's external aerial. In the telephone only the interface for Bluetooth® remains active. In this case, you can only use the mobile phone to disconnect from the hands-free system, deactivate the Bluetooth® connection or dial the emergency number 112 (only valid in some countries).

HFP - Hands Free Profile
After connecting the telephone with the hands-free system via the **HFP** profile, the telephone continues to use its GMS module and the internal antenna to communicate with the GSM network.

Note

The following guidelines must be observed » page 98, *Mobile phones and two-way radio systems*.

Connecting the phone to the hands-free system

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 104.

To connect a mobile phone with the hands-free system, it is necessary to interconnect the telephone and hands-free system. Detailed information on this is provided in the operating instructions for your mobile phone. The following steps must be carried out for the connection.

Connecting the telephone with the hands-free system via the rSAP profile
› Activate Bluetooth® and the visibility of your mobile phone on your telephone. For certain mobile phones it is necessary to switch on first the **rSAP** function.
› Switch on the ignition.

[1] On vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system, this function can be accessed via the navigation system menu; refer to the operating instructions for the Amundsen+ navigation system.

› Select the **Phone** - **New user** menu in the information display and wait until the control unit has completed the search.
› Select the phone you wish to connect from the list of units found.
› Confirm the PIN[1].
› If your SIM card is blocked by a PIN code, enter the PIN code for the SIM card in your phone. The telephone connects to the hands-free system (during the first connection you can only enter the PIN code in the information display when the vehicle is stationary, as this is the only situation when you can choose whether the PIN code should be stored).
› Follow the instructions in the information display, the first time a new user is stored.
› Reconfirm the **rSAP** command on your mobile phone to download the telephone book and the identification data from the SIM card into the control unit.

Connecting the telephone with the hands-free system via the HPP profile
› Activate Bluetooth® and the visibility of your mobile phone on your telephone.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Select the **Phone** - **New user** menu in the information display and wait until the control unit has completed the search.
› Select the phone you wish to connect from the list of units found.
› Confirm the PIN[1].
› Follow the instructions on the information display and the mobile phone, to store a new user or to download the telephone book and identification data from the SIM card into the control unit.

The telephone primarily connects via the **rSAP** profile.

If the PIN code was stored, the telephone is automatically detected and connected with the hands-free system the next time the ignition is switched on. Check your mobile phone to see whether this automatic connection has been established.

Disconnecting the connection
› By removing the key from the ignition lock (the connection is disconnected during a telephone call).
› By disconnecting the hands-free system in the mobile phone.
› By disconnecting the user in the **Bluetooth** - **User**Select user **- Disconnect** menu item.

On vehicles which are fitted with a radio or navigation system at the factory, it is possible to terminate the telephone call after removing the key from the ignition lock by pressing the button on the touchscreen of the radio[2] or navigation system; refer to the operating instructions for the radio or navigation system.

Note

▪ In the memory of the control unit, up to three users can be stored, whereby the hands-free system can only communicate actively with one user. If a connection is established with a fourth mobile phone, one of the users must be deleted.
▪ When connecting to the hands-free system, follow the instructions on your mobile phone.

Operate the telephone via the information display

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 104.

If no phone is connected to the hands-free system, the message **No paired phone found**appears with the following menu items when the **Mobile phone** menu is selected.
▪ **Help** - This menu item appears when no paired phone is stored in the memory of the control unit.
▪ **Connect** - This menu item appears when one or more paired phones are stored in the memory of the control unit.
▪ **New user** - New user
▪ **Media player** - Media player
  ▪ **Active device** - Connected device
  ▪ **Paired devices** - List of paired devices
  ▪ **Search** - Device search
  ▪ **Visibility** - Visibility on/off
▪ **SOS** - Emergency

If a telephone is coupled with the hands-free system, the following menu items can be selected in the **Mobile phone** menu.

[1] Depending on the Bluetooth ® version on the mobile phone, an automatically generated 6-digit PIN (SSP) will either be displayed, or a 16-digit code displayed in the information display will need to be entered into your mobile phone and confirmed by following the instructions on your mobile phone display.
[2] Does not apply for Radio Swing.

Phone book
The **Phone book** menu item lists the contacts downloaded from the telephone memory and the mobile phone SIM card.

The following functions are available for each phone contact.

- Display a phone number
- **Voice tag** - Voice tag for the contact
  - **Replay** - Play a voice tag
  - **Record** - Record a voice contact

Dial number
Any telephone number can be entered in the **Dial number** menu item. The required digits must be selected one after the other using the adjustment wheel, and then confirmed by pressing the adjustment wheel. You can select digits **0-9**, symbols **+, ✳, #** and the **Delete**, **Call** and **Back** functions.

Call lists

The following menu items can be selected in the **Call register** menu item.
- **Missed** - List of missed calls
- **Received** - List of received calls
- **Dialled** - List of dialled numbers
- **Delete lists** - Delete call registers

Voice mailbox
In the **Voice mailbox** menu item, you can set or save the number of the voice mailbox and then dial the number. The required digits must be selected one after the other using the adjustment wheel, and then confirmed by pressing the adjustment wheel. You can select digits **0-9**, symbols **+, ✳, #** and the **Delete**, **Call**, **Save** and **Back** functions.

SMS[1)]

A list of received text messages is displayed in the **SMS** menu item. After calling a message, the following functions appear.
- **Show** - Display text message
- **Read** - the system reads out the selected text message through the vehicle's speakers
- **Send time** - Display message send time
- **Callback** - Dial the phone number of the sender of the text message
- **Copy** - Copy the received text message to the SIM card
- **Delete** - Delete the message

Bluetooth

The following menu items can be selected from the **Bluetooth** menu item.
- **User** - Overview of the stored users
  - **Connect** - Connection with the user
  - **Disconnect** - Disconnection of user
  - **Rename** - Rename the user
  - **Delete** - Delete the user
- **New user** - Search for users in the reception range
- **Visibility** - Switches on the visibility of the hands-free system for other devices
- **Media player** - Media player
  - **Active device** - Connected device
  - **Paired devices** - List of paired devices
    - **Connect** - Connection with the device
    - **Rename** - Rename the device
    - **Delete** - Delete the device
    - **Authorisation** - Authorise the device
  - **Search** - Search for available media players
  - **Visibility** - Switch on the visibility of the hands-free system for media players in the vicinity
- **Modem** - Overview of the active and paired devices for connection to the Internet
  - **Active device** - Connected device
  - **Paired devices** - List of paired devices
- **Phone name** - option to change the name of the hands-free system (default SKODA_BT)

WLAN
WLAN menu item» page 109, *Operating a Wi-Fi network in the information display*.

Settings

The following menu items can be selected from the **Settings** menu item.
- **Phone book** - Phone book
  - **Update** - Read in the phone book
  - **Select memory** - Select memory with phone contacts
    - **SIM & phone** - Download the contacts of the SIM card and the phone
    - **SIM card** - Download the contacts from the SIM card
    - **Mobile phone** - Initial setting to also import contacts from the SIM card; it is necessary to switch to the **SIM & phone** menu item

[1)] Only applies when connecting the telephone to the hands-free system via the rSAP profile.

- **List** - Arrange the entries in the phone book
  - **Surname** - Arrange according to surname
  - **First name** - Arrange according to first name
- **Own number** - optionally display your own telephone number on the display of the device of the person you are calling (this function is network-dependent)
  - **Network depnd.** - Network-dependent own number display
  - **Yes** Allow display of your own number
  - **No** Prohibit display of your own number
- **Signal settings** - Signal settings
  - **Ring tone** - Ring tone setting
  - **Volume** - Signal volume settings
    - **Turn vol. up** - Increase volume
    - **Turn vol. down** - Decrease volume
- **Phone settings** - Phone settings
  - **Select operator** - Select operator
    - **Automatic** - Automatic operator selection
    - **Manual** - Manual operator selection
  - **Network mode** - Network mode
    - **UMTS** - UMTS
    - **GSM** - GSM
    - **Automatic** - Automatic
  - **SIM mode** - Applies to telephones with the rSAP profile that simultaneously support the operation of two SIM cards - there is an option to choose which SIM card to connect to the hands-free system
    - **SIM mode 1** - SIM 1 is connected to the hands-free system
    - **SIM mode 2** - SIM 2 is connected to the hands-free system
  - **Phone mode** - Toggle between rSAP and HFP mode
    - **Premium** - rSAP mode
    - **Handsfree** - HFP mode
  - **Off time** - Set the off time in increments of 5 min
- **Access point** - Set the Internet access point
  - **APN** - Change the access point name
  - **User name** - User Name
  - **Password** - Password
- **Switch off ph.** - switch off the phone unit (the mobile phone remains paired)

Back
Return in the main menu of the information display.

Internet connection via Bluetooth ®

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 104.

A notebook can, for example, be connected to the Internet via the hands-free system.

The control unit of the hands-free system supports the GPRS, EDGE and UMTS/3G technologies.

An Internet can only be established via a telephone which is connected via the rSAP profile.

The procedure for connecting to the Internet can vary depending on the type and version of the operating system as well as the type of the device to be connected. Successfully connecting to the internet requires appropriate knowledge of the operating system for connecting the device .

Process of connection

› Connect the mobile phone with the hands-free system.
› Set the access point in the **Mobile phone** - **Settings** - **Access point** menu (depending on the operator, usually "Internet").
› Switch on the visibility of the hands-free system for other devices in the **Mobile phone** - **Bluetooth** - **Visibility** menu.
› Use the device that is to be connected to search for available Bluetooth® devices.
› Select the hands-free system (as standard "SKODA_BT") from the list of found devices.
› Enter the password on the device being connected and follow any instructions given on this device or in the information display.
› Enter the desired Internet address in the Internet browser. The operating system requests the entry of the telephone number for the internet access (depending on the operator, usually "*99#").

WLAN

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Switching Wi-Fi network on/off ____ 108
Connecting an external device to the Wi-Fi network ____ 108
Operating a Wi-Fi network in the information display ____ 109

WLAN (also Wi-Fi) is a wireless network for connecting to the Internet.

Using a mobile phone connected with the universal telephone preparation GSM III via the rSAP profile, it is possible to establish a Wi-Fi network in the vehicle and to enable passengers with compatible devices to connect to this network.

Switching Wi-Fi network on/off

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 108.

Switching on

› Connect the mobile phone with the universal telephone preparation GSM III via the rSAP profile » page 104.
› Select the **Wi-Fi** menu item in the **Mobile phone** menu.

The display shows the message *Switch on Wi-Fi?*

› Select the **Yes** menu item.

If no access point[1)] is assigned automatically, then this must be entered manually as per the instructions from the mobile network operator, e.g. "Internet".

If the Wi-Fi network is switched on, the display will show the following message, for example: *WLAN SK_WLAN 1234 switched on.*

The display then shows a password for the Wi-Fi network connection. The password can subsequently be found in the **Mobile phone** - **Wi-Fi** - **Password** - **Show** menu.

If no data connection via Wi-Fi is available, the display will show the message *Data connection not available*. This can be caused by a weak GSM signal, for example. Try to establish the connection again at a location with stronger signal reception.

Switching off

› Select the **Wi-Fi Off** menu item in the **Mobile phone** menu.

The display shows the message *Switch off Wi-Fi?*

› Select the **OK** menu item.

The display shows the message *Wi-Fi switch off.*

Connecting an external device to the Wi-Fi network

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 108.

Connecting using the Wi-Fi network search

› Switch on the Wi-Fi network » page 108, *Switching Wi-Fi network on/off*.
› On the device to be connected, search for available WLAN networks (Wi-Fi) - see operating instructions for the device to be connected.
› Select the appropriate Wi-Fi network connection in the menu of the networks found (e.g. *WLAN SK_WLAN 1234*).

If menu item **WPA2** is set in the **Mobile phone** - **Wi-Fi** - **Settings** - **Encryption** menu, then the password displayed when the Wi-Fi is switched on must be entered in the device to be connected. The password can be found in the **Mobile phone** - **Wi-Fi** - **Password** - **Show** menu.

If menu item **Open** is set in the **Mobile phone** - **Wi-Fi** - **Settings** - **Encryption** menu, the connection is made automatically.

Connecting using WPS (service for easy connection)

› Switch on the Wi-Fi network » page 108, *Switching Wi-Fi network on/off*.
› Open the **Mobile phone** - **Wi-Fi** - **WPS config.** menu in the instrument cluster.
› In the device to be connected, select the connection using WPS function - see operating instructions for the device to be connected.

If the **Pushbutton** menu item is selected in the instrument cluster, the Wi-Fi connection is made automatically.

1) The name of the access point is defined by the mobile operator.

If the **WPS PIN** menu item is selected in the instrument cluster, then a PIN must be entered in the device to be connected and the instrument cluster.

Operating a Wi-Fi network in the information display

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 108.

When a Wi-Fi network is switched on, the following menu items are displayed when the **WLAN** menu item is selected:

- **Off** - Switch off the Wi-Fi network (depending on the context)
- **Device List** - Display a list of external devices
  - **Active device** - Display a list of active devices
    - **Block** - Block device connections
  - **Known devices** - Display a list of known devices
    - **Rename** - Rename the device
    - **Block** - Block device connections
  - **Device blocked** - Display a list of blocked devices
    - **Unblock** - Remove the connection block
  - **Delete lists** - Delete device lists
    - **Known devices** - Delete the list of known devices
    - **Device blocked** - Delete the list of blocked devices
    - **Both lists** - Delete both device lists
- **Password** - Use of password to log on to the Wi-Fi network
  - **Show** - Display a password to log on to the Wi-Fi network
  - **Generate** - Generate a new password to log on to the Wi-Fi network
- **Wi-Fi name** - Use of Wi-Fi network name
  - **Show** - Display the Wi-Fi network name
  - **Rename** - Rename the Wi-Fi network
- **WPS config.** - Wi-Fi network connection using WPS
  - **Pushbutton** - Automatic connection
  - **WPS PIN** - PIN entry for the connection
- **Data counter** - Display information about the volume of data transferred
  - **Current conn.** - Display the volume of data transferred when connected
  - **Total** - Display the total volume of data transferred
  - **Reset** - Reset the information about the volume of data transferred
- **Settings** - Wi-Fi network settings
  - **Access point** - Access point settings
    - **Settings** - Access point management
      - **APN** - Change the access point name
      - **User name** - User Name
      - **Password** - Password
    - **Reset** - Reset access point factory settings
  - **Prioritisation** - Set the connection priority
    - **Calls** - Set the connection priority for calls
    - **Data** - Set the connection priority for data transfer
  - **Encryption** - Set the encryption
    - **WPA2** - Enable WPA 2 encryption
    - **Open** - No encryption
  - **Visibility** - Set the Wi-Fi network visibility
    - **Visible** - Wi-Fi network is visible to other devices
    - **Invisible** - Wi-Fi network is not visible to other devices
  - **Data roaming** - Set the data roaming
    - **No roaming** - Data roaming is not allowed
    - **Allow** - Data roaming is allowed
    - **Always ask** - Question setting for data roaming
  - **Wi-Fi channel** - Select Wi-Fi network channels (preferably set to channel 11)
    - **Channel 1**... **Channel 11** - Display the Wi-Fi network channels
  - **Reset** - Reset Wi-Fi network factory settings

Voice control

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Dialogue 110
Voice commands - GSM II 111
Voice commands - GSM III 111

Dialogue

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 109.

The period of time during which the system is ready to receive voice commands and to carry them out is called a dialogue. The system gives audible feedback and guides you if necessary through the relevant functions.

Optimum understanding of the voice commands depends on several factors.
- Speak with a normal tone of voice without intonation and excessive pauses.
- Avoid a bad pronunciation.
- Close the doors, windows and sliding roof, to reduce or stop disturbing exterior noise.
- It is recommended to speak louder at higher speeds, so that the tone of your voice is louder than the increased surrounding noise.
- During the dialogue, limit additional noise in the vehicle, e.g. passengers talking at the same time.
- Do not speak, if the system makes an announcement.

The microphone for voice control is inserted in the moulded headliner and directed to the driver and front passenger. Therefore the driver and the front passenger can operate the equipment.

Entering a phone number
The telephone number can be entered as a continuous series of individually spoken digits (the whole number at once) or in the form of digital blocks (separated by short pauses). After each order of digits (separation through brief voice pause) all of the digits detected up to now are repeated by the system.

The digits **0 - 9**, symbols **+, ✳, #** are permitted. The system detects no continuous digit combinations such as twenty-three, but only individually spoken digits (two, three).

Activating voice control - GSM II
- by briefly pressing the button 1 » Fig. 95 on page 99 on the multifunction steering wheel,
- by briefly pressing the button on the adapter[1] » Fig. 97 on page 103.

Deactivating voice control - GSM II

If the system is currently playing a message, the message that is currently being played will have to be stopped:
- by briefly pressing the button on the adapter[1] » Fig. 97 on page 103;
- by briefly pressing the button 1 on the multifunction steering wheel.

If the system expects a voice command, you can end the dialogue yourself:
- with the **CANCEL** voice command;
- by pressing the button on the adapter[1] » Fig. 97 on page 103;
- by briefly pressing the button 1 on the multifunction steering wheel.

Activating voice control - GSM III
The dialogue can be started at any time by pressing the button 1 » Fig. 95 on page 99 on the multifunction steering wheel [1].

Deactivating voice control - GSM III
If the system is currently playing a message, the message that is currently being played must be terminated by pressing the button 1 » Fig. 95 on page 99 on the multi-function steering wheel.

If the system expects a voice command, you can end the dialogue yourself:
- with the **CANCEL** voice command;
- by briefly pressing the button 1 » Fig. 95 on page 99 on the multifunction steering wheel.

Note

- The dialogue of an incoming call is immediately interrupted.
- The voice control is only possible in vehicles fitted with a multifunction steering wheel with telephone control or a phone mount and adapter.
- On vehicles that are factory-fitted with the Columbus navigation system, it is only possible to operate the voice control for the telephone via this device» *Operating instructions for the Columbus navigation system*, chapter *Voice control for the navigation system*.

[1] Not valid for vehicles with the Columbus navigation system.

Voice commands - GSM II

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 109.

Basic voice commands

Voice command	Action
HELP	After this command, the system repeats all possible commands.
CALL XYZ	This command calls up the contact from the phone book.
PHONE BOOK	After this command, for example, the phone book can be repeated back to you, a voice entry for the contact can be updated or deleted, etc.
CALL HISTORY	Lists of dialled numbers, missed calls, etc.
DIAL NUMBER	After this command, a telephone number can be entered in order to establish a connection with the requested party.
REDIAL	After this command the system calls the last dialled number.
MUSIC[a)]	Play music from the mobile phone or another paired device.
FURTHER OPTIONS	After this command the system offers additional context-dependent commands.
SETTINGS	Selection for setting Bluetooth®, dialogue etc.
CANCEL	The dialogue is ended.

a) On vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system, this function can be accessed via the navigation system menu; refer to the operating instructions for the Amundsen+ navigation system.

If a voice command is not detected, the system answers with "**Sorry?**", and a new entry can be made. After the 2nd error the system repeats the aid. After the 3rd error, the system answers with "**Cancelled.**" and ends the dialogue.

Storing voice recording for a contact

If automatic name recognition does not work reliably for some contacts, you can choose to save your own voice tag for the contact in the **Phone book** - **Voice tag** - **Record** menu item.

Your own voice tag can also be saved using the voice control in the **FURTHER OPTIONS** menu.

Voice commands - GSM III

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 109.

Basic voice commands

Voice command	Action
HELP	After this command, the system repeats all possible commands.
CALL NAME	After this command, a name can be entered to establish a connection with the requested party.
DIAL NUMBER	After this command, a telephone number can be entered in order to establish a connection with the requested party.
REDIAL	The last selected telephone number is selected.
READ ADDRESSBOOK	The system reads out contacts from the telephone book.
READ MESSAGES	The system reads the messages which were received while the telephone was connected to the control unit.
SHORT DIALOGUE	The help is significantly reduced (good operating knowledge provided).
LONG DIALOGUE	The help is not reduced (suitable for beginners).
CANCEL	The dialogue is ended.

If the system does not recognise the command, it repeats the first part of the help thus enabling a new entry to be completed. After the 2nd error the system repeats the second part of the aid. After the 3rd error, the system answers with "**Cancelled.**" and ends the dialogue.

Storing voice recording for a contact

If automatic name recognition does not work reliably for some contacts, you can choose to save your own voice tag for the contact in the **Phone book** - **Voice tag** - **Record** menu item.

Your own voice tag can also be saved using the voice control in the **FURTHER OPTIONS** menu.

Multimedia

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Music playback via Bluetooth® 112
Operating the radio and navigation system on the multifunction steering wheel 112
AUX-IN and MDI inputs 113
CD change 114
DVD-preinstallation 114

Music playback via Bluetooth®

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 112.

The universal telephone preinstallation makes it possible to play back music via Bluetooth® from devices such as MP3 players, mobile phones or notebooks.

To ensure that music can be played via Bluetooth®, you must first pair the device with the hands-free system in the **Phone** - **Bluetooth** - **Media player** menu.

The music playback process is performed on the connected device.

The universal telephone preinstallation GSM II ensures that the music played back via the hands-free system can be controlled with the remote control » page 111, *Voice commands - GSM II*.

Note

The device being connected must support the Bluetooth® A2DP profile; refer to the operating instructions for the relevant device being connected.

Operating the radio and navigation system on the multifunction steering wheel

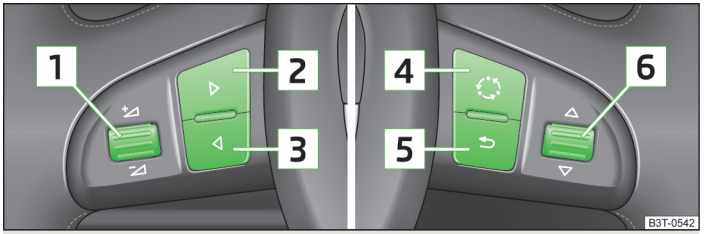

Fig. 98 **Multifunction steering wheel: control buttons**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 112.

The multifunction steering wheel comprises buttons for setting the basic functions for the factory-fitted radio and navigation system » Fig. 98.

The radio and navigation system can of course still be operated on the devices. A description is included in the relevant operating instructions.

If the side lights are switched on, the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel are illuminated.

The buttons apply for the respective operating mode of the current radio or navigation system.

The following functions can be completed by pressing or turning the buttons.

Button/ dial	Action	Radio, traffic information	CD/CD changer/MP3	Navigation
1	Press briefly	Switch off/on tone or voice control[a]		
1	Press button for a long period of time	switch off/on		
1	Turn upwards	Increase volume		
1	Turn downwards	Decrease volume		
2	Press briefly	Changing to the next stored radio station Changing to the next stored traffic information Interrupting the traffic report	Changing to the next title	
2	Press button for a long period of time	Interruption of the traffic report	Fast forward	
3	Press briefly	Changing to the previously stored radio station Changing to the previously stored traffic information Interrupting the traffic report	Changing to the previous title	
3	Press button for a long period of time	Interruption of the traffic report	Fast rewind	
4	Press briefly	changing the audio source		
5	Press briefly	Call up the main menu		
6	Press briefly	Interruption of the traffic report	without function	
6	Turn upwards	Display of the stored/accessible stations scroll upwards Interruption of the traffic report	Changing to the previous title	without function
6	Turn downwards	Display of the stored/accessible stations scroll downwards Interruption of the traffic report	Changing to the next title	

[a] Only valid for the navigation system Columbus.

AUX-IN and MDI inputs

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 112.

The AUX-IN input is located below the front armrest and is marked with **AUX**.

The MDI input is located in the front centre console.

The AUX-IN and MDI inputs are used to connect external audio sources (e.g. iPod or mp3 player) and to play back music from these devices via the factory-fitted radio or navigation system.

For a description of use, refer to the operating instructions for the relevant radio or navigation system.

CD change

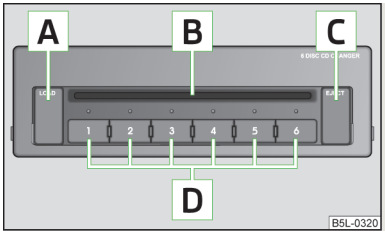

Fig. 99
The CD changer

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 112.

The CD changer for the radio and navigation system is located in the left side trim panel of the boot.

Inserting the CD

› Touch the button C » Fig. 99 and guide the CD (compact disc) into the CD-case B. The CD is automatically loaded onto the lowest free position in the CD changer. The indicator light in the corresponding button D stops flashing.

Filling the CD changer with CDs

› Press and hold the button C » Fig. 99 for longer than 2 seconds and guide the CDs one after the other (maximum 6 CDs) into the CD case B. The indicator lights in the buttons D stop flashing.

Inserting a CD at a specific position

› Press the button C » Fig. 99. The indicator lights in the buttons D illuminate the memory spaces that are already assigned and flash in the case of free memory spaces.
› Touch the desired button D and guide the CD into the CD-case B.

Ejecting a CD

› Press the button A » Fig. 99 to eject a CD. For assigned memory spaces, the indicator lights now illuminate in the buttons D.
› Press the corresponding button D. The CD is ejected.

Ejecting all CDs

› Press and hold the button A » Fig. 99 for more than 2 seconds. All CDs in the CD-changer are ejected consecutively.

Note

- Always guide the CD into the CD case B » Fig. 99 with the printed side facing upwards.
- Never force the CD into the CD case as it is drawn in automatically.
- After loading a CD into the CD changer, wait until the indicator light of the corresponding button D is illuminated. Then the CD case B is free to load the next CD.
- If a position is selected, on which a CD is already located, this CD is ejected. Remove the ejected CD and load the desired CD.

DVD-preinstallation

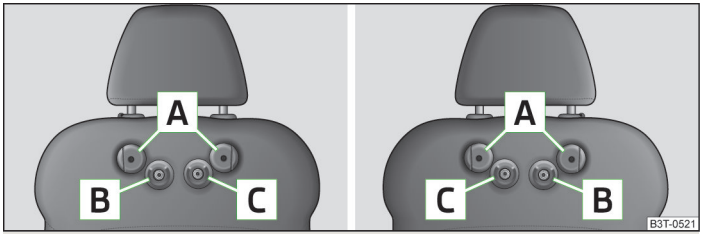

Fig. 100 **Seat backrest - left front seat/right front seat**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 112.

Description

A Openings for attachment of DVD player holder
B Audio/video input
C Connection input, DVD player

Only one DVD pre-installation is factory-installed in the seat backrest of the front seat.

The DVD player holder and DVD player can be purchased from ŠKODA original accessories. For a description of the use, refer to the operating instructions for these devices and equipment.

WARNING

- If there are passengers on both of the rear seats, the DVD player holder must not be used on its own (without the DVD player) - risk of injury!
- The inclination of the holder can be adjusted to three preset positions. Be careful not to injure fingers between the holder and the backrest when changes to the position of the DVD player holder are made.
- The DVD player holder must not be used when the rear seat backrest or the rear seat is folded forward or has been removed completely.

Note

Follow the instructions given in the operating instructions of the DVD player holder/DVD player.

Driving

Starting-off and Driving

Starting and stopping the engine

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Adjusting the steering wheel position 117
Electromechanical power steering 117
Electronic immobiliser 118
Ignition lock 118
Starting the engine 118
Switching off the engine 119

WARNING

- Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving only when the vehicle is stationary!
- Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance 1 between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm » Fig. 101 on page 117. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!
- The lever for adjusting the steering wheel must be locked whilst driving so that the steering wheel cannot accidentally change position during the journey – risk of accident!
- If the steering wheel is adjusted further towards the head, the protection provided by the driver airbag in the event of an accident is reduced. Check that the steering wheel is aligned to the chest.
- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position. Never hold the steering wheel in the 12 o'clock position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle or inner edge of the steering wheel). In such cases, you could severely injure the arms, hands and head when the driver airbag is deployed.

WARNING (Continued)

- When driving, the ignition key must always be in the position 2 » Fig. 102 on page 118 (ignition switched on) without the engine running. This position is indicated by the indicator lights coming on. If this is not the case, this could result in unexpected locking of the steering wheel – risk of accident!
- Only pull the ignition key from the ignition lock when the vehicle has come to a complete stop (by applying the handbrake). Otherwise, the steering could be blocked – risk of accident!
- When leaving the vehicle, the ignition must always be removed. This is particularly important if children are left in the vehicle. Children could otherwise start the engine for example – risk of accident or injury!
- Never leave the engine running in unventilated or closed rooms. The exhaust gases from the engine contain substances such as odourless and colourless carbon monoxide (a poisonous gas) – risk to life! Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running.
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

CAUTION

- A great deal of stress will be put on the power steering system if the steering is turned to full lock when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running. Noises will occur if the steering is turned to full lock in these conditions. Never leave the steering wheel at full lock for more than 15 seconds when the engine is running - risk of damage to the power steering!
- The starter must only be operated when the engine is not running. The starter or engine can be damaged if the starter is activated when the engine is running.
- Let go of the ignition key as soon as the engine starts otherwise the starter could be damaged.
- If the engine does not start after the second attempt, the fuse for the electric fuel pump (in petrol engines) or for the control unit for the glow plug system or the relay for the glow plug system and fuel pump (in diesel engines) could be faulty. Check the fuse and replace if necessary » page 225, or seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- Avoid high engine revolutions, full throttle and high engine loads before the engine has reached its operating temperature – risk of damaging the engine!

▪ Do not tow-start the engine – risk of damaging the engine! On vehicles with a catalytic converter, unburnt fuel may get into the catalytic converter where it may ignite. This in turn may damage the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 220, *Jump-starting*.
▪ Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

For the sake of the environment

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this the engine reaches its operating temperature more rapidly and the pollutant emissions are lower.

Note

▪ The engine can only be started with the correctly coded original key.
▪ The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
▪ After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan can intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.
▪ If the engine does not start up after a second attempt, the fuse for the fuel pump may be faulty. Check the fuse and replace if necessary » page 225, or seek assistance from a specialist garage.
▪ We recommend **locking the steering wheel** whenever leaving the vehicle. This acts as a deterrent against the attempted theft of your car.

Adjusting the steering wheel position

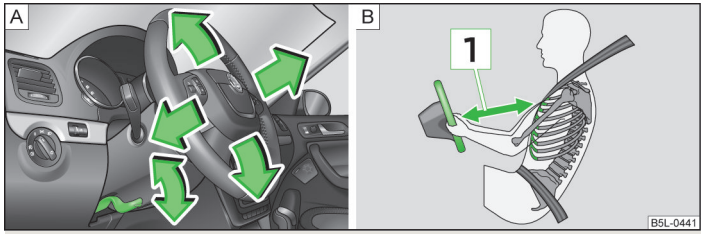

Fig. 101 **Adjustable steering wheel: Lever next to the steering column/safe distance to the steering wheel**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 116.

The height and forward/back position of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

› First of all adjust the driver's seat » page 59.
› Pull the lever below the steering wheel down » Fig. 101 - A.
› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position (with regard to the height and forward/back position).
› Push the lever upwards to the stop.

Electromechanical power steering

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 116.

The power steering enables you to steer the vehicle with less physical force.

With the electromechanical power steering, the steering assist is automatically adapted to the speed and to the steering angle.

It is still possible to fully steer the vehicle if the power steering fails or if the engine is not running (vehicle being towed in). However, greater physical effort is required to turn the steering wheel.

If there is a fault in the power steering, the indicator light or lights up in the instrument cluster » page 21.

Electronic immobiliser

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 116.

An electronic chip is integrated in the head of the key. The immobiliser is deactivated with the aid of this chip when the key is inserted in the ignition lock. The electronic immobiliser is automatically activated when the ignition key is withdrawn from the lock.

The engine will not start if a non-authorized ignition key is used.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Immobilizer active.

Ignition lock

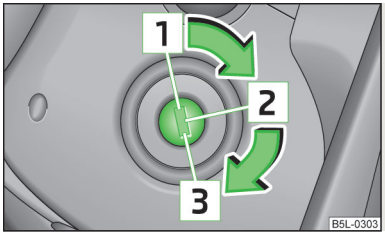

Fig. 102
Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 116.

Petrol engines

1 Ignition switched off, engine off, the steering can be locked
2 Ignition switched on
3 Starting engine

Diesel engines

1 Fuel supply interrupted, ignition switched off, engine switched off, the steering can be locked.
2 Heating glow plugs on, ignition switched on
3 Starting engine

To **lock the steering**, with the ignition key withdrawn, turn the steering wheel until the steering locking pin engages audibly.

If the **steering is locked** and the key cannot or can only be turned with difficulty into the position 2 » Fig. 102, move the steering wheel back and forth and the steering lock will unlock.

Starting the engine

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 116.

Vehicles with a **diesel engine** are equipped with a glow plug system. The preglow indicator light comes on after the ignition has been switched on. The engine should be started immediately after the preglow indicator light goes out.

You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Procedure for starting the engine

› Before starting the engine, place the gearshift lever into neutral or place the selector lever in the position **P** or **N** and firmly put on the handbrake.
› Fully depress and hold the clutch pedal, switch on the ignition 2 » Fig. 102 on page 118 and start 3 - do not operate the accelerator. Depress the clutch pedal until the engine starts.
› Let go of the key as soon as the engine starts. After letting go, the vehicle key will return to position 2.
› If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, abort the start-up process and turn the key to position 1. Repeat the start-up process after approx. half a minute.
› Release the handbrake before starting off.

The engine will not start if the clutch pedal is not depressed.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Depress clutch to start!

The following is shown in the information display of the information cluster:

CLUTCH

Switching off the engine

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 116.

Switch off the engine by turning the ignition key into position 1 » Fig. 102 on page 118.

Braking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Information on braking 119
Handbrake 120

WARNING

- The brake booster only operates when the engine is running. Greater physical effort is required for braking when the engine is switched off – risk of accident!
- Depress the clutch pedal when stopping or braking a vehicle with a petrol engine and manual transmission in the low rev range. Otherwise, the function of the brake booster may be impaired – risk of accident!
- If a front spoiler, full wheel trim, etc. is mounted retrospectively, it must be ensured that the air supply to the front wheel brakes is not reduced. Otherwise, the functionality of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!
- Please note that the handbrake must be fully released. A handbrake which is only partially released can cause the rear brakes to overheat, which can impair the functionality of the braking system – risk of accident!
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. The children might, for example, release the handbrake or take the vehicle out of gear. The vehicle could then start to move – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Observe the recommendations on the new brake pads » page 126.
- Never let the brakes slip with light pressure on the pedal if braking is not necessary. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear.

Note

- If the brakes are applied in full and the control unit for the braking system considers the situation to be dangerous for the following traffic, the brake light flashes automatically. After the speed was reduced below around 10 km/h or the vehicle was stopped, the brake light stops flashing and the hazard warning light system switches on. The hazard warning light system is switched off automatically after accelerating or driving off again.
- Before negotiating a steep downhill section, reduce the speed, shift down into the next lower gear (manual gearbox) or select a lower drive position (automatic gearbox). As a result, the braking effect of the engine will be used, reducing the load on the brakes. Any additional braking should be completed intermittently, not continuously.

Information on braking

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 119.

Wear-and-tear
The wear of the brake pads is dependent on the operating conditions and driving style. The brake pads wear more quickly if a lot of journeys are completed in towns and over short distances or if a very sporty style of driving is adopted. Under these **severe conditions**, the thickness of the brake pads must be checked by a specialist garage before the next service appointment.

Wet roads or road salt
The performance of the brakes can be delayed as the brake discs and brake pads may be moist or have a coating of ice or layer of salt on them in winter. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times.

Corrosion
Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the bake pads occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system. If the brake system is not used much or is corroded, we recommend cleaning the brake discs by firmly applying the brakes repeatedly from a high speed.

Faults in the brake surface
If it is found that the braking distance has suddenly become longer and that the brake pedal can be depressed further, the brake system may be faulty. Visit a specialist garage immediately and adjust your style of driving appropriately, as you will not know the exact extent of the damage.

Low brake fluid level
An insufficient level of brake fluid may result in problems in the brake system. The level of the brake fluid is monitored electronically » page 19, *Braking system*.

Brake booster
The brake booster increases the pressure generated with the brake pedal. The brake booster only operates when the engine is running.

Handbrake

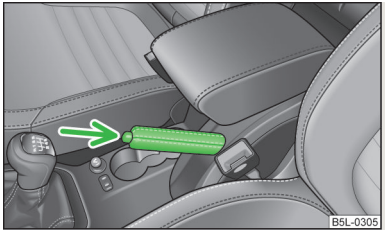

Fig. 103
Centre console: Handbrake

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 119.

Apply
› Pull the handbrake lever firmly upwards.

Loosening
› Pull the handbrake lever up slightly and **at the same time** push in the locking button » Fig. 103.
› Move the lever right down while pressing the lock button.

The handbrake indicator light lights up when the handbrake is applied, provided the ignition is on.

A warning signal sounds if the vehicle is inadvertently driven off with the handbrake applied.

The following is displayed in the information display:

Release parking brake!

The handbrake warning is activated if the vehicle is driven at a speed of more than 6 km/h for more than 3 seconds.

Manual gear changing and pedals

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manual gear changing 120
Pedals 121

Manual gear changing

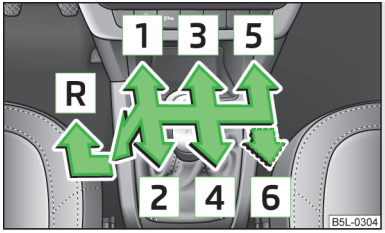

Fig. 104
The shift pattern: 5-gear or 6-gear manual transmission

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 120.

Always depress the clutch pedal fully when changing gear, to prevent excessive wear of the clutch.

The gear recommendation must be observed when changing gear » page 11.

Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary. Depress the clutch pedal and hold it fully depressed. Wait a moment before reverse gear is engaged to avoid any shift noises.

The reversing lights will come on once reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

! WARNING

Never engage reverse gear when driving – risk of accident!

Note

If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gearshift lever while driving. The pressure from the hand can cause the gearshift mechanism to wear excessively.

Pedals

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 120.

The operation of the pedals must not be hindered under any circumstances!

In the driver's footwell, only a footmat, which is attached to the two corresponding attachment points, may be used.

Only use factory-supplied footmats or footmats from the range of ŠKODA Original Accessories, which are fitted to two attachment points.

WARNING

No objects may be placed in the driver's footwell – risk due to obstruction or limitation of pedal operation.

Automatic gearbox

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Introductory information 122
Starting-off and driving 122
Selector lever positions 122
Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic) 123
Selector lever lock 124
Kickdown function 124
Dynamic shift programme 124
Emergency programme 125
Selector lever-emergency unlocking 125

WARNING

- Do not depress the accelerator if changing the position of the selector lever when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running - risk of accident!
- Never move the selector lever into position **R** or **P** when driving - risk of an accident!
- When the engine is running and the vehicle is stationary, it is necessary to hold the car with the brake pedal in all the positions of the selector lever (except P and N) since the power transmission is never completely interrupted, also not when the engine is idling - the vehicle creeps.
- The selector lever must be placed into position **P** and the handbrake firmly applied before the bonnet can be opened and work on the running engine can be completed - risk of accident! The safety guidelines must always be observed » page 192, *Engine compartment*.
- If stopping on a hill (downhill gradient), never try to maintain the vehicle stationary with the gear engaged by means of the "accelerator pedal", i.e. by letting the clutch slip. This can lead to overheating of the clutch. If there is a risk of overheating of the clutch due to overload, the clutch is opened automatically and the vehicle rolls backward - risk of accident!
- If you have to stop on a slope, depress and hold the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling back.
- On a smooth or slippery road surface using the kickdown function can cause the driven wheels to spin - risk of skidding!

CAUTION

- The double clutch on the automatic gearbox DSG is equipped with an overload protection. If the uphill function is used when the vehicle is stationary or driving slowly uphill, the thermal stress on the clutches is increased.
- If the double clutch system overheats, the symbol is shown in the information display along with the message **Gearbox overheated. Stop! Owner's manual!** An audible signal sounds as a warning signal. Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and wait until the symbol disappears - risk of gearbox damage! You can continue your journey as soon as the symbol disappears.

Introductory information

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 121.

Shifting up and down through the gears is performed automatically. The gearbox can also be switched to **Tiptronic** mode. This mode makes it possible for you to also shift gears manually » page 123.

The engine can only be **started** when the selector lever is in position **P** or **N** . if the selector lever is not in the **P** or **N** positions when the steering is locked, the ignition is switched off or on or the engine is started, the message **Move selector lever to position P/N!** appears in the information display or →**P/N** is displayed in the instrument cluster.

At temperatures below -10 °C the engine can only be started in the selector lever position **P**.

When parking, the handbrake should firstly be firmly applied before the position **P** is selected.

If the selector lever position **N** is accidentally selected while driving, it is first necessary to release pressure on the accelerator pedal and wait for the idling speed of the engine to be reached before the selector lever can be engaged in the drive position.

Starting-off and driving

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 121.

Starting off

› Firmly depress and hold the brake pedal.
› Press the Shiftlock button (button in the selector lever handle), move the selector lever into the desired position » page 122 and then release the Shiftlock button.
› Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

Stop

› The selector lever position **N** does not have to be selected when stopping for a short time, such as at a cross roads. It is sufficient to hold the vehicle stationary using the foot brake. The engine can, however, be allowed just to idle.

Parking

› Depress the brake pedal.
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Press and Shiftlock button in the selector lever, move the selector lever to **P** and then release the Shiftlock button.

Selector lever positions

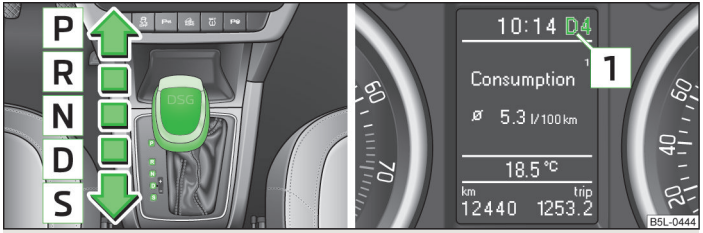

Fig. 105 **Selector lever/information display: Selector lever positions**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 121.

The current selector lever position is indicated in the information display of the instrument cluster 1 » Fig. 105.

P - Parklock
The driven wheels are locked mechanically in this position.

The Parklock must only be engaged when the vehicle is stationary.

If you wish to move the selector lever into/out of this position, the Shiftlock button in the selector lever handle and the brake pedal must be actuated at the same time.

If the battery is used, the selector lever cannot be moved out of the position **P**.

R - Reverse gear
Reverse gear must only be engaged when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is idling.

The brake pedal must be depressed and at the same time the Shiftlock must be pressed, if you wish to obtain the selector lever positions **R**, **P** or **N**.

When the ignition is switched on and the selector lever is in position **R**, the reverse lights will come on.

N - Neutral
The transmission is in Neutral in this position.

The brake pedal must be depressed to move the selector lever out of the position **N** (if the lever is in this position for longer than 2 seconds) into the position **D** or **R** when the vehicle is travelling at less than 5 km/h or the vehicle is stationary and the ignition is switched on.

D - Position for driving forward (normal programme)
When the selector lever is in this position, the forward gears are automatically shifted up and down in line with the engine load, vehicle speed and dynamic shift programme.

The brake pedal must be depressed to move the selector lever into position **D** from **N**when the vehicle is travelling at less than 5 km/h or is stationary.

Under certain circumstances (e.g. when driving in mountainous regions or when towing a trailer) it may be beneficial to select the manual shift programme » page 123 for a short time in order to adapt the gearbox ratios manually to the driving situations.

S - Position for driving forward (sports programme)
Shifting up later into a higher gear makes it possible to fully exploit the power potential of the engine. The gearbox also then shifts down at higher engine speeds as in the position **D**.

The Shiftlock on the selector lever grip must be pressed when moving the selector lever out of the position **D** into the position **S**.

Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic)

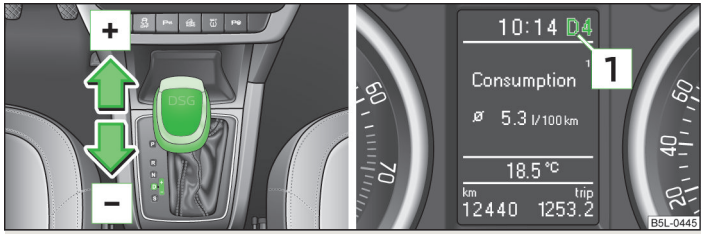

Fig. 106 **Selector lever/information display: Selector lever positions**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 121.

Tiptronic mode makes it possible to manually shift gears on the selector lever.

The gear recommendation must be observed when changing gear » page 11.

Switching to manual shifting
› Push the selector lever to the right out of position **D**. The selector lever position you have engaged appears in the instrument cluster display 1 » Fig. 106.

Shifting up gears
› Press the selector lever forwards + » Fig. 106.

Shifting down gears
› Press the selector lever backwards - » Fig. 106.

It is possible to switch to manual shifting when the car is stationary and when driving.

When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up into the higher gear just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached.

If a lower gear is selected, the gearbox does not shift down until there is no risk of the engine overrevving.

If you operate the kickdown function, the gearbox shifts into a lower gear in line with the vehicle speed and engine speed.

Note

The kickdown function is also available when manually shifting gears.

Selector lever lock

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 121.

Automatic selector lever lock
With the ignition on, the selector lever is locked when it is in the positions **P** and **N**. The brake pedal must be depressed to move the selector lever out of this position. The indicator light » page 25, *Selector lever lock* illuminates in the instrument cluster as a reminder for the driver when the selector lever is in the positions **P** and **N**.

The selector lever is not locked when quickly moving across the position **N** (e.g. from **R** to **D**). This, for example, helps to rock out a vehicle that is stuck. The selector lever lock will click into place if the lever is in the **N** position for more than 2 seconds without the brake pedal being pressed.

The selector lever lock is only active if the vehicle is stationary or moving at speed of less than 5 km/hour. The lock is switched off automatically into position **N** when the car is travelling at a higher speed.

Shiftlock button
The Shiftlock button in the handle of selector lever prevents certain selector lever positions being engaged inadvertently. The selector lever lock is cancelled when the Shiftlock button is pressed.

Ignition key withdrawal lock
After the ignition is switched off, the ignition key can only be withdrawn if the selector lever is in the position **P**. If the ignition key is withdrawn, the selector lever is blocked in position **P**.

Kickdown function

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 121.

The kickdown function provides you with maximum acceleration power.

When the accelerator pedal is fully depressed, the kickdown function is activated in the desired driving program. This function has precedence over the driving programme and serves for maximum acceleration of the vehicle when exploiting the maximum power potential of the engine without taking into account the current selector lever position (**D**, **S** or **Tiptronic**). The gearbox shifts down to one or several gears in line with the driving state and the vehicle accelerates. The gearbox does not shift up into the highest gear until the engine has reached its maximum revolutions for this gear range.

Dynamic shift programme

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 121.

The automatic gearbox of your vehicle is controlled electronically. Shifting up and down through the gears is performed automatically on the basis of pre-defined driving programmes.

Adopting a **moderate style of driving** will cause the gearbox to select the most economical driving programme. Shifting up into a higher gear as soon as possible and shifting down as late as possible will have a favourable effect on your fuel consumption.

When adopting a **sporty style of driving** with rapid movements of the accelerator pedal combined with sharp acceleration, frequent changes in speed and exploiting the top speed of the car, the gearbox will adjust to this style of driving once the accelerator pedal (kickdown function) is depressed and will shift down earlier, frequently by several gears in comparison to a moderate style of driving.

Selecting the most appropriate driving programme for the particular style of driving is a continuous process. Irrespective of this it is, however, possible to switch or shift down into a dynamic shift programme by depressing the accelerator rapidly. The gearbox shifts down into a lower gear in accordance with the speed, therefore enabling rapid acceleration (e.g. when overtaking) without the accelerator pedal having to be depressed into the kickdown range. The original programme will be reactivated to match your particular style of driving once the gearbox has shifted up again.

When driving in hilly regions, the gears are selected to match uphill and downhill sections. This avoids the gearbox frequently shifting up and down when negotiating an uphill stretch. When driving downhill, it is possible to shift down into the Tiptronic position, in order to exploit the engine brake torque.

Emergency programme

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 121.

An emergency programme exists in the event of a fault in the system.

The gearbox operates in a corresponding emergency programme if there are functional faults in the gearbox electronics. All of the display elements illuminate or go out.

A functional fault can have the following effect:
› The gearbox only shifts into certain gears;
› The reverse gear **R** cannot be used,
› The manual shift programme is switched off in emergency mode.

Note

If the gearbox has switched to emergency mode, drive to a specialist garage to have the fault rectified.

Selector lever-emergency unlocking

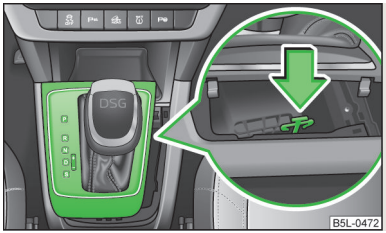

Fig. 107
Selector lever-emergency unlocking

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 121.

In case of interruption of the power supply (e.g. flat vehicle battery, defective fuse) or defect of the selector lever lock, the selector lever can no longer be shifted from the position **P** in the normal way and the vehicle can no longer be moved. The selector lever must be unlocked in case of emergency.

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Carefully pull up the front left and right cover.
› Pull up rear cover.
› Use a finger to press the yellow plastic part in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 107.
› Simultaneously press the Shiftlock button in the handle of the selector lever and shift the lever into the position **N** (if the selector lever is shifted back into the position **P**, it is blocked again).

Running in

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

New engine 125
New tyres 126
New brake pads 126

New engine

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 125.

The engine has to be run in during the first 1 500 kilometres.

Up to 1 000 kilometres
› Do not drive faster than 3/4 of the maximum speed of the gear in use, i.e. 3/4 of the maximum permissible engine speed.
› No full throttle.
› Avoid high engine speeds.
› Do not tow a trailer.

From 1 000 up to 1 500 kilometres
› **Gradually** increase the power output of the engine up to the full speed of the gear engaged, i.e. up to the maximum permissible engine speed.

During the first operating hours the engine has higher internal friction than later until all of the moving parts have harmonized. The driving style which you adopt during the first approx.1 500 kilometres plays a decisive part in the success of running in your car.

Never drive at unnecessarily **high engine speeds** even after the running-in period is complete. The maximum permissible engine speed is marked by the start of the red scale area of the revolutions counter. On vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox, at the very latest shift up into the next gear when the red area is reached. During acceleration (depressing the accelerator) **exceptionally** high engine speeds are automatically reduced, yet the engine is not protected against too high engine speeds which are caused by incorrectly shifting down the gears resulting in a sudden increase of the engine speeds above the permitted maximum revolutions which can lead to engine damage.

For a vehicle fitted with a manual gearbox the converse situation also applies: Do not drive at an engine speed that is too **low**. Shift down a gear when the engine is no longer running smoothly. Observe the recommended gear » page 11, *Recommended gear*.

CAUTION

All the speed and engine revolution figures apply only when the engine is at its normal operating temperature. Never rev up a cold engine when the vehicle is stationary or when driving in individual gears.

For the sake of the environment

Not driving at unnecessarily high engine revolutions and shifting to a higher gear as early as possible are ways to minimise fuel consumption and operating noise levels and protects the environment.

New tyres

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 125.

New tyres must firstly be "run in", as they do not offer optimal grip at first. Therefore, drive especially carefully for the first 500 km or so.

New brake pads

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 125.

New brake pads do not initially provide optimal braking performance. They first need to be "run in". Therefore, drive especially carefully for the first 200 km or so.

Economical driving and environmental sustainability

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Looking ahead 127
Energy-efficient gear switching 127
Avoiding full throttle 127
Reducing idling 127
Regular maintenance 128
Avoid short distances 128
Checking tyre inflation pressures 128
Avoid unnecessary ballast 129
Saving electricity 129
Environmental compatibility 129

The technical requirements for low fuel usage and economic efficiency of the vehicle have already been built into the vehicle at the works. ŠKODA places a particular emphasis on minimising negative effects on the environment.

It is necessary to take note of the guidelines given in this chapter in order to make best use of these characteristics and to maintain their effectiveness.

Fuel consumption, environmental pollution and the wear to the engine, brakes and tyres depend essentially on the following three factors:
› your personal driving style
› operating conditions
› technical requirements

The fuel economy by can be improved by 10 -15 % by always looking ahead and driving in an economical way.

Fuel consumption is also be influenced by external factors which are beyond the driver's control. Consumption increases during the winter or under difficult conditions, on poor roads, etc.

Fuel consumption can vary considerably from the manufacturer's data, as a result of outside temperatures, the weather and driving style.

The optimal engine speed should be obtained when accelerating, in order to avoid a high fuel consumption and resonance of the vehicle.

Looking ahead

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 126.

A vehicle's highest fuel consumption occurs when accelerating, therefore unnecessary accelerating and braking should be avoided. If looking ahead when driving, less braking and consequently less accelerating are required.

If possible, let your vehicle coast to a stop, or use the engine brake, if you can see that the next set of traffic lights is on red, for example.

Energy-efficient gear switching

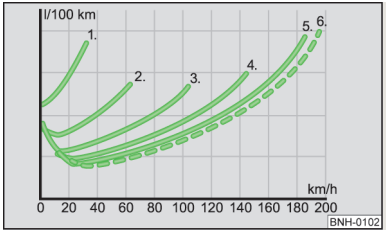

Fig. 108
Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in litres/100 km depending on the selected gear

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 126.

Shifting up early saves on fuel.

Manual gearbox

› Drive no more than about one length of your vehicle in first gear.
› Shift up into the next gear at approx. 2 000 revolutions.

An effective way of achieving good fuel economy is to shift up **early**. Observe the recommended gear » page 11, *Recommended gear*.

A suitably selected gear can have an effect on fuel consumption » Fig. 108.

Automatic gearbox

› **Slowly** apply the accelerator pedal. However, do not depress it to the kickdown position.
› If the accelerator pedal is only depressed slowly on a vehicle fitted with an automatic gearbox, an economic driving programme is automatically selected.

Avoiding full throttle

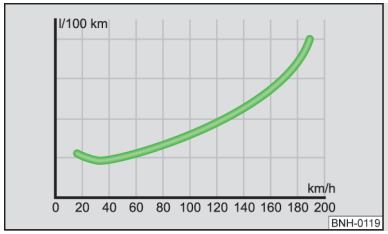

Fig. 109
Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in litres/100 km. and speed in km/h.

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 126.

Driving more slowly saves fuel.

Sensitive use of the accelerator will not only significantly reduce fuel consumption but also positively influence environmental pollution and wear of your vehicle.

The maximum speed of your vehicle should, as far possible, never be used. Fuel consumption, pollutant emissions and vehicle noises increase disproportionally at high speeds.

The » Fig. 109 shows the ratio of fuel consumption to the speed of your vehicle. Fuel consumption will be halved if only three-quarters of the possible top speed of your vehicle is used.

Reducing idling

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 126.

Idling also costs fuel.

In vehicles not equipped with the START-STOP system, turn off the engine when in a traffic jam, at a level crossing or traffic lights with longer wait times.

Even after just 30 - 40 seconds you will have saved more fuel than that is needed when you start the engine up again.

If an engine is only idling it takes much longer for it to reach its normal operating temperature. Wear-and-tear and pollutant emissions, though, are particularly high in the warming-up phase. Therefore, start driving as soon as the engine has started, whereby high engine speeds should be avoided.

Regular maintenance

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 126.

A poorly tuned engine uses an unnecessarily high amount of fuel.

By having your vehicle regularly maintained by a specialist garage, you create the conditions needed for economical driving. The maintenance state of your vehicle has a positive effect on traffic safety and value retention

A poorly tuned engine can result in a fuel consumption which is 10 % higher than normal.

Also check the **oil level** when refuelling. **Oil consumption** is dependent to a considerable extent on the load and speed of the engine. Oil consumption could be as high as 0.5 litres/1 000 km depending on your style of driving.

It is quite normal that a new engine has a higher oil consumption at first, and reaches its lowest level only after a certain running in time. The oil consumption of a new vehicle can therefore only be correctly assessed after driving about 5 000 km.

For the sake of the environment

- Additional improvements to the fuel economy can be made by using synthetic high-lubricity oils.
- Regularly check the ground under the vehicle. Have your vehicle inspected by a specialist garage if you find any stains caused by oil or other fluids on the ground.

Note

We recommend that your vehicle be serviced on a regular basis by a ŠKODA service partner.

Avoid short distances

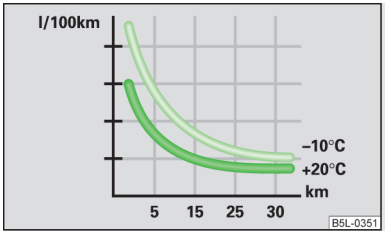

Fig. 110
Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in l/100 km at different temperatures

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 126.

Short distances result in an above-average high fuel consumption. We therefore recommend avoiding distances of less than 4 km if the engine is cold.

A cold engine consumes the most fuel immediately after the start. Fuel consumption drops to 10 litres/100 km after just 1 kilometre. The consumption stabilises once the engine and catalytic converter have reached their operating temperature.

An important factor in this connection is also the **ambient temperature**. The image » Fig. 110 shows the different levels of fuel consumption after driving a certain distance at a temperature of +20 °C and a temperature of -10 °C. Your vehicle has a higher fuel consumption in the winter than in the summer.

Checking tyre inflation pressures

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 126.

Tyres which are correctly inflated save fuel.

Always ensure the tyre inflation pressure is correct. The rolling resistance will be increased if the tyre filling pressure is too low. This will not only increase fuel consumption but also tyre wear and the driving behaviour will worsen.

Always check the tyre inflation pressure when the tyres are **cold**.

Avoid unnecessary ballast

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 126.

Transporting ballast costs fuel.

Each kilogramme of **weight** increases the fuel consumption. It is worth checking the boot to avoid transporting any unnecessary ballast.

It is particularly in town traffic, when one is accelerating quite often, that the vehicle weight will have a significant effect upon the fuel consumption. A rule of thumb here is that an increase in weight of 100 kilograms will cause an increase in fuel consumption of about 1 litre/100 kilometres.

At a speed of 100 - 120 km/h, your vehicle that is fitted with a roof rack cross member without a load will use use about 10 % more fuel than normal due to the increased aerodynamic drag.

Saving electricity

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 126.

When the engine is running, the alternator generates and supplies electrical power. If more electrical components of the electrical system are switched on, more fuel is needed to operate the alternator. We therefore recommend switching off electrical components if these are no longer required.

Environmental compatibility

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 126.

Environmental protection has played a major role in the design, material selection and production of your new ŠKODA. Particular emphasis has been placed on the following points.

Design measures
- Joints designed to be easily detached.
- Simplified disassembly due to the modular structure system.
- Improved purity of different classes of materials.
- Identification of all plastic parts in accordance with VDA Recommendation 260.
- Reduced fuel consumption and exhaust emission CO_2.
- Minimum fuel leakage during accidents.
- Reduced noise.

Choice of materials
- Extensive use of recyclable material.
- Air conditioning filled with CFC-free refrigerant.
- No cadmium.
- No asbestos.
- Reduction in the "vaporisation" of plastics.

Manufacture
- Solvent-free cavity protection.
- Solvent-free protection of the vehicle for transportation from the production plant to the customer.
- The use of solvent-free adhesives.
- No CFCs used in the production process.
- Without use of mercury.
- Use of water-soluble paints.

Trade-in and recycling of old cars

ŠKODA meets the requirements of the brand and its products with regard to protecting the environment and the preserving resources. All new ŠKODA vehicles can be utilized up to 95 % and always [1] be returned. In a lot of countries sufficient trade-in networks have been created, where you can trade-in your vehicle. After you trade-in your vehicle, you will receive a confirmation stating the recycling in accordance with environmental regulations.

Note

You can find more detailed information about the trade-in and recycling of old cars from a specialist garage.

[1] Subject to fulfilment of the national legal requirements.

Avoiding damage to your vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

General information 130
Driving through water on roads 130

General information

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 130.

Pay attention to low-slung parts of the vehicle, such as the spoiler and exhaust, particularly in the following situations.

› When driving on poorly maintained roads and paths.
› When driving over kerbs.
› When driving on steep ramps etc.

Particular attention must be paid with vehicles with sport suspension and when the vehicle is fully laden.

Driving through water on roads

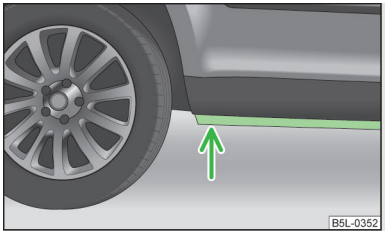

Fig. 111
Driving through water

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 130.

The following must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle when driving through bodies of water (e.g. flooded roads):

› Therefore determine the depth of the water before driving through bodies of water. The water level must fit around the strut on the side member as a maximum » Fig. 111;
› Do not drive any faster than at a walking speed. At a higher speed, a water wave can form in front of the vehicle which can cause water to penetrate into the air induction system of the engine or into other parts of the vehicle;
› Never stop in the water, do not reverse and do not switch the engine off;
› Deactivate the START-STOP system before driving through water » page 147, *Function*.

WARNING

- Driving through water, mud, sludge etc. can impair the braking power and increase the braking distance – risk of accident!
- Avoid abrupt and sudden braking immediately after water crossings.
- After driving through bodies of water, the brakes must be cleaned and dried as soon as possible by intermittent braking. Only apply the brakes for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.

CAUTION

- When driving through water, some parts of the vehicle such as the engine, gearbox, chassis or electrics can be severely damaged.
- Oncoming vehicles can generate water waves which can exceed the permissible water level for your vehicle.
- Potholes, mud or rocks can be hidden under the water making it difficult or impossible to drive through the body of water.
- Do not drive through salt water. The salt can lead to corrosion. Any vehicle parts that have come into contact with salt water must be rinsed immediately with fresh water.

Note

After driving through water, we recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist garage.

Driving abroad

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unleaded petrol 131
Headlights 131

In certain countries, it may be possible that the ŠKODA service partner network is limited or has not been established. This is the reason why procuring certain spare parts may be somewhat complicated and specialist garages may only be able to make limited repairs.

Unleaded petrol

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 131.

A vehicle fitted with a petrol engine must always be refuelled with unleaded petrol » page 191, *Unleaded petrol*. Information regarding the locations of filling stations that offer unleaded petrol is, for example, provided by the automobile associations.

Headlights

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 131.

The low beam of your headlights is set asymmetrically. It illuminates the side of the road on which the vehicle is being driven to a greater extent.

When driving in countries in which the traffic drives on the other side of the road than in your home country, the asymmetrical low beam may dazzle oncoming drivers. In order to avoid this, the headlights must be adjusted at a specialist garage.

Headlights with Xenon lights are adjusted in the menu of the information display » page 15, *MAXI DOT (information display)*.

Note

You can find out more information on adjusting the headlights at a specialist garage.

Off-road driving

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Explanation of technical terms 132
Before driving off-road 133
Off-road driving 134
Changing gear when driving off-road 134
Driving at an angle on a hillside 135
Stuck vehicle 135
After driving off-road 136

We cannot discuss all the possible driving situations in this manual, because there are so many types of terrains which may hide different risks and dangers. The examples listed in this manual are general rules for safe off-road driving. It is however not possible to predict if these rules are valid for all the situations which may occur. Before driving through unknown terrain, it is therefore important that you know what lies ahead of you. This way you can estimate any possible danger in advance.

When driving off-road, pay attention to the national legal regulations.

WARNING

- Be very alert and look ahead when driving off-road. Always adjust your driving to the current of-road, traffic and weather conditions. Excessive speed or incorrect driving manoeuvres can cause damage to the vehicle and lead to serious injuries.
- The Assistance systems of your vehicle cannot overcome the physical limits of your vehicle.

WARNING (Continued)

- Do not drive over embankments, ramps or hillsides at too high a speed. This can lead to the wheels of the vehicle lifting off the ground so that you can no longer steer and control the vehicle.
- If the wheels lose contact with the ground, for example when the vehicle rebounds while driving over corrugations, steer straight ahead. If the wheels are turned when making the contact with the ground again, the vehicle can roll over.
- There should never be any person in front or behind the vehicle when rocks, scrub, wood pieces or other objects are placed under the wheels in order to achieve traction on a sandy or slippery ground. The turning of the wheels can transform these objects into dangerous "bullets" – risk to life!
- Luggage and other items, which are transported on the roof of the vehicle, additionally raise the centre of gravity and thus increase the risk of a rollover.
- Never attempt to drive uphill or downhill if it is too steep for your vehicle. The vehicle could slip, tip or roll over - risk of accident! » table on page 133
- Never attempt to make a turn on a hillside. The vehicle could tip or roll over - risk of injury.
- Never let the vehicle roll down the hillside at idling speed. You can lose the control over your vehicle.
- If the engine cuts out, stop and restart the engine.
- Objects trapped under the floor of the vehicle can damage the fuel lines, the brake system, the seals and other parts of the chassis. Check the underside of the vehicle and remove the trapped objects. Combustible objects such as dry leaves or twigs could ignite on hot vehicle parts - risk of fire!

CAUTION

- Pay attention to the ground clearance of the vehicle! When driving over objects which are larger than the ground clearance, the chassis and its components can get damaged.
- Do not leave your foot on the clutch pedal or let the clutch slip when driving off-road. Overwise you may unintentionally depress the clutch pedal on uneven ground leading to a loss of control over the vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Pay attention to the environment when driving off-road.

Explanation of technical terms

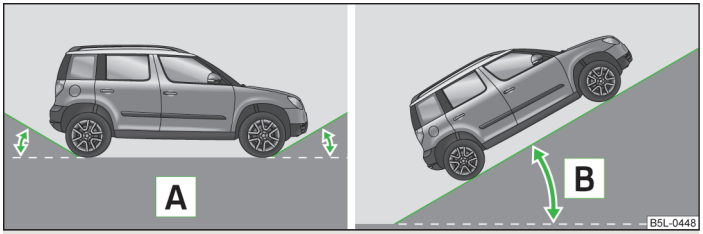

Fig. 112 **Embankment angle/slope angle**

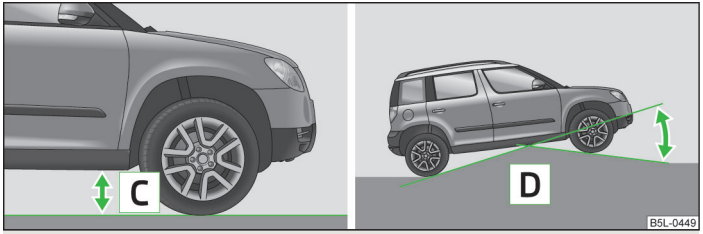

Fig. 113 **Ground clearance/ramp angle**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 131.

The technical data » table on page 133 refer to ideal conditions. These values may differ depending on the load and composition of the soil and the environment. The driver is responsible to decide whether a vehicle can overcome a certain situation.

A Embankment angle (front and rear)
Transition from the horizontal plane to an upward slope or from a downward slope back to the plane. The angle indication determines the angle at which you can drive the vehicle down the embankment, at a slow speed, without the bumper or the underbody of the vehicle touching the ground.

B Slope angle
The difference of altitude (upward slope) which is overcome on a stretch of road of 100 m, is indicated in percentage or degrees, i.e the gradiant at which the vehicle can climb a hill on its own (among other things, depending on the road surface and the engine power).

C Ground clearance
The distance between the road surface and the deepest point of the vehicle underbody.

D Ramp angle
The angle indication determines the angle at which you can drive the vehicle over a ramp, at a slow speed, without the underbody of the vehicle touching the ramp edge.

Overhang angle (°)

Overhang angle, front	19 (17.1 [a])
Overhang angle, rear	26.7 (25.2 [a])
Ramp angle	19.4 (17.2 [a])

[a] GreenLine

Slope angle (°)/ability to climb (%)

1.2 ltr./77 kW TSI	24/45
1.4 ltr./90 kW TSI	27/50
1.8 l/118 (112) kW TSI	29/55
1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI CR	29/55
2.0 ltr/81 kW TDI CR - MG5	29/55
2.0 l/81 kW TDI CR - MG6 4x4	31/60
2.0 ltr./103 kW TDI CR	31/60
2.0 ltr./103 kW TDI CR - Green tec	29/55
2.0 ltr./125 kW TDI CR	31/60

Before driving off-road

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 131.

Important information
- The first priority should always be **safety**.
- Do not drive off-road if your vehicle is not suited to it. Your vehicle is not designed for expedition-like travel.
- Before every off-road journey, make sure that the vehicle is appropriately equipped for the planned journey.
- Check the tyre inflation pressure on your vehicle and adjust where necessary.
- Fill up. The fuel consumption of the vehicle is much higher when driving off-road than when driving on the road.
- Pay attention to possible hazards before driving on unfamiliar territory.
- Before driving, always put the seat belt on correctly. Make sure that your front passenger and your passengers seated on the rear seats always fasten their seat belts correctly.
- You must be seated in such a way that you have good front visibility, especially when driving uphill or downhill. You must never be seated in such a way that the distance between your chest and the middle of the airbag cover is less than **25 cm** » page 169, *Front airbags*.
- Use a suitable pair of shoes which makes it safer to operate the pedals.
- Install the towing eye at the front or at the rear before driving off-road. It is not always possible to install the towing eye if the vehicle got stuck.
- Check the car tool kit, stock up where necessary.
- Fill the engine oil up to the mark A » page 197, *Checking the oil level*.
- Fill up the windscreen washer fluid.
- Your vehicle has a higher centre of gravity than normal cars. This increases the risk of vehicle rollover when driving on-road and off-road.
- Secure the items in your vehicle properly.

Off-road driving

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 131.

Important information

› Switch on the OFF ROADmode » page 139, *OFF ROADmode*.
› Drive slowly through tricky route sections. Shift up when driving up on slippery surfaces, make sure the vehicle always remains in motion. Do not drive too fast otherwise you may lose control over the vehicle.
› Drive slowly over hilltops. Make sure that the wheels of the vehicle do not lift off the ground, as this could severely damage the vehicle and it may become disabled.
› If your vehicle got stuck in sand, snow or sludge, it may be more effective to reverse the vehicle than trying to drive forwards.
› Place stones, footmats or pieces of wood under the spinning wheels in order to achieve traction on a sandy or slippery ground.
› Read the instructions before driving through water » page 130.
› Keep sufficient distance from other vehicles even at low speeds. When the first vehicle suddenly gets stuck, the following vehicle can still stop in time without getting stuck itself.

Driving uphill

› Drive slowly and steadily straight uphill.
› Do not shift gears or press the clutch pedal while climbing.
› Only press the accelerator enough to move up the hill.
› Do not stop or turn the vehicle around on the hillside.
› Prevent the engine from cutting out.

If you can go no further on a slope

› Never attempt to make a turn with the vehicle on a hillside.
› If the engine cuts out, stop and restart the engine.
› Shift into reverse gear and carefully move backwards in your own lane.

Downhill

› Shift into first gear or select the first driving stage, while in Tiptronic mode, to drive downhill on steep hillsides. The Downhill Drive Support is optimally utilised in this way.
› Use the foot break carefully otherwise you may lose control over the vehicle.
› If it is feasible and safe, drive straight down.
› Do not press down on the clutch or shift into Neutral.

Driving over rutted roads and troughs

› Only drive over rutted roads and troughs when they do not exceed your vehicle's ground clearance. Your vehicle may "sink" and get stuck in soft ground.
› Never drive over rutted roads and troughs which are too deep. If you cannot avoid this, it is better that you turn back.

Crossing a trench

› If possible, drive through the trench at an acute angle. Make sure when driving through the trench that the tilt angle is not too steep.

Driving in sand and mud

› You should always drive at a constant speed through sand or mud whenever possible and at the same time do not shift gears.
› Never drive too fast, otherwise the wheels may spin and the vehicle can get stuck. If you feel that the tyres are losing grip, turn the steering wheel quickly back and forth. This leads to an improved grip on the front tyres for a short period of time.

Changing gear when driving off-road

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 131.

The gear you must shift into depends on the terrain. Choosing the correct gear contributes to safe driving.

Important information

› When the gear or the driving stage has been properly selected, it is unnecessary to slow down the vehicle on a downhill section using the footbrake as in most cases the engine braking power is sufficient.
› Depress the accelerator only as much as is necessary. A too great acceleration may lead to the wheels spinning and thus results in the loss over the control of the vehicle.

Manual gearbox

› If you are driving through difficult terrain, **on no account** use the clutch or change the gear. When the clutch is depressed, the vehicle may come to a standstill because of the increased grip of all the tyres of the vehicle (e.g. in the mud, in deep sand or on a slope). Once the vehicle has come to a standstill, it may be difficult or even impossible to start off under these conditions.
› When negotiating a steep downhill section or a steep uphill section, always shift into the 1st or 2nd gear.
› On a soft or slippery ground, you must drive at the appropriate speed and you must select the highest possible gear for this.

Automatic gearbox

› Select the selector lever position D for normal flat stretches of terrain » page 122, *Selector lever positions*.
› While in Tiptronic mode, select the selector lever position 3 or 2 if you are driving through mud, sand, water or hilly sections of terrain » page 123, *Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic)*.
› When negotiating a steep downhill section or a steep uphill section, select the selector lever position 1 while in Tiptronic mode
› On a soft or slippery ground, you must drive at the appropriate speed and you must select the highest possible driving stage for this.

Driving at an angle on a hillside

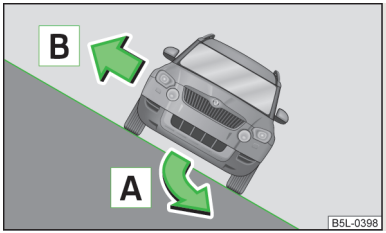

Fig. 114
Steer and maintain your trajectory/in direction to exit - facing uphill

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 131.

Driving at an angle on a hillside is one of the most dangerous situations while driving off-road.

If the vehicle is at a very steep angle, the wheels on the low side must not sink deeply into the ground or into troughs and you must not drive over stones, tree stumps or other obstructions with the alternate raised wheels.

If there is a risk your vehicle may tilt, steer immediately in direction of dip A and lightly depress the accelerator » Fig. 114.

A passenger, seated at the rear, should always remain seated on the seat facing up the hill during such a journey. In an extreme case, the passenger on the relevant side must exit the vehicle until you have safely crossed the hillside.

Exiting the vehicle on a hillside

If the vehicle comes to a standstill at a steep angle on a hillside and you and your passengers must exit the vehicle, then all the occupants should exit on the side facing up the hill B» Fig. 114.

WARNING

- Before driving at an angle on a hillside A » Fig. 114, ensure that you can steer and maintain your trajectory. If you drive at an angle on a hillside and there is a risk your vehicle may tilt, steer immediately downhill on your trajectory and lightly depress the accelerator.
- In case the vehicle is stationary on a hillside at a steep angle, do not exit the vehicle when it is facing downhill. Always leave the vehicle carefully on the side facing downhill B » Fig. 114.
- When driving at an angle on a hillside, the vehicle can lose its grip and slide sideways. Always make sure that the wheels on the low side do not sink into the ground or into troughs and that the wheels on the high side do not drive over raised objects such as stones, tree stumps or other obstructions - risk of accident!

Stuck vehicle

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 131.

If you can no longer drive on ...

› Carefully dig out all wheels and ensure that no other parts of the vehicle are still stuck.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Carefully press the accelerator and try to reverse in a straight line.
› Place scrub, footmats or a sackcloth directly in front of the tyres in order to improve grip and thus achieve an improved traction to drive out.

Rocking out vehicle

› Switch off the TCS.
› Set the steering wheel straight.
› Drive back until the wheels just begin to spin.
› Shift into first gear and drive forwards until the wheels just begin to spin again.
› Drive back and forth repeatedly until the momentum is sufficient to free the vehicle.
› Switch on the TCS.

After driving off-road

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 131.

Check the vehicle for damage after driving off-road - especially on the underside of the vehicle.

Remove coarse dirt and trapped objects, such as scrub, chips, small stones and foreign bodies from the tyre tread.

Clean the indicator lights, headlamps, indicator light and windows.

In case of thick layers of dirt, clean the radiator grille, the engine compartment and the underbody of the vehicle.

If a fault occurs, we recommend having the repair carried out by a specialist garage.

Assist systems

Brake assist systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 137
Antilock brake system (ABS) 138
Traction Control System (TCS) 138
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL) 139

WARNING

- A lack of fuel can cause irregular engine running or cause the engine to shut down. The brake assist systems would then fail to function – risk of accident!
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. The increased safety provided by the brake assist systems must not tempt you to take safety risks – risk of accident!
- In the event of an ABS fault, visit a specialist garage immediately. Adjust your style of driving according to the damage to the ABS, as you will not know the exact extent of the damage or the extent to which this is limiting the braking efficiency.

CAUTION

- All four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres approved by the manufacturer to ensure the brake assist systems operate correctly.
- Changes to the vehicle (e.g. to the engine, brakes, chassis or another combination of tyres and wheels) can influence the functionality of the brake assist systems » page 187, *Modifications, repairs and technical alterations*.

Note

If a fault occurs in the ABS system, the ESC, ASR and EDL will also not work. An ABS fault is indicated by the warning light » page 22.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)



Fig. 115
ESC system: TCS button

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 137.

The ESC system helps improve control of the vehicle in situations where it is being operated at its dynamic limits, such as a sudden change to the direction of travel. The risk of skidding is reduced and your car thus offers greater driving stability depending on the conditions of the road surface.

The ESC system is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

The direction which the driver wishes to take is determined based on the steering angle and the speed of the vehicle and is constantly compared with the actual behaviour of the vehicle. In the event of deviations, such as the car beginning to skid, the ESC system will automatically brake the appropriate wheel.

During an intervention of the system, the indicator light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The following systems are integrated into the **Electronic Stability Control (ESC)** :
- Antilock brake system (ABS),
- Traction control (TCS),
- Electronic differential lock (EDL)
- Active driver-steering recommendation (DSR),
- Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA),
- Hill Hold Control (HHC),

It is not possible to deactivate the ESC. The » Fig. 115 symbol button can only be used to switch off the ASR. The indicator light illuminates in the instrument cluster when the ASR is switched off.

In the event of an ESC fault, the ESC indicator light illuminates in the instrument cluster » page 22.

Active driver-steering recommendation (DSR)
In critical situations, the DSR provides the driver with a steering recommendation in order to stabilise the vehicle. The active driver-steering recommendation is activated, for example, on the right and left vehicle side when braking sharply on different road surfaces.

Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)
The HBA is activated by very quick operation of the brake pedal. The HBA increases the braking effect and helps to reduce the braking distance. In order to achieve the shortest possible braking distance, the brake pedal must be applied firmly until the vehicle has come to a standstill.

The ABS is activated faster and more effectively with the intervention of the HBA.

The HBA function is automatically deactivated when the brake pedal is released.

Hill Hold Control (HHC)
When driving on slopes, HHC allows you to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal without having to use the handbrake.

The system holds the brake pressure produced by the activation of the brake pedal for approx. 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

The brake pressure drops gradually the more you operate the accelerator pedal. If the vehicle does not start off within 2 seconds, it starts to roll back.

The HHC is active on slopes of 5% and steeper, provided that the driver's door is closed. HHC is only ever active on slopes when in forward or reverse start off. When driving downhill, it is inactive.

Antilock brake system (ABS)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 137.

ABS prevents the wheels locking when braking. Thus helping the driver to maintain control of the vehicle.

The intervention of the ABS is noticeable from the **pulsating movements of the brake pedal** which is accompanied by noises.

When the ABS system is active, do not brake periodically or reduce the pressure on the brake pedal.

ABS OFF ROAD
After activating the OFF ROAD mode, » page 139 the ABS OFF ROAD is activated.

The ABS OFF ROAD increases the braking power of the vehicle on an unfirm ground, as it keeps the wheels blocked for a longer period of time when the brake is applied while sliding. The system is only available, if the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position.

The system operates at speeds of up to 50 km/h.

Traction Control System (TCS)



Fig. 116
TCS button

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 137.

If the wheels are slipping, the TCS adapts the engine speed to the conditions of the road surface. The TCS makes it much easier to start off, accelerate and climb steep hills even if the conditions of the road surface are unfavourable.

The TCS function is activated automatically each time the ignition is switched on.

During an intervention of the system, the TCS indicator light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The TCS should normally always be switched on. It may be advisable to switch off the system in certain exceptional circumstances, such as:
› when driving with snow chains;
› when driving in deep snow or on a very loose surface;
› when it is necessary to "rock a vehicle free" when it has got stuck.

Ensure the TCS is switched on again afterwards.

If necessary, the TCS can be switched off and on again by pressing the ASR OFF » Fig. 116, or on vehicles with ESC, by pressing the » Fig. 115 on page 137 symbol button. The indicator light illuminates in the instrument cluster when the ASR is switched off.

The TCS indicator light » page 21 lights up in the instrument cluster when there is a fault on the TCS.

TCS OFF ROAD
After activating the OFF ROAD mode, » page 139 the ASR OFF ROAD is activated.

The TCS OFF ROAD provides a more effective acceleration of the vehicle on an unfirm ground, as it allows higher traction between the slipping wheels and the ground.

The system operates when starting off or at low speeds.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 137.

If one of the wheels starts to spin, the EDL system brakes the spinning wheel and transfers the driving force to the other wheels. This ensures the stability of the vehicle and a quick journey.

In the event of severe stresses, the EDL switches off automatically in order to avoid excessive heat generation in the disc brake of the wheel being braked. The vehicle can continue to be driven and has the same characteristics as a vehicle not fitted with EDL. The EDL switches on again automatically as soon as the brake has cooled down.

EDL OFF ROAD
After activating the OFF ROAD mode, » page 139 the EDL OFF ROAD is activated.

The EDL OFF ROAD supports the vehicle traction when driving on unfirm ground.

EDL is activated earlier in the OFF ROAD mode than in the normal mode. The brake pressure builds up more quickly on the faster moving wheel, on one axle, as well as diagonally.

OFF ROADmode

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function 139

! WARNING

- A lack of fuel can cause irregular engine running or cause the engine to shut down. The OFF ROAD mode would lose its effectiveness - risk of accident!
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. The increased safety offered by the OFF ROAD mode must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise - risk of an accident!

! CAUTION

- The OFF ROAD mode is not designed for the use on common roads.
- All four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres approved by the manufacturer to ensure theOFF ROAD mode operates correctly.

i Note

- During an intervention of the Downhill Drive Support, the brake lights do not light up.
- Do not switch the OFF ROADmode while the assistant is in effect.

Function



Fig. 117
OFF ROAD button

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 139.

The OFF ROAD mode comprises functions which assist off-road driving.

The following functions are integrated in the OFF ROAD mode:
› Start-Off Assist
› Downhill Drive Support,
› ABS OFF ROAD » page 138;

› ASR OFF ROAD » page 139;
› EDL OFF ROAD » page 139.

Switching on OFF ROAD
The OFF ROAD mode is switched on by pressing the » Fig. 117 symbol button. The indicator light in the button lights up. The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster if the system is switched on » page 25.

Switching off OFF ROAD
Pressing the button switches the OFF ROAD mode off. The indicator light in the button goes out. When switching off the ignition, the OFF ROAD mode is also switched off and can be switched on again, if necessary, after switching on the ignition. If the engine is switched off by accident and restarted within 30 seconds, the OFF ROAD mode remains switched on.

Start-Off Assist
When the vehicle is stationary, the Start-Off Assist is activated after switching it on using the button for the OFF ROAD mode» Fig. 117.

When depressing the accelerator pedal fully, the engine speed required for the start-up procedure of the stationary vehicle is restricted. The overspeed trip unit is automatically deactivated after terminating the start-up procedure. As part of the Assist System, the accelerator pedal is adapted in its characteristics for an easier start-off on slippery and loose soil.

Downhill Drive Support
The Downhill Drive Support maintains a constant speed on a steep downhill section when driving forwards and backwards by automatically intervening in the brake system of all wheels. It prevents the wheels locking because the ABS remains active. The warning light in the instrument cluster indicates that the Downhill Drive Support is available » page 25.

The vehicle speed, which is maintained by the Assist System, is selected by the driver while driving on a downhill section as of the moment the first intervention of the Assist System is performed or else, while driving on a downhill section, the driver must control the vehicle speed until the Assist System intervenes for the first time. When the Assist System actively intervenes, this is indicated by the warning light flashing or by a pulsating movement of the brake pedal, similar to the intervention of the ABS.

You can increase or reduce the speed, even when no gear is engaged, by operating the accelerator or brake pedal. Thus the function is always interrupted and is reactivated afterwards.

The Downhill Drive Support is activated automatically if the following conditions are met:
› the OFF ROAD mode is switched on and the warning light lights up in the instrument cluster,
› the engine of the vehicle is running and either the 1st, 2nd, 3rd gear, the reverse gear or no gear is engaged,
› the engine of the vehicle is running, the selector lever of the automatic gearbox is in the position R, N, D, S or Tiptronic,
› the speed is less than 30 km/h,
› the downhill gradient is at least 10 % (when driving over sleepers, the limit can briefly drop to 8 %),
› neither the accelerator nor the brake pedal is operated.

It is however a requirement that the vehicle has sufficient grip on the soil. The Downhill Drive Support cannot properly fulfil its function on slushy soil due to physical reasons (ice or mud).

The Downhill Drive Support is deactivated when braking or accelerating or if the downhill gradient is less than 8 %.

The vehicle speed is steadily regulated by the Assist System in vehicles with a **manual gearbox** depending on the type of gearbox or engine:
› 1st gear - approx. 8[1)] - 30 km/h
› 2nd gear - approx. 13[1)] - 30 km/h
› 3rd gear - approx. 22[1)] - 30 km/h
› Reverse gear - approx. 9[1)] - 30 km/h
› Neutral for driving forwards - as well as driving backwards - approx. 2[1)] - 30 km/h

Vehicles with **automatic gearbox**:
› Selector lever in position D, S or Tiptronic (for 1st, 2nd, 3rd gear) for forward travel - approximately 2-30 km/h;
› Selector lever in position R for driving backwards - approx. 2 - 30 km/h
› Selector lever in position N for driving forwards and backwards - approx. 2 - 30 km/h

[1)] The indicated values represent the average of the lower speed limits if a gear is engaged (depending on the type of gearbox or engine).

Parking aid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function 141
Visual parking system 142

WARNING

- The parking aid is not a substitute for the driver paying proper attention and it is always the driver's responsibility to take care when reversing the vehicle or carrying out similar manoeuvres. Pay particular attention to small children and animals as they are not recognised by the parking aid sensors.
- Before reversing, you should make sure that there are no small obstacles, such as rocks, thin posts, trailer drawbars etc. in front or behind your vehicle. Such obstacles may not be recognised by the parking aid sensors.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the signals from the parking aid. Thus, these objects or people who wear such clothing are not recognised by the parking aid sensors.
- External sound sources can have a detrimental effect on the parking aid. Under unfavourable conditions, objects or people may not be recognised.

CAUTION

- If a warning signal sounds for about 3 seconds after activating the system and there is no obstacle close to your car, this indicates a system fault. The fault is also indicated by the P symbol flashing in the » Fig. 118 on page 141 button. Have the fault rectified by a specialist garage.
- The sensors must be kept clean (free of ice, etc.) to enable the parking aid to operate properly.

Note

- Additionally installed modules such as bicycle carriers can impair the function of the parking aid.
- If the parking aid is activated and the selector lever of the automatic gearbox is in the position **P**, the warning signal is interrupted (the vehicle cannot move).

Function

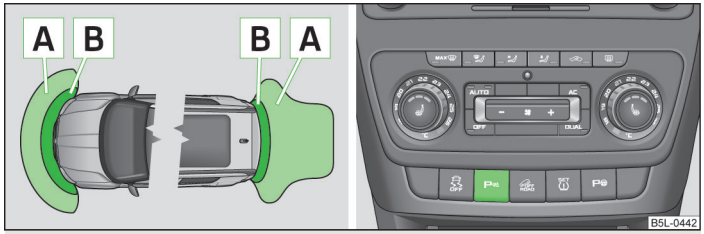

Fig. 118 **Parking aid: Range of the sensors/activating the parking aid**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 141.

The parking aid (hereafter referred to solely as system) only works when the ignition is switched on.

The system assists the driver by giving acoustic signals and displaying information on the screen of the navigation system or the radio when parking and manoeuvring » page 142, *Visual parking system*.

The system uses ultrasound waves to calculate the distance between the bumper and an obstacle. The ultrasound sensors are located on the front/rear bumper.

The signal tones for the front parking aid sound higher than for the rear parking aid. The tones of the parking aid can be adapted in the menu of the Information display » page 16.

Range of sensors

The distance warning begins at a distance of about 160°cm from the obstacle at the rear of the vehicle and about 120 cm from the obstacle in front of the vehicle A » Fig. 118. The interval between the warning signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced.

A continuous tone sounds from a distance of approx. 30 cm B » Fig. 118 - danger area. **From this moment on do not continue driving!**

On vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, the border of the danger area starts (continuous tone) 5 cm further away from the vehicle. The length of the vehicle can be increased with an installed detachable towing device.

On vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, the rear sensors are deactivated when towing a trailer.

Activating/deactivating the rear parking aid
The system is activated by engaging **reverse gear**. This is confirmed by a brief audible signal.

The system is deactivated by disengaging reverse gear.

Activating/deactivating the front and rear parking aid
The system is activated by engaging **reverse gear** or by pressing the P» Fig. 118 symbol button. The P symbol lights up in the button. This is confirmed by a brief audible signal.

The system is deactivated by pressing the P symbol button or when the speed exceeds 10 km/h – the P symbol in the button then goes out.

Visual parking system

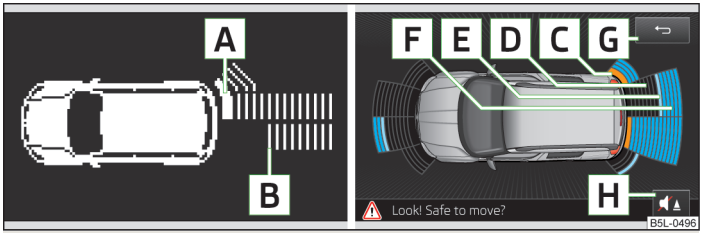

Fig. 119 **Illustrated examples - monochromatic display/colour display**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 141.

For navigation systems and some factory-installed radios, the system is displayed on the screen.

Explanation of graphic

A An obstacle detected in the collision area. **Do not drive the vehicle!**
B An obstacle so far detected outside the collision area.
C An obstacle detected in the collision area. **Do not drive the vehicle!**
D An area without any obstacles or a free space between the bumper and an obstacle.
E An obstacle so far detected outside the collision area.
F An area behind the detected obstacle.
G Switching off the visual parking system.
H Switching the acoustic parking aid on/off.

Park assist

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Park assist display on the information display 143
Parking with the help of the park assist system and completing the parking procedure 144
Messages in the information display 145

The parking aid is part of the park assist system, therefore the information and safety guidelines » page 141, *Function* must be read and observed.

The park assist system helps you to park in a suitable parallel parking space between two vehicles or behind a vehicle.

After switching on the ignition and when driving at a speed of up to 30 km/h, the park assist system automatically searches for suitable parking spaces on the driver's and passenger's side of the vehicle.

During the parking procedure the park assist only takes over the steering movements, the pedals continue to be operated by the driver.

If the park assist system is switched on, a yellow indicator light illuminates up in the button » Fig. 120 on page 143.

The function of the system is based on:
› the measurement and evaluation of the size of parking spaces when driving,
› the determination of the correct position of the vehicle for parking,
› the calculation of the line on which the vehicle drives backwards into the parking space,
› the automatic turning of the front wheels when parking.

WARNING

- The park assist does not take away the responsibility from the driver when parking.
- External sound sources can have a detrimental effect on the park assist system and parking aid. Under unfavourable conditions, objects or people may not be recognised.

CAUTION

- If other vehicles are parked behind or on the kerb, the park assist guides your vehicle beyond the kerb or onto it. Ensure that the wheels or the wheel rims of your vehicle are not damaged and if necessary intervene in time.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces or structures of certain objects, such as wire mesh fences, powder snow etc., cannot be recognised by the system.
- The evaluation of the parking space and the parking procedure depends on the circumference of the wheels. The system only works correctly if the vehicle is fitted with the wheel size approved by the manufacturer. If wheels other than those approved by the manufacturer are mounted, the resulting position of the vehicle in the parking space can differ slightly. This can be avoided by readjusting the system at a specialist garage. Under certain circumstances, the system may not function correctly, for example, if the vehicle is fitted with snow chains or a temporary spare wheel.

Note

- The traction control system (TCS) must always be switched on when parking.
- Only the front parking aid operates if you are towing a trailer (applies only to vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device). This is why it is not possible to reverse into a parking space with the help of the park assist system when towing a trailer.
- If the sensors find a suitable parking space, they store its parameters until another suitable parking space has been found or until a distance of 10 m had been driven after finding the parking space. This is why it is possible to switch on the park assist after driving past the parking space and the information on whether this parking space is suitable for parking appears in the information display.

Park assist display on the information display

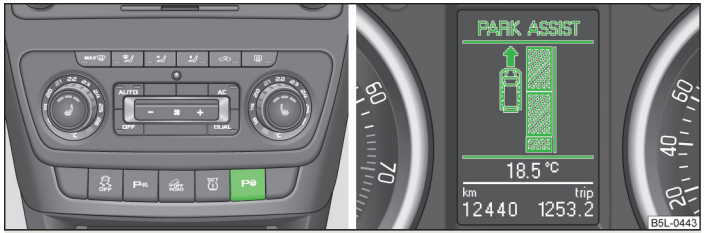

Fig. 120 **Switch on display of the park assist in the information display/information display: Finding a suitable parking space**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 142.

Switching on

› Press the button » Fig. 120.
› Drive past the parking space at up to maximum 30 km/h and a distance of 0.5–1.5 m » Fig. 120.

The search area for the parking space on the driver's side is automatically indicated on the information display.

Activate the turn signal on the driver's side if you wish to park on this side of the road. In the information display the search area for the parking space is indicated on the driver's side.

If the button is pressed at a speed greater than 30 km/h and less than 50 km/h, the message indicating that the speed for detecting the space has been exceeded will be shown on the display of the instrument cluster. If the speed drops below 30 km/h, the condition of the park assist system is automatically displayed in the display of the instrument cluster. When exceeding a speed of 50 km/h, it is necessary to activate the display again by pressing the button » Fig. 120.

Parking with the help of the park assist system and completing the parking procedure

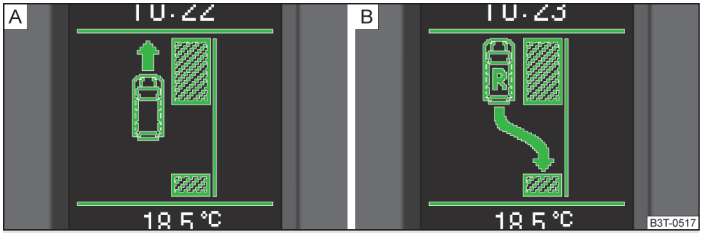

Fig. 121 **Information display: Parking space detected including the information to continue driving A and to engage reverse gear B**

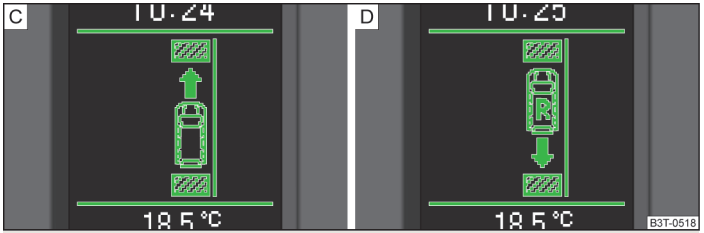

Fig. 122 **Information display: Information to engage the forward gear C or the reverse gear D**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 142.

The time limit for the parking procedure with the help of the park assist system is 180 seconds.

› If the park assist system has recognised a suitable parking space, it is shown in the information display » Fig. 121 - A.
› Continue driving forwards until the display » Fig. 121 - B appears.
› Stop the vehicle for at least 1 second.
› Engage reverse gear or move the selector lever into the position **R**.
› As soon as the following message is shown in the information display: **Steering interv. active. Monitor area around veh.!**, let go of the steering wheel. The steering will be taken over by the system.
› Observe the direct vicinity of the vehicle and reverse carefully.
› In the event that the parking procedure cannot be carried out in one go, the parking process is completed in further stages. If the forward arrow flashes in the information display » Fig. 122 - C, engage 1st gear or move the selector lever to position **D**.
› Wait until the steering wheel automatically turns into the required position and then carefully drive forwards.
› When the arrow in the information display is flashing towards the rear » Fig. 122 D, engage the reverse gear or move the selector lever to the position **R**.
› Wait until the steering wheel automatically turns into the required position and then carefully reverse. You can repeat these steps several times.
› Terminate the parking procedure based on the distance information provided by the park assist system.

As soon as the parking procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the information display:

Steering interv. finished. Please take over steering!

Switch off park assist

The park assist switches off during one of the following occurrences:
› Speed of 30 km/h exceeded;
› Speed of 7 km/h exceeded during the parking procedure;
› Time limit of 180 seconds for the parking procedure exceeded;
› Button for the park assist system pressed;
› Parking aid activated;
› TCS system switched off;
› Automatic steering procedure interrupted by the driver (stopping the steering wheel);
› Reverse gear disengaged or selector lever removed from the position **R** when reversing into the parking space.

Messages in the information display

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 142.

Park Assist ended.
The parking procedure has ended or after switching on the ignition, the vehicle has not been driven above 10 km/h.

Park Assist: Speed too high.
Reduce the speed to below 30 km/h.

Driver steering intervention: Please take over steering!
The parking procedure is terminated due to driver intervention.

Park Assist ended. ASR deactivated.
The parking procedure cannot be carried out because the TCS system is switched off.

ASR deactivated. Please take over steering!
The parking procedure was ended because the TCS system was switched off during the parking procedure.

Trailer: Park Assist ended.
The parking procedure is not possible because the trailer is hitched and a plug is inserted in the socket of the towing device.

Time limit exceeded. Please take over steering!
The parking procedure was ended because a time limit of 180 seconds for parking was exceeded.

Park Assist currently not available.
The Park Assist cannot be switched on because a fault exists on the vehicle. Have the fault rectified by a specialist garage.

Park Assist ended. System currently not available.
The parking procedure was ended because a fault exists on the vehicle. Have the fault rectified by a specialist garage.

Park Assist faulty. Workshop!
The parking procedure is not possible because a fault exists on the park assist. Have the fault rectified by a specialist garage.

Steering interv. active. Monitor area around veh.!
The Park Assist is active and takes over the steering movements. Observe the surrounding area and carefully reverse while operating the pedals.

Please take over steering! Finish parking manually!
Assume control of the steering. Complete the parking procedure without using the park assist system.

Speed too high. Please take over steering!
The parking procedure was ended because the speed was exceeded.

Park Assist: ASR intervention.
The intervention of the TCS while searching for a suitable parking place.

ASR intervention. Please take over steering!
The parking procedure is terminated by the intervention of the TCS.

Park Assist: Stationary time not sufficient.
The stationary time of the vehicle was less than 1 second.

Park Assist: Speed too low.
After the ignition is switched on, the vehicle must exceed the speed of 10 km/h at least once.

Cruise Control System

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Storing a speed 146
Changing a stored speed 146
Switching off the cruise control system temporarily 147
Switching off the cruise control system completely 147

The Cruise Control System (CCS) maintains a set speed, more than 25 km/h, without you having to actuate the accelerator pedal.

This is only possible within the range which is permitted by the power output and braking power of the engine.

The indicator light illuminates in the instrument cluster when the cruise control system is activated.

WARNING

- For safety reasons, the cruise control system must not be used in dense traffic or on unfavourable road surfaces (such as icy roads, slippery roads, loose gravel) - risk of accident!
- The saved speed may only be resumed if it is not too high for the current traffic conditions.
- Always deactivate the cruise control system after use to prevent the system being switched on unintentionally.

CAUTION

- The cruise control system is not able to maintain a constant speed when driving in areas with steeper gradients. The weight of the vehicle increases the speed at which it travels. Therefore, shift to a lower gear in good time or slow the vehicle down by applying the foot brake.
- It is not possible to switch on the cruise control system on vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox if the first gear or reverse gear is engaged.
- It is not possible on vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox to switch on the cruise control system if the selector lever is in the position **P**, **N** or **R**.
- The cruise control system may automatically switch off when some brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervene, when the maximum permissible engine speed is exceeded, etc.

Storing a speed

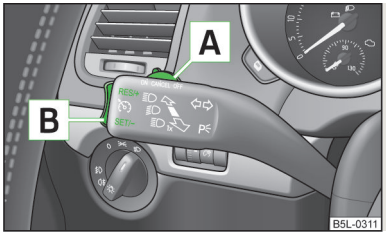

Fig. 123
Operating lever: Operating the cruise control system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 145.

Storing a speed

› Turn the switch A » Fig. 123 into the **ON** position.
› After the desired speed has been reached, press the rocker button B into the **SET** position.

After you have released the rocker button B out of the position **SET**, the speed you have just stored is maintained at a constant speed without having to depress the accelerator.

Changing a stored speed

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 145.

Increasing the speed with the accelerator

› Depress the accelerator to increase the speed.
› Release the accelerator to reduce the speed back down to the preset speed.

However, if the saved speed is exceeded by more than 10 km/h for a period of more than 5 minutes by depressing the accelerator, the stored speed is deleted from the memory. You have to re-store the desired speed.

Increasing the speed with the rocker button B

› Press the rocker button B » Fig. 123 on page 146 into the **RES** position.
› The speed will increase continuously, if the rocker button is pressed and held in the **RES** position. Release the rocker button once the desired speed is reached. The set speed is then stored in the memory.

Decreasing the speed

› The stored speed can be **reduced** by pressing the rocker button B » Fig. 123 on page 146 into the position **SET**.
› The speed will decrease continuously, if the rocker button is pressed and held in the **SET** position. Release the rocker button once the desired speed is reached. The set speed is then stored in the memory.
› If the rocker button is released at a speed of under 25 km/h, the speed is not stored and the memory is erased. The speed must then be stored again by pressing the rocker button B in the **SET** position after increasing the speed of the vehicle to more than 25 km/h.

The speed can also be reduced by depressing the brake pedal, which temporarily deactivates the system.

Switching off the cruise control system temporarily

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 145.

The cruise control system can be **temporarily switched off** by pushing the switch A » Fig. 123 on page 146 into the spring-mounted **CANCEL** position or by depressing the brake or clutch pedal.

The set speed remains stored in the memory.

Briefly push the rocker button B into the **RES** position to **resume** the set speed after the clutch or brake pedal is released.

Switching off the cruise control system completely

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 145.

› Turn the switch A » Fig. 123 on page 146 into the **OFF** position.

START/STOP

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function 147

WARNING

- The brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running.
- Never let the vehicle roll with the engine switched off.

CAUTION

Always deactivate the START-STOP system before driving through water » page 130.

Note

- Changes to the outdoor temperature can have an effect on the internal temperature of the vehicle battery even after several hours. If the vehicle remains outdoors for a long time in minus temperatures or in direct sunlight, it can take several hours until the internal temperature of the vehicle battery reaches a suitable temperature for proper operation of the START STOP system.
- If the Climatronic is running in automatic mode, under certain conditions, the engine may not switch off automatically.

Function



Fig. 124
Button for the START-STOP system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 147.

The START-STOP system helps you to save fuel while at the same time reducing harmful exhaust emissions and CO_2 emissions.

The function is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

In the start-stop mode, the engine automatically switches to the vehicle's idle phase, e.g. when stopped at traffic lights. The engine restarts automatically where necessary.

Information regarding the current state of the START-STOP system is indicated in the display of the instrument cluster.

Automatic engine shut down (stop phase)

› Stop the vehicle (where necessary, apply the handbrake).
› Take the vehicle out of gear.
› Release the clutch pedal.

Automatic renewed engine restart (start phase).
› Depress the clutch pedal.

Switching the START-STOP system on and off
The START/STOP system can be switched on/off by pressing the button » Fig. 124.

When start-stop mode is deactivated, the indicator light in the button lights up.

If the vehicle is in the stop phase when manually switching off the system, the engine starts immediately.

The START-STOP system is very complex. Some of the procedures are hard to check without servicing. The general conditions for the proper functioning of the START-STOP system are listed in the following overview.

Conditions that must be completely met for automatic engine switch-off (stop phase)
› The gearshift lever is in Neutral.
› The clutch pedal is not depressed.
› The driver has fastened the seat belt.
› The driver's door is closed.
› The bonnet is closed.
› The vehicle is at a standstill.
› The factory-fitted towing device is not electrically connected to a trailer.
› The engine is at operating temperature.
› The charge state of the vehicle battery is sufficient.
› The stationary vehicle is not on a steep slope or a steep downhill section.
› The engine speed is less than 1 200 rpm.
› The temperature of the vehicle battery is not too low or too high.
› There is sufficient pressure in the braking system.
› The difference between the outdoor- and the set temperature in the interior is not too great.
› The vehicle speed since the last time the engine was switched off was greater than 3 km/h.
› No cleaning of the diesel particle filter takes place » page 23.
› The front wheels are not turned excessively (the steering angle is less than 3/4 of a steering wheel revolution).

The automatic re-start (start phase) takes place in each of the following interventions:
› The clutch is depressed.
› The max./min. temperature is set.
› The defrost function for the windscreen is switched on.
› A high blower stage has been selected.
› The START STOP button is pressed.

The automatic re-start takes place in each of the following situations without intervention from the driver:
› The vehicle moves at a speed of more than 3 km/h.
› The difference between the outdoor- and the set temperature in the interior is too great.
› The charge state of the vehicle battery is not sufficient.
› There is insufficient pressure in the braking system.

If the driver's seat belt is removed for more than 30 seconds or the driver's door is opened during stop mode, the engine must be started manually with the key. The following messages in the instrument cluster display must be observed.

Messages in the instrument cluster display (valid for vehicles without Information display)

ERROR START-STOP	Error in the START-STOP system
START-STOP NOT POSSIBLE	Automatic engine shut down is not possible.
START STOP ACTIVE	Automatic engine shut down (stop phase)
SWITCH OFF IGNITION	Switch off the ignition.
START MANUALLY	Start the engine manually.

Fatigue detection (break recommendation)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function 149
Information messages 149

WARNING

- For the driving ability is always the driver's responsibility. Never drive if you feel tired.
- The system may not detect all cases where a break is needed.
- Therefore, take regular, sufficient breaks during long trips.
- There will be no warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

Note

- In some situations, the system may evaluate the driving incorrectly and thus mistakenly recommend a break (e.g. sporty driving, adverse weather conditions or poor road conditions).
- The fatigue detection system is designed primarily for motorway driving.

Function

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 148.

The fatigue detection system advises the driver on the basis of information about the steering behaviour, to take a break from driving. The system recommends a break at speeds of 65-200 km/h.

After the ignition has been switched on, the system evaluates the steering behaviour for 15 minutes. This baseline analysis is constantly compared with the current steering behaviour.

If the system detects deviations from normal steering behaviour due to possible fatigue of the driver, it recommends to take a break from driving.

The system deletes the stored baseline analysis if one of the following conditions is met.

› The vehicle is stopped and the ignition switched off.
› The vehicle is stopped, the seat belt removed and the driver's door opened.
› The vehicle is stopped for more than 15 minutes.

If none of these conditions are met or if the driving style is not changed, the system recommends a driving break again after 15 minutes.

Activation/deactivation
The system can be activated/deactivated from the **Assistants** menu item in the main menu of the information display » page 15.

Information messages

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 148.

The ♨ symbol will appear in the instrument cluster display for a few seconds, along with the following message:

Driver alert. Take a break!

An audible signal is also emitted.

Towing a trailer

Towing device

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Description 150
Adjusting the ready position 151
Fitting the tow bar 152
Checking proper attachment 153
Removing the tow bar 153
Use and care 154

If your vehicle has already been factory-fitted with a towing device or is fitted with a towing device from ŠKODA Original Accessories, then it meets all of the technical requirements and national legal regulations for towing a trailer.

Your vehicle is fitted with a 13-pin power socket for the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer. If the trailer that is to be towed has a **7-pin connector**, you can use a suitable adapter from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

The maximum trailer drawbar load is **80 kg**.

WARNING

- Check that the tow bar is seated correctly and is secured in the mounting recess before the start of every journey.
- Do not use the tow bar if it is not correctly inserted and secured in the mounting recess.
- Do not use the towing device if it is damaged or if there are parts missing.
- Do not modify or adapt the towing device in any way.
- Never release the tow bar while the trailer is still coupled.

CAUTION

Take care when handling the tow bar so as to avoid damaging the paintwork on the bumper.

Description

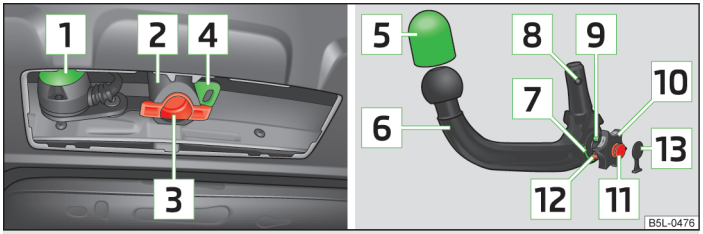

Fig. 125 **Carrier for the towing device/tow bar**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 150.

The tow bar can be removed and is kept in the spare wheel compartment or in a compartment for the spare wheel in the boot » page 214, *Vehicle tool kit*.

Explanation of graphic » Fig. 125

1 13-pin power socket
2 Mounting recess
3 Cover for the mounting recess
4 Safety eyelet
5 Dust cap
6 Tow ball
7 Green box on the tow bar
8 Locking ball
9 Green marking on the handwheel
10 Handwheel
11 Key
12 Red marking on the handwheel
13 Lock cap

Note

On the bottom of the key is a code number. If you lose a key, please contact a specialist garage, who will be able to use this code number to provide you with a new one.

Adjusting the ready position

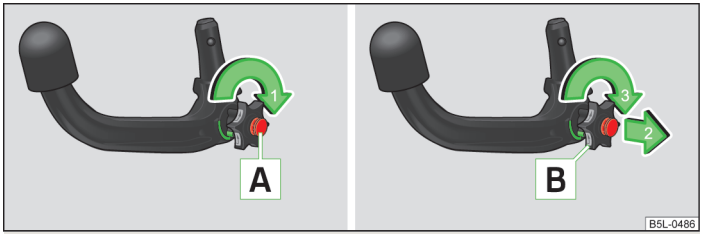

Fig. 126 **Setting the ready position**

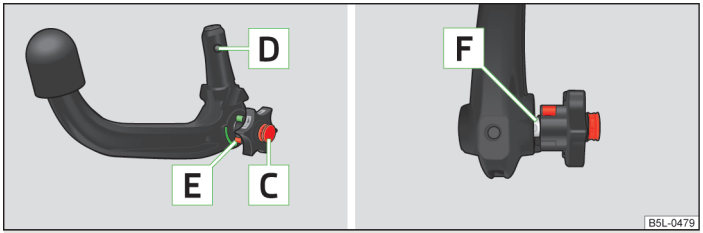

Fig. 127 **Ready position**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 150.

Always set the ready position before fitting the tow bar.

› Turn the key A in direction of the arrow **1** to the stop » Fig. 126.
› Hold the tow bar with your left hand.
› Using your right hand, pull the handwheel B in the direction of the arrow **2** and drag in the direction of the arrow **3** to the stop.

The handwheel remains locked in this position.

Ready position » Fig. 127

✓ The key C is in the unlocked position and cannot be removed.
✓ The locking balls D can be pushed fully into the tow bar.
✓ The red marking E on the handwheel is located in the green box on the tow bar.
✓ There is a clear gap of approx. 5 mm F between the handwheel and the tow bar.

The tow bar is now ready to be inserted into the mounting recess.

WARNING

If the tow bar cannot be correctly placed in the ready position, then it must not be used.

CAUTION

When in the ready position, the key cannot be removed from the handwheel lock.

Fitting the tow bar

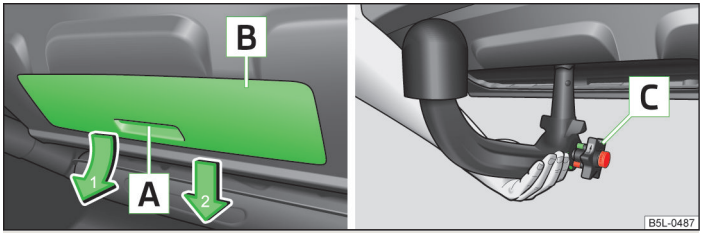

Fig. 128 **Removing the cap on the rear bumper/inserting the tow bar**

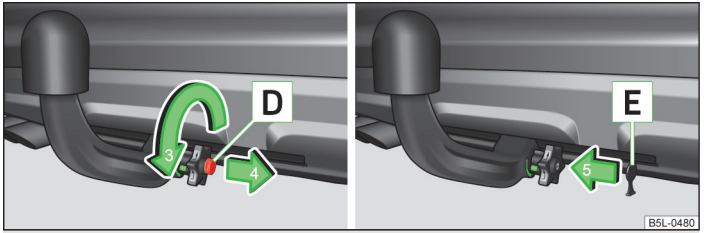

Fig. 129 **Locking the lock and removing the the key/replacing the lock cap**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 150.

› Grip the cap on the rear bumper B» Fig. 128 at the handle A, release in the direction of the arrow **1** and remove in the direction of the arrow **2**.
› Remove the cover for the mounting recess 3 » Fig. 125 on page 150 in a downwards direction.
› Put the tow bar in the ready position » page 151.
› Grip the tow bar **from underneath** » Fig. 128 and insert into the mounting recess until you hear it click into place » !.

The handwheel C» Fig. 128 returns **automatically** and rests on the tow bar » !.

› Lock the handwheel lock by turning the key D» Fig. 129 to the left in the direction of the arrow **3** to the stop, and remove the key in the direction of the arrow **4**.
› Put the cap E onto the handwheel lock in the direction of the arrow **5**» !.
› Check that the tow bar is securely attached » page 153.

WARNING

- When attaching the tow bar, do not hold the handwheel by hand - risk of injuring fingers!
- When removing the cover for the mounting recess, watch out for your hand coming into contact with the opening of the bumper - risk of injuring hand!
- After fitting the tow bar, always secure the lock and remove the key.
- The tow bar must not be operated with the key inserted.
- If the tow bar is not in the ready position, it cannot be fitted in the mounting recess.

CAUTION

- When removing the cover on the rear bumper, please note that there is a risk of paint damage to the bumper or cover.
- After removing the key, **always** replace the cover on the handwheel lock – risk of lock getting dirty.

Note

Store the cover for the rear bumper and the cover for the mounting recess in a suitable location in the boot after removal.

Checking proper attachment

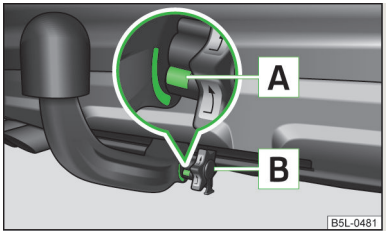

Fig. 130
Check that the tow bar is attached properly

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 150.

Check that the tow bar is fitted properly before each use.

Check the following points.

- ✓ The tow bar does not come out of the mounting recess even after heavy "shaking".
- ✓ The green marking A » Fig. 130 on the handwheel is located in the green box on the tow bar.
- ✓ The handwheel lies flush with the tow bar - there is no gap.
- ✓ The cover B is attached to the locked handwheel lock.

! WARNING

Do not use the towing device unless the tow bar has been properly locked!

Removing the tow bar

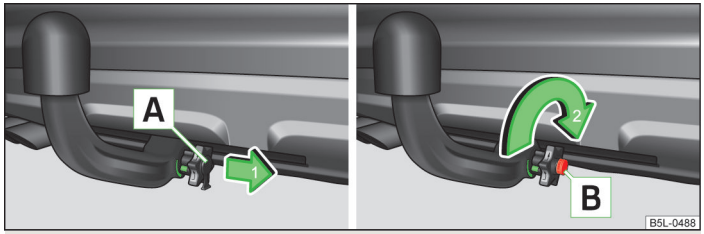

Fig. 131 **Removing the lock cover/releasing the lock**

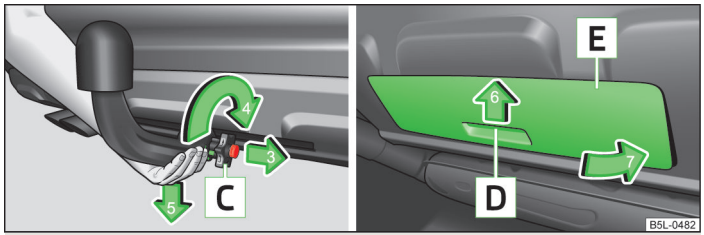

Fig. 132 **Removing the two bar/placing the cover on the rear bumper**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 150.

- › Remover the cover A from the handwheel lock in the direction of the arrow **1**» Fig. 131.
- › Release the handwheel lock by turning the key B to the right in the direction of the arrow **2** to the stop.
- › Grip the tow bar from underneath and use your other hand to pull the handwheel C» Fig. 132 in the direction of the arrow **3**.
- › Turn the handwheel in the direction of the arrow **4** to the stop, and hold in this position.
- › Remove the tow bar from the mounting recess downwards and in the direction of the arrow **5**.

At the same time, the tow bar latches into the ready position and is therefore ready to be re-inserted into the mounting recess » !.

› Attach the cover for the mounting recess 3 » Fig. 125 on page 150.
› Grip the cover on the rear bumper E » Fig. 132 at the handle D and position in the direction of the arrow **6** on the "checkmark" underneath the upper edge of the bumper.
› Push this cover onto the lower edge and onto the two sides in the direction of the arrow **7**.

WARNING

- Never allow the tow bar to remain unsecured in the boot. This could cause damage on sudden braking, and could put the safety of the occupants at risk.
- Never remove the tow bar while the trailer is still coupled.

CAUTION

- If the handwheel is not turned all the way to the stop, then it will return to its initial position when the tow bar is removed, and will rest on the tow bar and not engage into the ready position. The tow bar will then need to be brought into this position before the next time it is fitted.
- The mounting recess must be closed with the cover following removal. This prevents foreign bodies from getting into the mounting recess.

Note

- We recommend putting the protective cover onto the ball head before removing the tow bar.
- Clean any dirt from the tow bar before stowing it away in the box with the vehicle tool kit.

Use and care

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 150.

Close the mounting recess with the cover to prevent any dirt from getting in.

Always check the tow bar before hitching a trailer. Apply suitable grease where necessary.

Use the protective cover when stowing away the tow bar, in order to stop the boot from getting dirty.

In the event of dirt, clean the surfaces of the mounting recess and treat with a suitable preservative.

CAUTION

Apply grease to the upper part of the mounting recess. Make sure you do not remove any grease.

Trailer

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Loading a trailer 154
Driving with a trailer 155
Trailer stabilisation 156
Anti-theft alarm system 157

WARNING

Always drive particularly carefully with the trailer.

Loading a trailer

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 154.

The vehicle/trailer combination must be balanced, whereby the maximum permissible drawbar load must be utilised. If the drawbar load is too low, it jeopardises the performance of the vehicle/trailer combination.

Distribution of the load
Distribute the load in the trailer in such a way that heavy items are located as close to the axle as possible. Secure the items from slipping.

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Maintain a particularly low speed if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

Tyre pressure
Correct the tyre inflation pressure on your vehicle for a "full load" » page 206, *Service life of tyres*.

Trailer load
The permissible trailer load must not be exceeded under any circumstances » page 232, *Technical data*.

The trailer loads specified apply only to **altitudes** up to 1 000 metres above mean sea level.

The engine output falls as altitude increases, as does the vehicle's climbing power. Therefore, for every additional 1000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10%.

The towed weight is made up of the actual weights of the loaded towing vehicle and the loaded trailer.

The trailer and drawbar load information on the type plate of the towing device is merely a test value for the towing device. The vehicle-specific values are detailed in the vehicle documents.

WARNING

- Do not exceed the maximum permissible axle and drawbar load and the maximum permissible total or towed weight of the vehicle and the trailer – risk of accident and serious injury.
- Slipping loads can significantly impair the stability and safety of the vehicle/trailer combination – risk of accident and serious injury.

Driving with a trailer

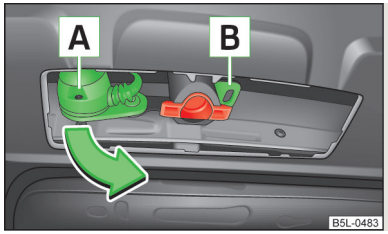

Fig. 133
Swivel out the 13-pin power socket

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 154.

Before the journey
› Before connecting the vehicle to the trailer, swivel out the 13-pin power socket A » Fig. 133 in the direction of the arrow.
› Remove the protective cover 5 » Fig. 125 on page 150 upwards before connecting the trailer to the vehicle.

After the journey
› Swivel the 13-pin power socket A » Fig. 133 back in in the opposite direction to the arrow.
› Place the protective cover 5 » Fig. 125 on page 150 onto the tow bar.

Safety eyelet
The purpose of the safety eyelet B » Fig. 133 is to attach the breakaway cable of the trailer.

When attaching the breakaway cable to the safety eyelet, **it must sag** freely against the vehicle in all trailer positions (sharp bends, in reverse etc.).

Exterior mirrors
You have to have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer with the standard rear-view mirrors. The national legal requirements must be observed.

Headlights
The front of the vehicle may lift up when a trailer is being towed and the headlights may dazzle other road users.

Adjust the headlights using the headlight beam control » page 42, *Headlight beam adjustment*.

Driving speed
For safety reasons, do not drive faster than 80 km/h when towing a trailer.

Immediately reduce your speed as soon as even the slightest swaying of the trailer is detected. Never attempt to stop the trailer from "swaying" by accelerating.

Brakes
Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.

On downhill sections shift down a gear in good time to also use the engine as a brake.

Engine overheating
If the needle for the coolant temperature gauge moves into the right-hand area or the red area of the scale, the speed must be reduced immediately.

Stop and switch off the engine if the indicator light in the instrument cluster starts to flash. Wait a few minutes and check the level of coolant » page 199, *Checking the level*.

The following guidelines must be observed » page 20, *Coolant temperature/ coolant level*.

The coolant temperature can be reduced by switching on the heating.

WARNING

- Never use the safety eyelet for towing!
- Adapt your speed to the conditions of the road surface and to the traffic situation.
- Improper or incorrectly connected electric cables can energise the trailer and cause functional faults to the vehicle's entire electrical system as well as accidents and severe injuries.
- Work on the electrical system must only be carried out by specialist garages.
- Never directly connect the trailer's electrical system with the electrical connections for the tail lights or other current sources.

Note

- After coupling the trailer and connecting the power socket, check that the rear lights on the trailer are working correctly.
- If there is an error in the trailer lighting, check the fuses in the fuse box in the dash panel » page 226.
- Contact between the breakaway cable and the safety eyelet can result in mechanical wear on the surface protection of the eyelet. Such wear does not impair the functioning of the safety eyelet and does not constitute a fault. It is excluded from the warranty coverage.
- If you tow a trailer frequently, you should also have your vehicle inspected between service intervals.
- The handbrake on the towing vehicle must be applied when coupling and uncoupling the trailer.

Trailer stabilisation

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 154.

The trailer stabilisation is an extension of the stabilisation control that works in conjunction with the counter-steering assistance to reduce the amount the trailer "sways".

After turning on the ignition, the ESC indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up for about 2 seconds longer than the ABS indicator light.

Prerequisites for stabilising the trailer.

- ✓ The towing device is assembled or retrofitted ex works.
- ✓ The ESC is active. The warning light or in the instrument cluster **is not illuminated**.
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket.
- ✓ The speed is higher than approx. 60 km/h.
- ✓ The trailer has a rigid drawbar.
- ✓ The ESC works for both braked and unbraked trailers.

WARNING

The increased safety offered by the trailer stabilisation must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise.

CAUTION

- The trailer stabilisation need not be able to correctly detect all of driving situations.
- Trailers that sway slightly are not always detected by the trailer stabilisation and thus are not stabilised accordingly.
- Release the pressure on the accelerator pedal if the system is being regulated.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving/braking manoeuvres.

Anti-theft alarm system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 154.

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm is activated as soon as the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm system before a trailer is coupled or uncoupled » page 33.

Conditions for including a trailer in the anti-theft alarm system.

✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with an anti-theft alarm system and towing device.
✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket.
✓ The electrical system of the vehicle and trailer is functional.
✓ The vehicle is locked with the vehicle key and the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

Note

For technical reasons, trailers with rear LED lights cannot be connected to the anti-theft alarm system.

Safety

Passive Safety

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Safety equipment ____ 158
Before setting off ____ 158
What influences the driving safety? ____ 159

In this section you will find important information, tips and notes on the subject of passive safety in your vehicle.

We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, child seats and safety of children.

WARNING

- This chapter contains important information on how to use the vehicle for the driver and his occupants.
- You can find further information on safety concerning you and those travelling with you in the following chapters of this owner's manual.
- The complete on-board literature should always be in the vehicle. This applies in particular, if you rent out or sell the vehicle.

Safety equipment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 158.

The following list contains only part of the safety equipment in your vehicle.

› Three-point seat belts for all the seats.
› Belt force limiters for the front seats.
› Belt tensioners for the front seats.
› Seat belt height adjusters for the front seats.
› Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger.
› Driver's knee airbag.
› Front side airbags.
› Rear side airbags.
› Head airbags.
› Anchoring points for child seats using the ISOFIX system.
› Anchoring points for child seats using the TOP TETHER system.
› Head restraints adjustable for height.
› Adjustable steering column.

The specified safety equipment works together, in order to optimally protect you and those travelling with you in accident situations.

The safety equipment does not protect you or the people travelling with you, if you or your occupants adopt an incorrect seated position or the equipment is not correctly adjusted or used.

If the seat belt is not fastened properly, this may result in injuries if an airbag is activated in the event of an accident.

Before setting off

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 158.

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off.

› Ensure that the lighting and the turn signal system are functioning properly.
› Check the tyre inflation pressure.
› Ensure that all of the windows offer good visibility to the outside.
› Secure all items of luggage » page 66, *Boot*.
› Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedals.
› Adjust the mirrors, the front seat and head restraint to your body size.
› Advise your passengers to adjust the head restraints to their body size.
› Protect children in suitable child seats with correctly fastened seat belts » page 175, *Transporting children safely*.
› Adopt the correct seated position » page 159, *Correct seated position*. Tell your passengers to assume the correct seated position.
› Correctly fasten the seat belt. Also inform passengers to fasten the seat belt correctly » page 162, *Using seat belts*.

What influences the driving safety?

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 158.

The driver is fully responsible for himself and his occupants. If your driving safety is effected, you place yourself and the oncoming traffic at risk.

The following guidelines must therefore be observed.

› Do not become distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, e.g. by your passengers or mobile phone calls.
› Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, e.g. due to medication, alcohol or drugs.
› Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
› Always adjust the driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.
› Take regular breaks on long journeys – at least every two hours.

Correct seated position

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Correct seated position for the driver ____ 160
Correct seated position for the front passenger ____ 160
Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats ____ 160
Examples of incorrect seated positions ____ 160

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for the correct seated position.
- The front seats and head restraints must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers.
- If the occupant adopts an incorrect seated position, he is exposed to life-threatening injuries, in case he is hit by a deployed airbag.
- If the occupants on the rear seats are not sitting upright, the risk of injury is increased due to incorrect routing of the seat belt.
- The seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, as this will impair the function of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!

WARNING

As the **driver**, observe the following instructions:
- Always assume the correct seated position before setting off and do not change this position while driving. Also advise your passengers to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this position while the car is moving.
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel, and a distance of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dash panel at the height of the knee airbag. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position. Never hold the steering wheel in the 12 o'clock position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle or inner edge of the steering wheel). In such cases, you could severely injure the arms, hands and head when the driver airbag is deployed.
- Ensure that there are no objects in the driver's footwell, as these may get caught in the pedal apparatus when driving or braking. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or acceleration pedals.

WARNING

As the **front passenger**, observe the following instructions.
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!

Correct seated position for the driver

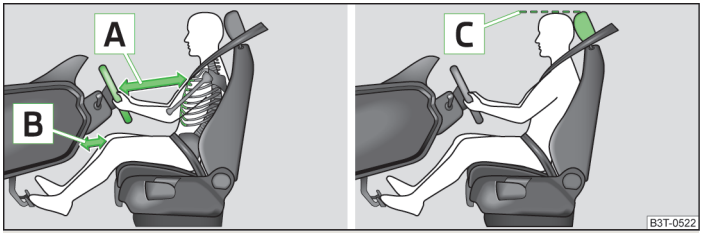

Fig. 134 **Correct seated position for the driver/correct head restraint position**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 159.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following setting.

› Position the steering wheel so that there is a gap of at least 25 cm between the steering wheel and the chest A » Fig. 134, and that the distance between the legs and the dash panel at the height of the knee airbag is at least 10 cm B.
› Adjust the driver's seat in the forward/back direction so that the pedals can be fully depressed with slightly bent legs.
› Adjust the seat backrest so that the highest point of the steering wheel can be reached with your arms at a slight angle.
› Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head C.
› Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 162, *Using seat belts*.

Manual driver seat adjustment » page 59.

Electrical driver seat adjustment » page 60.

Correct seated position for the front passenger

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 159.

For the safety of the front passenger and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following setting.

› Position the front passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel so that the airbag offers the greatest possible safety if it is deployed.
› Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head C » Fig. 134 on page 160.
› Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 162.

In exceptional cases the front passenger airbag can be deactivated » page 172, *Deactivating airbags*.

Manual front passenger adjustment » page 59.

Electrical front passenger seat adjustment » page 60.

Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 159.

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, the occupants on the rear seats must observe the following.

› Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of the head C » Fig. 134 on page 160.
› Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 162, *Using seat belts*.
› Use a suitable child restraint system if transporting children in the vehicle » page 175, *Transporting children safely*.

Examples of incorrect seated positions

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 159.

Maximum seat belt protection is only achieved if seat belts are fastened correctly.

Incorrect seated positions considerably reduce the protective functions of the seat belts and therefore increase the risk of injury due to an incorrect routing of the seat belt.

The driver is fully responsible for himself and passengers, especially children. Never allow a passenger to adopt an incorrect seated position when the car is moving.

The following list contains instructions which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death. This list is not complete, however we would like you to familiarise yourself with this subject.

Observe the following instructions while driving.
- Do not stand up.
- Do not stand on the seats.
- Do not kneel on the seats.
- Do not tilt the seat backrest too far back.
- Do not lean against the dash panel.
- Do not lie on the rear seats.
- Do not sit only on the front part of the seat.
- Do not sit facing to the side.
- Do not lean out of the window.
- Do not put your feet out of the window.
- Do not put your feet on the dash panel.
- Do not put your feet on the seat cushion.
- Do not allow anybody to travel in the footwell.
- Do not drive without fastening your seat belt.
- Do not delay in the luggage compartment.

Seat belts

Using seat belts

Introduction



Fig. 135
Driver wearing seat belt

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The physical principle of a frontal collision ____ 163
Fastening and unfastening seat belts ____ 164
Seat belt height adjuster on the front seats ____ 165
Seat belt for the middle rear seat ____ 165

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

Correctly fastened seat belts hold occupants of the car in the correct seated position » Fig. 135.

The seat belts reduce the kinetic energy (energy of motion) to a considerable extent. They also prevent uncontrolled movements which, in turn, may well result in severe injuries.

Occupants of a vehicle who have correctly fastened their seat belts have the major benefit of the fact that the kinetic energy is absorbed as effectively as possible by the belts.

The structure of the front end of the vehicle and other passive safety measures, such as the airbag system, also contribute to the kinetic energy being reduced as effectively as possible. The energy produced is thus absorbed and there is less risk of injury.

Particular safety aspects must be observed when transporting children in the vehicle » page 175.

! WARNING

- Fasten your seat belt before each journey - even when driving in town! This also applies to the passengers seated at the rear – risk of injury!
- Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child » page 164, *Fastening and unfastening seat belts*.
- Maximum seat belt protection is only achieved if you are correctly seated » page 159, *Correct seated position*.
- The seat backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.

! WARNING

Observe the following instructions for the correct routing of the seat belt.
- Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is roughly positioned across the middle of your shoulder - on no account across your neck.
- A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then suddenly held firm by the belt.
- The belt webbing must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. spectacles, ball-point pens, bunches of keys etc.). Such objects can cause injury.

! WARNING

Observe the following instructions for handling the seat belts.
- The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted, or chafe against any sharp edges.
- Make sure you do not catch the seat belt in the door when closing it.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for the proper use of the seat belts.
- Never use one seat belt to secure two persons (including children). The seatbelt must not be placed over a child who is sitting on the lap of another passenger.
- The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.
- The slot of the belt tongue must not be blocked, otherwise the belt tongue will not lock in place properly.
- Many layers of clothing and loose clothing (e. g. a winter coat over a jacket) do not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.
- It is prohibited to use clamps or other objects to adjust seat belts (e. g. for shortening the belts for smaller persons).
- The seat belts for the rear seats can only fulfil their function reliably when the seat backrests are correctly locked into position » page 64.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for proper maintenance of the seat belts.
- The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belt webbing may impair proper operation of the inertia reel » page 187, *Seat belts*.
- The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If any damage to the seat belts, seat belt connections, inertia reel or the lock is detected, the relevant seat belt must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- Damaged seat belts which have been subjected to stress in an accident and were therefore stretched, must be replaced – this is best done by a specialist garage. The anchorage points of the belts must also be inspected. The anchorage points for the belts should also be checked.

Note

The national legal requirements must be observed when using seat belts.

The physical principle of a frontal collision

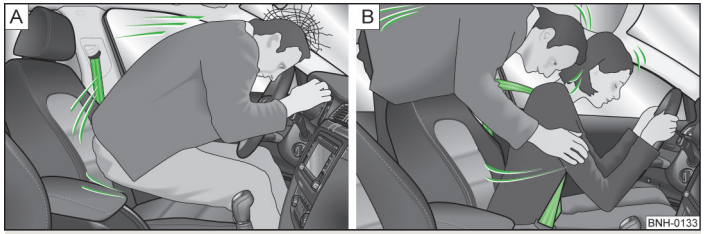

Fig. 136 **Driver without a fastened seat belt/rear passenger without a fastened seat belt**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 162.

Motion energy, so-called kinetic energy, is produced as soon as the vehicle is moving, both for the vehicle and its occupants.

The magnitude of this kinetic energy depends essentially on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and on the weight of the vehicle including the occupants. The greater the speed and weight increase, the greater the amount of energy which has to be absorbed in the event of an accident.

The speed of the vehicle is the most important factor. Doubling the speed of the vehicle from 25 km/h up to 50 km/hour increases the kinetic energy four times.

The idea that it is possible to support your body with your hands in a minor accident is incorrect. Even in a collision at only a low speed, the forces acting on the body are such that it is no longer possible to support your body.

Even if you only drive at a speed of 30-50 km/h, the forces that your body is exposed to in the event of an accident can exceed a metric ton (1000 kg).

For example, a person's weight of 80 kg "increases" to 4.8 tons (4800 kg) at 50 km/h.

In the event of a frontal collision, occupants of the car not wearing a seat belt, are thrown forward and strike in an uncontrolled way parts of the interior of the car, such as steering wheel, dash panel or windscreen » Fig. 136 - A. In certain circumstances you could even be thrown out of the vehicle, which could cause life threatening or even fatal injuries.

It is also important that rear passengers fasten their seat belts, as they could otherwise be thrown through the vehicle in an uncontrolled manner in the event of an accident.

A rear seat passenger who has not fastened the seat belt is a danger not only to himself but also for those seated at the front » Fig. 136 - B.

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

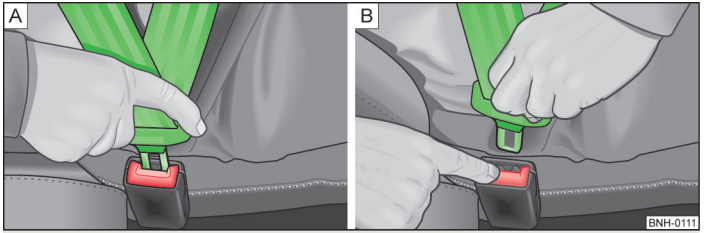

Fig. 137 **Fastening/unfastening the seat belt**

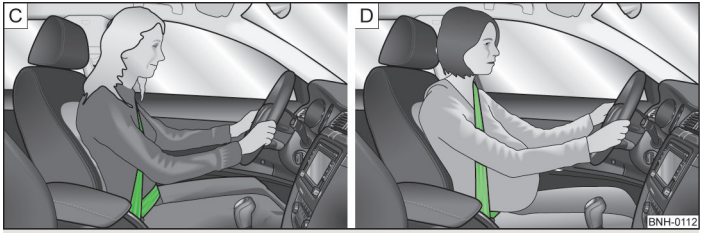

Fig. 138 **Routing of belt webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt/Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 162.

Fasten

› Correctly adjust the front seat and head restraint before fastening the seat belt » page 159.
› Use the lock tongue to slowly pull the webbing over your chest and pelvis.
› Insert the lock tongue into the belt buckle for the seat until audibly it clicks into place » Fig. 137 - A.
› Pull on the belt to check that it has engaged correctly in the lock.

A plastic knob in the belt webbing holds the belt tongue in a position which is easy to get hold of.

It is important that the belt is properly routed to ensure seat belts offer the maximum protection.

The shoulder part of the seat belt must never run across the neck but must roughly run over the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. The lap part of the belt must run across the pelvis, must not be positioned across the stomach and must always fit snugly » Fig. 138 - C.

Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child.

On expectant mothers, the lap part of the belt must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen » Fig. 138 - D.

Release

Release the seat belt only when the vehicle is stationary.

› Press the red button in the belt buckle » Fig. 137 - B, the lock tongue pops out.
› Manually guide the belt back so that it is easier to fully roll up the webbing, the seat belt does not twist.

! CAUTION

When releasing the seatbelt ensure that the tongue of the lock does not damage the door trim or other parts of the interior.

Seat belt height adjuster on the front seats

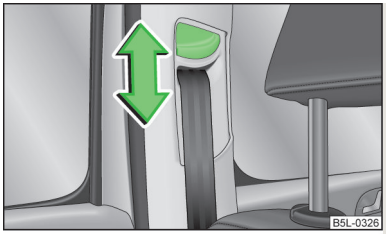

Fig. 139
Front seat: Seat belt height adjuster

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 162.

The seat belt height adjuster makes it possible to adjust the routing of the front seat belts in the area of the shoulder to the body size.

› Press the height adjuster and move up or down in the desired direction » Fig. 139.
› Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place.

Seat belt for the middle rear seat

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 162.

The seat belt for the rear middle seat is anchored in the area of the boot on the left side of the headliner.

Fasten

› Pull the belt with both lock tongues out of the headliner mount.
› Insert the lock tongue at the end of the belt into the belt buckle on the left side until it is heard to lock in place.
› Pull the second lock tongue, which is moveable on the seat belt, over the chest and insert it into the belt buckle on the right side until it is heard to lock in place.
› Pull on the seat belt to check that both lock tongues are securely engaged in the locks.

The belt tongues for the rear middle seat are shaped differently so that they only fit into the correct belt buckle. If you are not able to insert a lock tongue into the wrong belt lock you probably tried to put it into the wrong buckle.

Release

› Take off the safety belt in the reverse order to how you fasten it.
› Guide the belt back by hand so that the webbing rolls up easily, the seat belt is not twisted and the trim panel is not damaged.

! WARNING

- After releasing the seat belt hold it tight and let it slowly reel up until both lock tongues lock into the headliner mount and are secured with a magnet - there is a risk of injury.
- Never unlock both lock tongues simultaneously.

Inertia reels and belt tensioners

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Inertia reels 165
Belt tensioners 166

Inertia reels

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 165.

Each seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel.

When pulling slowly on the seat belt, the belt can move freely. When pulling sharply on the seat belt, the movement is locked by the inertia reel.

The belts also lock when full braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

WARNING

If the seat belt does not lock when pulling sharply on it, have it inspected immediately by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 165.

Safety for the driver and front passenger **wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front three-point seat belts.

The three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal collision of a certain severity. The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.

The fastened three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal or side collision of a certain severity.

Belt tensioners are not activated in the event of minor frontal collisions, side and rear-end collisions, in the case of a rollover and also not in accidents in which no major forces are produced from the front.

WARNING

- Any work on the belt tensioner system including removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- The protective function of the system is only adequate for a single accident. If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.

Note

- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.
- When disposing of the vehicle or parts of the belt tensioner system, it is important to comply with national legal requirements. ŠKODA service partners are familiar with these regulations and will be able to provide you with detailed information.

Airbag system

Description of the airbag system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

System description 167
Airbag deployment 167

WARNING

▪ An airbag can only offer you optimal protection in combination with a fastened seat belt.
▪ The airbag is not a substitute for the seat belt, but instead forms part of the complete passive vehicle safety concept.
▪ To ensure passengers are protected with the greatest possible effect when the airbag is deployed, the front seats must be correctly adjusted to match the body size » page 159, *Correct seated position*.
▪ If you do not fasten the seat belts when driving, lean too far forward or adopt an incorrect seated position, you are exposing yourself to increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for handling the airbag system.
▪ If there is a fault, the airbag system must be checked by a specialist garage immediately. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.
▪ No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.
▪ Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
▪ Never make any changes to the front bumper or bodywork.
▪ It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
▪ The protective function of the airbag system is sufficient for only one accident. The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed.

System description

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 167.

The functional status of the airbag system is indicated by the indicator light in the instrument cluster » page 24.

When the airbags are deployed, they fill with gas and inflate.

A grey white or red, non-harmful gas is released when the airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the airbag system consists of the following modules.
› Electronic control unit.
› Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger » page 169.
› Driver's knee airbag » page 170.
› Side airbags » page 170.
› Head airbags » page 171.
› Airbag warning light in the instrument cluster » page 24.
› Key switch for the front passenger airbag » page 173.
› Warning light for the front passenger airbag deactivation/activation in the middle of the dash panel » page 173.

Note

▪ The airbag system needs no maintenance during its working life.
▪ If you sell your vehicle, provide the complete vehicle documentation to the new owner. Please note that the information relating to the possibility of deactivating the front passenger airbag must be included!
▪ When disposing of vehicle or parts of the airbag system, it is important to comply with the national legal requirements.

Airbag deployment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 167.

The airbags inflate in fractions of a second and at a high speed in order to be able to offer additional protection in the event of an accident.

The airbag system is only functional when the ignition is switched on.

In certain accident situations, the several airbags may be deployed simultaneously.

The airbags **are not deployed** in the case of **minor** frontal and side collisions, rear-end collisions, tilting of the vehicle and vehicle rollover.

Deployment factors
It is not possible to generally determine which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation. An important role is played by factors such as the type of object that the vehicle hits (hard/soft), the impact angle, vehicle speed etc.

A decisive factor for the deployment of the airbags is the deceleration which occurs. The control unit analyses the nature of the collision and activates the relevant restraint system.

If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured during the collision remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe frontal collision.
› Driver's front airbag.
› Front passenger airbag.
› Driver's knee airbag.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe side collision.
› Front side airbag on the side of the accident.
› Rear side airbag on the side of the accident.
› Head airbags on the side of the accident.

In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed:
› the interior lighting comes on (if the switch for the interior light is in the door contact position),
› the hazard warning light is switched on;
› all the doors are unlocked;
› the fuel supply to the engine is interrupted.

Airbag overview

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front airbags 169
Driver's knee airbag 170
Side airbags 170
Head airbags 171

Front airbags

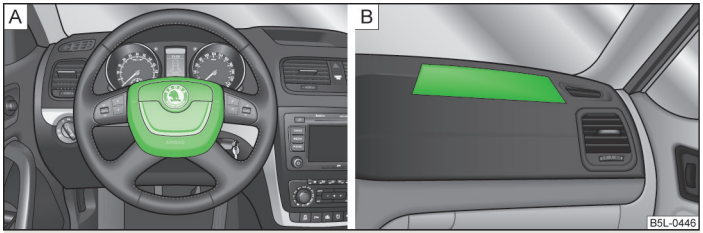

Fig. 140 **Driver's airbag in the steering wheel/front passenger airbag in the dash panel**

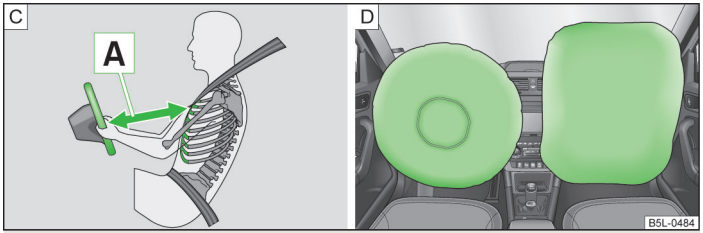

Fig. 141 **Safe distance to steering wheel/inflated airbags**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 168.

In the event of a severe frontal collision, the front airbag system offers additional protection for the head and chest area of the driver and front passenger.

The front airbag for the driver is housed in the steering wheel » Fig. 140 - A.

The front airbag for the front seat passenger is located in the dash panel above the stowage compartment B - » Fig. 140.

When the airbags are deployed, they inflate in front of the driver and front passenger » Fig. 141 - D. The forward movement of the driver and of the front passenger is cushioned when they make contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

WARNING

Correct seated position
- For the driver and front passenger, it is important to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel or dashboard A » Fig. 141. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.
- The airbag develops enormous forces when triggered, which can lead to injuries if the sitting position or seated position is not correct.
- There must not by any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the front seated occupants and the deployment area of the airbag.

WARNING

Front airbag and transporting children
- Never transport children on the front seat of a vehicle without using a proper restraint system. If airbags are deployed in the event of an accident, the child might suffer severe or even fatal injuries!
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 172, *Deactivating airbags*. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, pay attention to any relevant national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.

WARNING

General
- The steering wheel and the surface of the airbag module in the dash panel on the passenger side must not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. These parts should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. No objects such as cup holders, mobile phone mounts, etc. must be attached to the covers of the airbag modules or be located within their immediate vicinity.
- Never place objects on the surface of the front passenger airbag module in the dash panel.

Driver's knee airbag

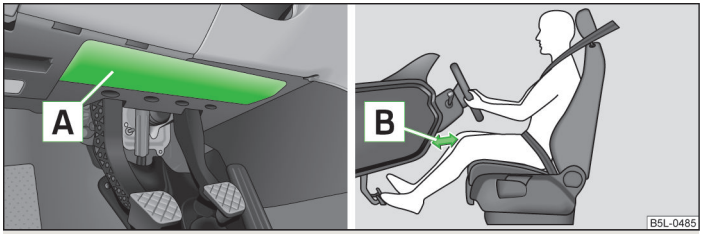

Fig. 142 **Driver's knee airbag below the steering column**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 168.

The driver's knee airbag offers adequate protection for the driver's legs.

The driver's knee airbag A is located in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column » Fig. 142.

In the event of a severe frontal collision, the driver's knee airbag and front airbags are deployed.

The forward movement of the body is cushioned when it makes contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to the legs of the driver is thus reduced.

WARNING

- Adjust the driver's seat in a forward/back direction so that there is a gap of at least 10 cm between the legs B and the dash panel in the vicinity of the knee airbag » Fig. 142. If it is not possible to meet this requirement due to your body size, visit a specialist garage.
- The surface of the airbag module in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. This part should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. No objects must be attached to the cover of the airbag module or located within the immediate vicinity.
- Do not attach any bulky and heavy objects (bunch of keys etc.) to the ignition key. These can be ejected by the knee airbag when it is deployed and can cause injuries.

Side airbags

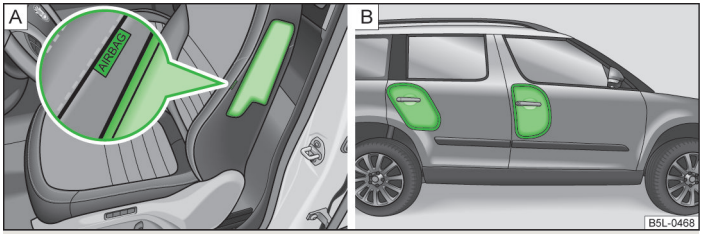

Fig. 143 **Location of the side airbag in the driver's seat/gas-filled side airbags**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 168.

In the event of severe side collisions, the side airbag system provides additional protection for the upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) of passengers in the vehicle.

The front side airbags are housed in the upholstery of the seat backrests of the front seats » Fig. 143 - A.

The rear side airbags are located between the entrance area and the seat backrest.

When the side airbags » Fig. 143 - B are deployed, the head airbag and belt tensioner are also automatically deployed on the relevant side.

The load of the occupants is cushioned when plunging into the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to the entire upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) is reduced on the side facing the door.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for the correct seated position.
- Your head should never be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag. You might suffer severe injuries in the event of an accident. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat » page 176, *Child safety and side airbag*.
- There must not be any further persons, animals as well as objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. No accessories, such as cup holders, should be attached to the doors.
- If children adopt an incorrect seated position when travelling, they may be exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. This can result in serious injuries » page 175, *Child seat*.

WARNING

The airbag control unit operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Resulting damage can have a negative impact on the function of the airbag system. Any work on the front doors and door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage. The following instructions must be observed.
- Never drive with inner door panels removed.
- Never drive if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the resulting openings have not been properly sealed.
- Never drive if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, unless the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.
- Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts have been installed in the inner door panels.
- Always have work carried out by a ŠKODA service partner or a professional specialist garage.

WARNING

- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Ensure that there are no excessive forces, such as violent knocks, kicks etc., impact on the backrests of the seats otherwise the system may be damaged. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!
- Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of the type expressly authorized by ŠKODA. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.
- Any damage to the original seat covers in the area of the side airbag module must be repaired immediately by a specialist garage.
- The airbag modules in the front seats must not display any damage, cracks or deep scratches. It is not permissible to use force in order to open the modules.

Head airbags

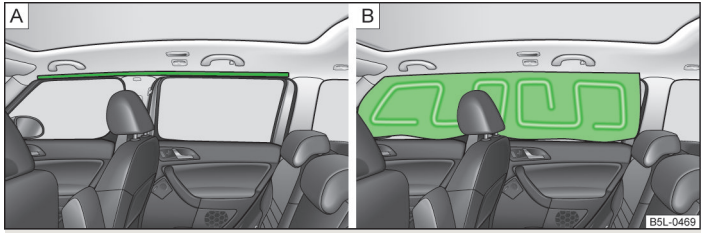

Fig. 144 **Location of the head airbag/gas-filled head airbag**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 168.

In the event of a severe side collision, the head airbag system offers additional protection for the head and neck area of passengers.

The head airbags are positioned above the doors on both sides in the interior of the car » Fig. 144 - A.

In the event of a **side collision** the head airbag is deployed together with the relevant side airbag and the front seat belt tensioner on the side of the car on which the accident occurs.

When deployed, the airbag covers the windows of the front and rear doors, as well as the door pillar » Fig. 144 - B.

Any impact of the head against parts of the interior or objects outside of the car, is cushioned by the inflated head airbag. The reduction in any impact to the head and the resultant minimizing of any movements of the head additionally reduce the risk of injuries to the neck area.

The head airbag also offers additional protection in the case of an offset impact by covering the front door pillar.

WARNING

General
- There must not be any objects in the deployment area of the head airbags which might prevent the airbags from inflating properly.
- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing. Additionally, clothes hangers must not be used to hang up items of clothing.
- The installation of impermissible accessories in the vicinity of the head airbags can considerably impair the protection offered by the head airbag in the event of it being deployed. When the deployed head airbag is inflated, parts of the accessories fitted could be thrown into the interior of the car and injure the occupants » page 187.
- The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects, such as ball-point pens, etc. are attached to them. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.
- There must no other persons (e.g. children) or animals between the passenger and the deployment area of the head airbag. In addition, none of the occupants should lean their head out of the window when driving, or extend their arms and hands out of the window.

WARNING

The airbag control unit operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Resulting damage can have a negative impact on the function of the airbag system. Any work on the front doors and door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage. The following instructions must be observed.
- Never drive with inner door panels removed.
- Never drive if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the resulting openings have not been properly sealed.
- Never drive if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, unless the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.
- Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts have been installed in the inner door panels.
- Always have work carried out by a ŠKODA service partner or a professional specialist garage.

Deactivating airbags

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Deactivating airbags 172
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 173

Deactivating airbags

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 172.

Deactivating an airbag should be considered in cases such as the ones below.
- If using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat (due to different legal regulations, the airbag must be deactivated if using a forwards-facing child seat in some countries) » page 175, *Transporting children safely*.
- If it is not possible to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between the middle of the steering wheel and chest, despite the driver's seat being correctly adjusted.

› If special attachments are required in the area of the steering wheel because of a physical disability.
› If different seats have been fitted (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags).

The front passenger airbag can be switched off with the key-operated switch » page 173, *Deactivating the front passenger airbag*.

We recommend that you ask a ŠKODA service partner to deactivate any other airbags.

Monitoring the airbag system
The operational capability of the airbag system is monitored electronically, including when one of the airbags is switched off.

Airbag deactivated using diagnostic equipment
› The warning light lights up for approximately 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes again for approximately 12 seconds.

Front passenger airbag deactivated using the key switch in the storage compartment
› The warning light lights up for approximately 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on.
› The OFF warning light 3 » Fig. 145 on page 173 lights up after the ignition is switched on.

Note

▪ The national regulations for switching off airbags must be observed.
▪ A ŠKODA service partner will be able to inform you which, if any, of your vehicle's airbags can or must be deactivated.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag



Fig. 145 **Key switch for front passenger airbag/warning light for front passenger airbag activation/deactivation**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 172.

Only the front passenger airbag is deactivated with the key switch.

Switching off
› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch into position 2 » Fig. 145 **OFF**.
› Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Check that the OFF warning light in the PASSENGER AIR BAG ON OFF text 3 lights up after the ignition is switched on.

Switching on
› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch into position 1 » Fig. 145 **ON**.
› Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Check that the ON warning light in the PASSENGER AIR BAG ON OFF text 3 lights up after the ignition is switched on.

The ON warning light goes out 65 seconds after the key switch status has changed or after the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

- The driver is responsible for whether the airbag is switched on or switched off.
- Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for deactivating the airbag.
- If the ON OFF warning light is flashing, the front passenger airbag will not be deployed in an accident. Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.

Transporting children safely

Child seat

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat ____ 176
Child safety and side airbag ____ 176
Classification of child seats ____ 177
Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt ____ 177

Children are generally safer on the rear seats than on the front passenger seat.

In contrast to adults, the muscles and bone structure of children are not yet fully developed. Thus children are exposed to increased risk of injury.

Children should be transported in accordance with the relevant statutory provisions.

Child seats complying with the ECE-R 44 standard must be used. ECE-R stands for: Economic Commission for Europe - Regulation.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard are identified with a test mark that cannot be removed: a large E within a circle with the test number below.

WARNING

- The national legal requirements must be observed when using child seats.
- One should never carry children, and also not babies! - on one's lap.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Certain outside climatic conditions can cause life-threatening temperatures in the vehicle.
- The child must be secured in the vehicle during the entire journey! Otherwise, the child would be thrown through the vehicle in the event of an accident, causing fatal injuries to both the child and other occupants.

WARNING (Continued)

- Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front passenger seat as they can suffer severe, or even fatal injuries if the airbag system is deployed!
- Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding the correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are running properly. One should also ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat. Further information » page 176, *Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat*.

CAUTION

- When installing a child seat in which the child faces forward, adjust the head restraints so that they are as high as possible.
- If the head restraints still prevent the child seat from being installed, even in the highest position, you will need to remove them » page 63. After removing the child seat, re-install the head restraints.

Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles. They meet the ECE-R 44 standard.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat

Never use a backwards-facing child restraint system on a seat that is protected by an active airbag installed in front of it. This could cause the child severe injury or even death.

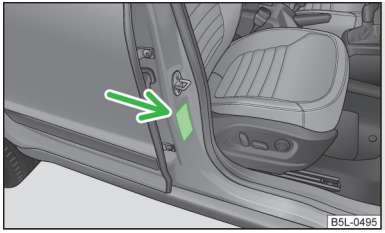

Fig. 146
Sticker on the B column on the front passenger side.

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 175.

For safety reasons, we recommend that you install child seats on the rear seats whenever possible.

The following instructions must be followed when using a child seat on the front passenger seat.

› The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat » !.
› If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is as vertical, so as to ensure secure contact between the passenger seat backrest and the back of the child seat.
› If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child seat behind it.
› With child safety seats in groups 2 or 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.
› Set the height-adjustable front passenger seat as high up as possible.
› Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.
› Place and fasten the child seat on the seat and the child in the child seat according to the specifications in the manufacturer's user manual of the child seat .

! WARNING

- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 172, *Deactivating airbags*.
- **Never** use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.
- This is also clearly stated on the sticker which is located on the B column on the front passenger side » Fig. 146. The sticker is visible upon opening the front passenger door. In some countries, the sticker is affixed to the front passenger sun visor.
- With child safety seats in groups 2 or 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.
- As soon as the rear-facing child seat is no longer being used on the passenger seat, the front passenger airbag should be re-activated again.

Child safety and side airbag

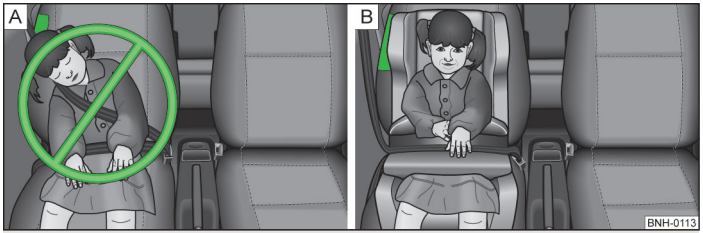

Fig. 147 **Incorrect seated position of a child who is not properly secured – risk from the side airbag/child properly protected by child seat**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 175.

The child must not be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag » Fig. 147 - A.

There must be sufficient room between the child and the deployment area of the side airbag so that the airbag can provide as much protection as possible » Fig. 147 - B.

WARNING

- Children must never be seated with their head in the deployment area of the side airbag – risk of injury!
- Do not place any objects within the deployment area of the side airbags – risk of injury!

Classification of child seats

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 175.

Classification of child seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

Group	Weight of the child	Approximate age
0	up to 10 kg	up to 9 months
0+	up to 13 kg	up to 18 months
1	9-18 kg	up to 4 years
2	15-25 kg	up to 7 years
3	22-36 kg	over 7 years

Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 175.

Overview of the usability of child seats fastened with a seat belt on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Front passenger seat	Rear seats outside	Rear seat middle
0 to 10 kg	U	U	U
0+ to 13 kg	U	U	U
1 9-18 kg	U	U	U
2 15-25 kg	U	U	U
3 22-36 kg	U	U	U

U "Universal" child seat category - a child seat designed to be attached to the seat using the seat belt.

Fastening systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

ISOFIX system anchor eyelets 177
Use of child seats with the ISOFIX system 178
TOP TETHER system anchor eyelets 179

ISOFIX system anchor eyelets

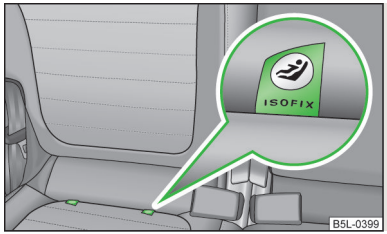

Fig. 148
Rear seat: ISOFIX

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 177.

There are two fixing eyes between the seat backrest and the seat cushion of the front passenger seat for fixing the ISOFIX system child seat in place.

On the rear outside seats, the fixing eyes are located below the upholstery. The places are marked with labels with the ISOFIX logo » Fig. 148.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the ISOFIX system.
- Never attach other child seats, belts or objects to the anchor eyelets intended for the installation of a child seat with the ISOFIX system – risk to life.

Note

- A child seat fitted with the ISOFIX system can only be mounted in a vehicle fitted with an ISOFIX system if the child seat has been approved for this type of vehicle. Further information is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Child seats with the ISOFIX system can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Use of child seats with the ISOFIX system

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 177.

Overview of the usability of child seats with the ISOFIX system on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Child seat size category[a)]	Front passenger seat[b)]	Outer rear seats	Rear seat middle
0 to 10 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
0+ to 13 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
	D			
	C			
1 9-18 kg	D	X	IL-SU IUF	X
	C			
	B			
	B1			
	A			

a) The size category is shown on the label attached to the child seat.

b) If the front passenger seat is fitted with the ISOFIX system attachment points, it is suited for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat with the "Semi-Universal" approval.

IL-SU The seat is suited for installation of an ISOFIX child seat with "Semi-Universal" approval. The "Semi-Universal" category means that the child seat with the ISOFIX system is approved for your vehicle. Observe the list of vehicles that comes with the child seat.

IUF The seat is suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat with "Universal" approval and attachment with the TOP TETHER belt.

X The seat is not fitted with fixing eyes for the ISOFIX system.

TOP TETHER system anchor eyelets

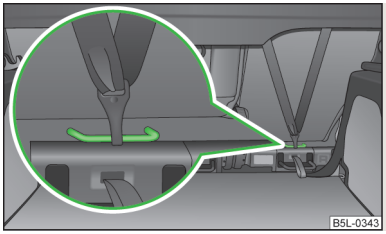

Fig. 149
Rear seat: TOP TETHER

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 177.

The anchor eyelets for attaching the belt for a child seat with the TOP TETHER system are located on the rear side of the outer rear seat backrests » Fig. 149.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the TOP TETHER system.
- Only use child seats with the TOP TETHER system on the seats with the locking eyes.
- Only ever attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye.
- On no account should you equip your vehicle, e.g. mount screws or other anchorage points.

General Maintenance

Taking care of and cleaning the vehicle

Washing your car

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Washing by hand 180
Automatic car wash systems 180
Washing with a high-pressure cleaner 181

The best way to protect your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is **frequent** washing.

How often the vehicle should be washed depends on factors such as:
- Frequency of use.
- Parking situation (garage, under trees etc.).
- Season.
- Weather conditions.
- Environmental influences.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, tree sap, road and industrial dust, tar, soot particles, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain adhering to the paintwork of your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It is essential to also thoroughly clean the **underside of the vehicle** at the end of the winter.

WARNING

- When washing your vehicle in the winter: Water and ice in the braking system can affect the braking efficiency – risk of accident!
- Only wash the vehicle when the ignition is switched off – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Do not wash your vehicle in bright sunlight – risk of paint damage.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle at washing bays intended for this purpose.

Washing by hand

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 180.

Soak the dirt with plenty of water and rinse as well as possible.

Clean the vehicle with a soft **sponge**, a **washing glove** or a **washing brush**. Work from the top to the bottom - starting with the roof.

Only use a **car shampoo** for stubborn dirt.

Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

Clean wheels, door sills and similar parts last. Use a second sponge for such areas.

Give the vehicle a good rinse after washing it and dry it off using a chamois leather.

CAUTION

- When washing the car by hand, protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts (e.g. when cleaning the underfloor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims, etc) - There is a risk of cutting yourself.
- Only apply slight pressure when cleaning the vehicle's paintwork.

Automatic car wash systems

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 180.

The usual precautionary measures must be taken before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system (e.g. closing the windows and the sliding/tilting roof etc.).

If your vehicle is fitted with any particular attached parts, such as a spoiler, roof rack system, two-way radio aerial etc., it is best to consult the operator of the car wash system beforehand.

After an automatic wash with wax treatment, the lips of the wipers should be cleaned with cleaning agents specially designed for the purpose, and then degreased.

WARNING

Fold in the exterior mirrors to prevent damage before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system.

Washing with a high-pressure cleaner

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 180.

When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, the instructions for use of the equipment must be observed. This applies in particular to the **pressure** used and to the **spraying distance**.

Maintain a sufficiently large distance to the parking aid sensors and soft materials such as rubber hoses or insulation material.

WARNING

Never use circular spray nozzles or dirt cutters!

CAUTION

- If washing the vehicle in the winter using a hose or high-pressure cleaner, ensure that the jet of water is not aimed directly at the locking cylinders or the door/panel joints – risk of freezing!
- To avoid damaging the parking aid sensors while cleaning with high-pressure cleaners or steam jets, the sensors must only be directly sprayed for short periods while a minimum distance of 10 cm must be observed.
- The temperature of the water used for cleaning must not exceed 60 °C – risk of damaging the vehicle.
- See also Washing cars with decorative films using a high-pressure cleaner » page 183 .

Taking care of your vehicle exterior

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Taking care of your vehicle's paintwork 182
Plastic parts 182
Rubber seals 182
Chrome parts 183
Decorative films 183
Windows and exterior mirrors 183
Headlight lenses 183
Door lock cylinders 184
Cavity protection 184
Wheels 184
Underbody protection 184

Regular and proper care help to retain the efficiency and **value** of your vehicle. It may also be one of the requirements for the acceptance of warranty claims relating to corrosion damage and paint defects on the bodywork.

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the package must be observed.

WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always store vehicle care products safely, in particular out of the reach of children – risk of poisoning!
- Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when cleaning the underfloor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims – risk of cuts!

CAUTION

- Do not use any insect sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar cleaning products – risk of damaging the paintwork surface.
- Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.

For the sake of the environment

Used vehicle care product cans represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

Due to the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle, we recommend that cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA service partner.

Taking care of your vehicle's paintwork

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 181.

Minor paint damage such as scratches, scuffs or stone chips should be treated immediately if possible, using **touch-up pens** or **sprays**.

Preserving the vehicle paintwork
A thorough wax treatment provides the vehicle's paintwork with highly effective protection against harmful environmental influences.

The vehicle must be treated with a high-quality hard wax polish at the latest, when no more drops form on the clean paintwork.

A new layer of a high-quality hard wax polish can be applied to the clean bodywork after it has dried thoroughly.

Even if you use a wax preserver regularly we still recommend that you treat the paintwork of the vehicle at least twice a year with hard wax.

Polishing
Polishing is necessary if the vehicle's paintwork has become unattractive and if it is no longer possible to achieve a gloss with wax preservatives.

If the polish does not contain any preserving elements, the paint must be treated with a preservative afterwards.

CAUTION

- Never apply wax to the windows.
- Mat painted or plastic parts must not be treated with polishing products or hard waxes.
- Do not polish the paintwork in a dusty environment - risk of paint scratches.
- Do not apply any paint care products to door seals or window guides.
- If possible, do not apply any paint care products to parts of the bodywork that come into contact with door seals or window guides.

Plastic parts

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 181.

Clean plastic parts with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the plastic parts, use cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

CAUTION

Do not use paint care products on plastic parts.

Rubber seals

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 181.

All door seals and window guides are factory-treated with a colourless matt varnish layer to prevent the freezing of painted body parts and to protect against driving noise.

Do not treat the door seals and window guides with **any** products.

CAUTION

Applying additional treatments to the seals can corrode the protective coating, and driving noise may occur.

Chrome parts

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 181.

First clean the chrome parts with a damp cloth and then polish them with a soft, dry cloth.

If this method does not completely clean chrome parts, use a specific chrome care product.

CAUTION

Do not polish the chrome parts in a dusty environment - risk of surface scratches.

Decorative films

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 181.

Wash the films with a mild soap solution and clean, warm water. Never use harsh cleaning products or chemical solvents, as this could damage the films.

The following instructions must be followed when washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner:

› The minimum distance between the nozzle and the vehicle body should be 50 cm.
› Keep jet perpendicular to the film surface.
› The maximum water temperature is 50 °C.
› The maximum water pressure is 80 bar.

CAUTION

In the winter months, do not use an ice scraper to remove ice and snow from the areas with films. Do not use any other objects to remove frozen layers of snow or ice – risk of film damage.

Windows and exterior mirrors

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 181.

Use a plastic ice scraper for removing snow and ice from the windows and mirrors.

Regularly clean windows from the inside with clean water.

Dry the glass surfaces with a clean chamois leather or a cloth intended for this purpose.

When drying the windows after washing the vehicle, do not use window leathers that have been used to polish the bodywork. Residues of preservatives in the window leather can make the window dirty and reduce visibility.

CAUTION

▪ The ice scraper should not be moved forward and backward but in one direction to avoid any damage to the surface of the glass.
▪ Snow or ice that is contaminated with coarse dirt such as fine gravel, sand or salt must not be removed from the windows and mirrors – there is a risk of damage to the surface of the windows and mirrors.
▪ Do not remove snow or ice from glass parts using warm or hot water – risk of cracks forming in the glass.
▪ When removing snow or ice from windows and mirror lenses ensure that the paintwork of the vehicle is not to damage.
▪ Do not clean the inside of the windows with sharp-edged objects or corrosive and acidic cleaning agents – there is a risk of damaging the heating elements or window aerial.

Headlight lenses

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 181.

Clean plastic front headlight lenses using clean, warm water and soap.

CAUTION

- **Never** wipe headlights to dry.
- Do not use any sharp objects to clean the plastic lenses, as this may damage the protective paintwork and consequently cause cracks to form on the headlight lenses.
- Do not use any harsh cleaning products or chemical solvents to clean the headlights, as this could damage the headlight lenses.

Door lock cylinders

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 181.

Specific products must be used for de-icing door lock cylinders.

CAUTION

When washing your vehicle, ensure as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinders.

Cavity protection

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 181.

All corrosive cavities of the vehicle are permanently protected against chemical and mechanical influences by **protective wax**.

This wax protection does not need to be inspected or re-applied.

If any small amount of wax flow out of the cavities at high temperatures, these must be removed with a plastic scraper and the stains cleaned using a petroleum cleaner.

WARNING

Safety regulations should be observed when using petroleum cleaner to remove wax – risk of fire!

Wheels

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 181.

Wheel rims
Also thoroughly wash the wheel rims when washing the vehicle on a regular basis.

Regularly remove salt and brake abrasion, otherwise the rim material will be corroded.

Damage to the paint layer on the wheel rims must be touched up immediately.

Light alloy wheels
After washing thoroughly and treat the wheel rims with a protective product for light alloy wheels. Products which cause abrasion must not be used to treat the wheel rims.

CAUTION

Severe layers of dirt on the wheels can also result in wheel imbalance. This may show itself in the form of a wheel vibration which is transmitted to the steering wheel which, in certain circumstances, can cause premature wear of the steering. This means it is necessary to remove the dirt.

Underbody protection

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 181.

The underside of your vehicle is protected for life against chemical and mechanical influences.

It is not possible to guarantee that the **protective coating** will not suffer any damage as the vehicle is driven.

We recommend having the protective coating underneath the vehicle and the chassis checked — preferably before the beginning of winter and at the end of winter.

WARNING

Never use additional underbody protection or anti-corrosion agents for exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, diesel particle filters or heat shields. When the engine reaches its operating temperature, these substances may ignite - risk of fire!

Taking care of the interior

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Natural leather 185
Artificial leather and fabrics 186
Seat covers 186
Seat belts 187

Regular and proper care helps to ensure efficiency and to **maintain the value** of your vehicle.

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the package must be observed.

WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always store vehicle care products safely, in particular out of the reach of children – risk of poisoning!

CAUTION

- Be sure to check clothing for colourfastness to avoid any damage or visible stains on the material (leather), panels and textiles.
- Remove fresh stains such as those from ball-point pens, ink, lipstick, shoe polish, etc., from the material (leather), panels and textiles as quickly as possible.
- Do not attach scents or air fresheners to the dash panel – there is a risk of damage to the dash panel.
- Do not stick any stickers on the inside of the rear windows, the rear side windows and in the vicinity of the heating elements on the windscreen or near the window aerial. These may get damaged.
- Do not clean the roof panelling with a brush – there is a risk of damage to the surface of the panelling.
- Air fresheners and scents can be hazardous to heath when the temperature inside the vehicle is high.
- Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.
- Apply only a small amount of the cleaning and care product.

For the sake of the environment

Used vehicle care product cans represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

Due to the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle, we recommend that cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA service partner.

Natural leather

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 185.

Leather is a natural material with specific properties, and requires regular cleaning and maintenance.

The leather should be cleaned on a regular basis depending on the amount of wear-and-tear.

Dust and dirt in the pores and folds act as abrasive materials. This leads to severe corrosion and the premature brittleness of the leather surface.

We recommend that you remove dust **regularly and at short intervals** using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Clean soiled leather surfaces with a water-dampened cotton or woollen cloth and then dry with a clean, dry cloth » !.

Clean heavily soiled areas with a cloth soaked in a mild soap solution (2 tablespoons of neutral soap to 1 litre of water).

To **remove stains**, use a cleaning agent specially designed for this purpose.

Treat the leather regularly and at suitable intervals using a suitable leather care product.

CAUTION

- Ensure that no part of the leather is soaked through during cleaning and that no water gets into the seams. Otherwise, the leather could become brittle or cracked.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle for lengthy periods in bright sunlight to avoid the leather from bleaching. If the vehicle is parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the leather from direct sunlight by covering it.
- Sharp-edged objects on items of clothing such as zip fasteners, rivets, sharp-edged belts, jewellery and pendants may leave permanent scratches or signs of rubbing on the surface. Such damage cannot be subsequently recognised as a justified complaint.
- The use of a mechanical steering wheel lock may damage the leather surface of the steering wheel.
- Use a care cream with light blocker and impregnation effect on a regular basis and each time after cleaning. The cream nourishes the leather, allows it to breathe and keeps it supple and also provides moisture. It also creates surface protection.
- Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.

Note

When using the vehicle, minor visible changes may occur to the leather parts of the covers (e.g. wrinkles or creases) as a result of the stress applied to the covers.

Artificial leather and fabrics

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 185.

Artificial leather
Clean artificial leather with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the artificial leather, use a mild soap solution or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Fabric
Clean upholstery cover materials and cloth trims on doors, boot cover, etc. using specific cleaning agents, e.g., dry foam.

Use a soft sponge, brush, or commercially available microfibre cloth.

Use a cloth and a specific cleaning agent to clean the roof trim.

Remove any lumps on the cover fabric and any fabric residue using a brush.

Remove stubborn hair using a "cleaning glove".

CAUTION

- Avoid leaving the vehicle in bright sunlight for long periods of time in order to stop the fabric from bleaching. If the vehicle is parked outside for long periods of time, cover the fabric to protect it from direct sunlight.
- Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.

Seat covers

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 185.

Electrically heated seats
Do not clean the covers by **moistening**, as this can damage the seat heating system.

Use a specific cleaning agent such as dry foam or similar to clean the covers.

Seats without seat heating
Thoroughly vacuum the seat covers with a vacuum cleaner before cleaning.

Clean the seat covers with a damp cloth or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Indented points arising on the fabrics by everyday use, can be removed by brushing against the direction of hair with a damp brush.

Always clean all parts of the covers, so that there are no visible edges. Then allow the seat to dry completely.

CAUTION

- Regularly remove dust from the seat covers using a vacuum cleaner.
- Electrically heated seats must not be dried after cleaning by switching on the heater.
- Do not sit on wet seats - risk of seat deformation.
- Always clean the seats from "seam to seam".

Seat belts

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 185.

The belt webbing must always be kept clean.

Wash dirty seat belts with mild soapy water.

Remove coarse dirt with a soft brush.

Dirty belt webbing may impair the correct functioning of the inertia reel.

WARNING

- The seat belts must not be removed for cleaning.
- Never clean the seat belts chemically as chemical cleaning products could destroy the fabric.
- The seat belts must not be allowed to come into contact with corrosive liquids (e.g. acids).
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If any damage to the belt webbing, seat belt connections, inertia reel or lock is detected, the seat belt must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- The seat belts must be fully dried before being rolled up.

Modifications, repairs and technical alterations

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

ŠKODA Service Partners 188
Spoiler 188
Airbags 188

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. must be observed when carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition. After carrying out modifications, repairs or technical alterations, the vehicle will comply with German road transport regulations (StVZO)

Always consult a ŠKODA Partner » page 188 before buying accessories or parts, or before carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

WARNING

- If work on your vehicle is not carried out properly, this can lead to operational faults - risk of accident and serious injuries.
- We recommend only having these modifications and technical alterations carried out by a specialist garage.
- Interference on the electronic components and their software can lead to operational faults. This interference can also impair not directly affected systems because of the networking of the electronic components. The operational safety of the vehicle may be at significant risk and can lead to increased wear of parts.
- The ŠKODA Partner accepts no liability for products that have not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. even though these may be products with an operational approval or that have been approved by a government testing institute.

WARNING

- We advise you only to use ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.
- ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts can be purchased from ŠKODA Partners, who will also fit purchased parts properly.

For the sake of the environment

Technical documents regarding alterations carried out on the vehicle must be kept by the vehicle user in order to be handed over to the recyclers at a later date. This ensures that the vehicle is recycled in an environmentally sound manner.

Note

Any damage caused by technical alterations made without the approval of the manufacturer is excluded from the warranty » *Service schedule*.

ŠKODA Service Partners

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 187.

ŠKODA Service Partners feature modern, specially developed tools and equipment. Here, trained specialists have access to a comprehensive range of ŠKODA Original Parts and ŠKODA Original Accessories for carrying out modifications, repairs and technical alterations.

All ŠKODA service partners operate according to the most recent guidelines and instructions from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. All service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and at the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

ŠKODA Service Partners are therefore properly prepared to service your vehicle and to provide quality work. We therefore advise you to have all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to your vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

Spoiler

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 187.

If your new vehicle is fitted with a **spoiler** on the front bumper in combination with the **spoiler** on the luggage compartment lid, the following instructions must be adhered to.

› For safety reasons, the vehicle must only be fitted with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the associated spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
› This kind of spoiler cannot be left on the front bumper either on its own, in combination with another spoiler not on the luggage compartment lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
› We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.

WARNING

If work on your vehicle's spoilers is not carried out properly, this can lead to operational faults - risk of accident and serious injuries.

Airbags

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 187.

The system components of the airbag system can be situated in the front bumper, doors, front seats, roof lining or body.

WARNING

Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.

- Modifications, repairs and technical alterations that have been carried out unprofessionally can cause damage and operational faults, and can also seriously impair the effectiveness of the airbag system – risk of accident and fatal injury!
- The airbag system will then have to be replaced if the airbag is deployed. Airbag modules cannot be repaired.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for handling the airbag system.
- It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- Never install any airbag parts into the vehicle that have been removed from old cars or have been recycled.
- Never install damaged airbag parts in the vehicle. The airbags may then not be deployed properly or even at all in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.

WARNING

- A change to the vehicle's wheel suspension, including the use of non-approved wheels and tire combinations, can alter the functioning of the airbag system - risk of accident and fatal injury!
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or the bodywork.

WARNING

The airbag control unit operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Resulting damage can have a negative impact on the function of the airbag system. Any work on the front doors and door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage. The following instructions must be observed.
- Never drive with inner door panels removed.
- Never drive if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the resulting openings have not been properly sealed.
- Never drive if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, unless the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.
- Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts have been installed in the inner door panels.

Inspecting and replenishing

Fuel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Refuelling 190
Unleaded petrol 191
Diesel fuel 191

The correct grades of fuel for your vehicle are stated on a sticker affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 150 on page 190 - B.

WARNING

The national legal requirements must be observed if carrying a spare canister in the vehicle. We do not recommend carrying any fuel canisters in your vehicle for safety reasons. in the event of an accident, these canisters can become damaged and fuel may escape – risk of fire!

CAUTION

- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.
- Immediately remove any fuel that has spilled onto the vehicle's paintwork – risk of paint damage!

Refuelling

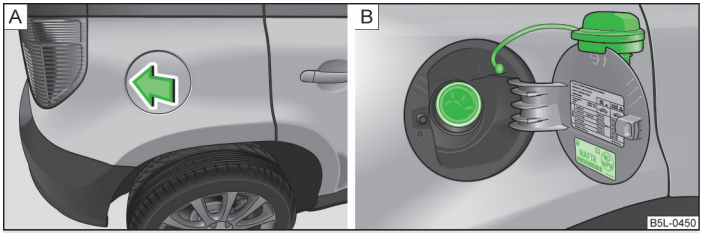

Fig. 150 **Right rear side of the vehicle: Open fuel filler flap/fuel filler flap with cap unscrewed**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 190.

The filler flap is automatically unlocked or locked with the central locking.

Open fuel filler flap

› Press in the middle of the left area of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 150 - A.
› Unscrew the filler cap by turning it to the left and place the cap onto the top of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 150 - B.

Closing the filler cap

› Turn the filler cap to the right until it clicks into place.
› Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

CAUTION

- Before refuelling it is necessary to switch off the auxiliary heating system (auxiliary heating and ventilation).
- The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time, provided the nozzle has been operated properly. Do not continue filling the fuel tank otherwise the expansion volume is filled up.

Note

The fuel tank has a capacity of about **60 litres**, containing a reserve of approx. **10.5 litres**.

Unleaded petrol

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 190.

Your vehicle can only be operated with **unleaded petrol** complying with the **EN 228** standard (in Germany also **DIN 51626-1** or **E10** for unleaded petrol with an octane rating of **95** RON and **91** RON or **DIN 51626-2** or **E5** for unleaded petrol with an octane rating **95** RON and **98** RON).

Prescribed fuel - unleaded fuel 95/91 RON
Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95** RON. Unleaded petrol **91** RON can also be used but results in a slight loss in performance.

Prescribed fuel - unleaded petrol min. 95 RON
Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95** RON.

In case of necessity, you can refuel with petrol with the octane rating **91** RON if petrol with the octane rating **95** RON is not available.

Even in the event of an emergency, petrol of a lower octane number than **91** RON must not be used, otherwise the engine can be severely damaged!

Unleaded petrol with higher octane number
Unleaded petrol that has a higher octane number than that required by the engine can be used without limitations.

On vehicles with prescribed unleaded petrol **95/91** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON does not result in a noticeable power increase or a lower fuel consumption.

On vehicles using prescribed unleaded petrol of **min. 95** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON can increase the power and reduce fuel consumption.

Prescribed fuel - unleaded fuel 98/95 RON
Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **98** RON. Unleaded petrol **95** RON can also be used but results in a slight loss in performance.

In case of necessity, you can refuel with petrol with the octane rating**91** RON of unleaded fuel with octane rating **98** RON or **95** RON is not available.

Even in the event of an emergency, petrol of a lower octane number than **91** RON must not be used, otherwise the engine can be severely damaged!

Fuel additives
Only use unleaded petrol, which complies with the standard EN 228 (in Germany: standard DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded fuel with an octane rating of 95 RON and 91 RON or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded fuel with an octane rating of 95 RON and 98 RON), as these meet all of the requirements for fault-free engine operation. We therefore recommend that no fuel additives are used.

CAUTION

- All ŠKODA vehicles with petrol engines must only be operated with unleaded petrol. Just filling the tank with leaded petrol once will damage the exhaust system!
- If, in an emergency, the vehicle has to be refuelled with petrol of a lower octane number than the one prescribed, the journey must only be continued at medium engine speeds and a low engine load. Driving at high engine revs or a high engine load can severely damage the engine! Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.
- Engine parts can be damaged if petrol with a lower octane number than the one prescribed is used.
- In no case may fuel additives with metal components be used, especially not with manganese and iron content. Do not use any LRP (lead replacement petrol) fuels with metal constituents – risk of serious damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.
- Do not use any fuels with metal constituents – risk of serious damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.
- The use of unsuitable fuel additives can cause considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

Diesel fuel

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 190.

Your vehicle can only be operated with **diesel fuel** complying with the **EN 590** standard (in Germany **DIN 51628**, in Austria **ÖNORM C 1590**, in Russia **GOST R 52368-2005 / EN 590:2004**).

All diesel engines can be operated with diesel fuel with a **maximum** content of 7 % bio-fuel **(B7),** which complies with the standard **DIN 52638** in Germany (in Austria **C 1590**, in France **EN 590**).

Operation in winter - Winter-grade diesel fuel
In the cold season, only use "winter-grade diesel fuel" which will still operate properly even at a temperature of -20 °C.

It is often the case in countries with different climatic conditions that diesel fuels available have a different temperature characteristic. ŠKODA Partners and filling stations in the relevant country will be able to provide you with information regarding the diesel fuels available.

Preheating fuel
The vehicle is fitted with a fuel filter preheating system. This secures operation of a vehicle using diesel fuel down to an environmental temperature of -25 °C.

Fuel additives
Fuel additives, so-called "flow improvers" (petrol and similar products) must not be added to the diesel fuel.

CAUTION

- Just filling the tank once with diesel fuel that does not comply with the standard, can cause severe damage to parts of the engine, the fuel and exhaust system!
- Damage caused by using diesel fuel which does not comply with the standards is excluded from the warranty.
- If a different fuel other than diesel fuel, which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. petrol) is used by mistake do not start the engine or switch on the ignition! Extensive damage to engine parts can occur! We recommend that you have the fuel system cleaned by a specialist garage.
- Water which has collected in the fuel filter can cause engine faults.
- Your vehicle is not adapted for use of biofuel (RME), therefore this fuel must not be refuelled and driven. The use of biofuel (RME) can cause considerable damage to parts of the engine or fuel system.
- Comply with the proscribed oil change intervals.

Engine compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening and closing the bonnet 194
Engine compartment overview 194
Radiator fan 195
Windscreen washer system 195

WARNING

Injuries or scolding or risks of accident or fire may occur when working in the engine compartment. For this reason, it is essential to comply with the warning instructions outlined below and with the general applicable safety rules. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area!

WARNING

The following instructions must be followed before starting work in the engine compartment:
- Turn off the engine and withdraw the ignition key.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- If the vehicle is fitted with a manual gearbox, move the gearshift lever into Neutral, or if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox, move the selector lever into position **P**.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Never open the bonnet if you can see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment – risk of scalding! Wait until no more steam or coolant is escaping.

WARNING

The following instructions must be followed when working in the engine compartment.
- Keep children clear of the engine compartment.
- Never touch the radiator fan while the engine is still warm. The fan might suddenly start running!
- Do not touch any hot engine parts – risk of burns!
- The coolant additive and thus all of the coolant is harmful to your health.
- Avoid contact with the coolant.
- Coolant vapours are harmful to health.
- Never open the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir while the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurized!

WARNING (Continued)

- When opening the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir, cover it with a cloth to protect your face, hands and arms from hot steam or hot coolant.
- If any coolant splashes into your eyes, immediately rinse out your eyes with clear water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.
- Always store the coolant additive securely in its original container, and in particular out of the reach of children – risk of poisoning!
- If coolant is swallowed, consult a doctor immediately.
- Do not leave any items such as cloths or tools in the engine compartment.
- Never spill fluids on the hot engine. Such fluids (e.g. the antifreeze contained in the coolant) may ignite!

WARNING

The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment while the engine is running.

- Pay particular attention to rotating engine parts (e.g. V-ribbed belt, generator, radiator fan) and the high-voltage ignition system – risk to life!
- Never touch the electric wiring on the ignition system.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system - particularly on the vehicle's battery.
- Always make sure that no jewellery, loose clothing or long hair can get caught in rotating engine parts – risk to life! Always remove any jewellery, tie back long hair and wear tight fitting clothing before completing any work.

WARNING

The following warning instructions must be observed if work has to be carried out on the fuel or electrical systems.

- Always disconnect the vehicle battery from the electrical system.
- Do not smoke.
- Never work near open flames.
- Always have a functioning fire extinguisher nearby.

WARNING

- Read and observe the information and warning instructions on the fluid containers.
- Keep fluids in their original containers and keep securely out of the reach of children!
- If you intend to work underneath the vehicle, you must secure the vehicle from rolling away and support it with suitable supporting blocks; the car jack is not sufficient – risk of injury!
- Never cover the engine with additional insulation material (e.g. with a cover) – risk of fire!
- The bonnet must always be properly closed when driving. Therefore, the lock must always be checked after closing the bonnet in order to ensure that it has engaged properly.
- If you notice that the lock is not properly engaged while driving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Always top up using the correct specification of fluids. This may result in major operating problems and also vehicle damage!
- Never open the bonnet using the locking lever.

For the sake of the environment

In view of the requirements for the environmentally friendly disposal of fluids and the specials tools and knowledge required for such work, we recommend that fluids be changed by a specialist garage as part of an inspection service.

Note

- Please consult a specialist garage for any questions relating to fluids.
- Fluids with the correct specifications can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Opening and closing the bonnet

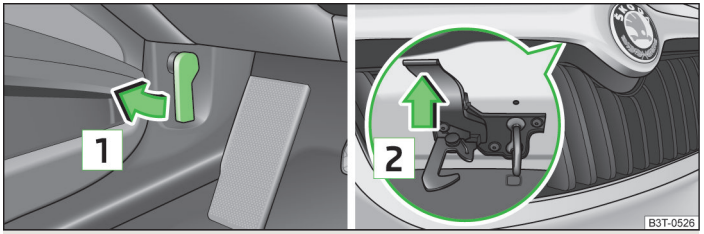

Fig. 151 **Bonnet/radiator grille release lever: Release lever**

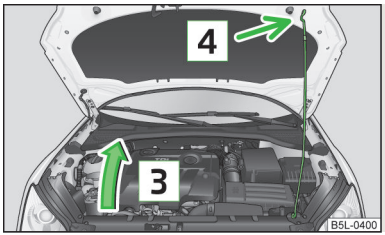

Fig. 152
Securing the bonnet with the bonnet support

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 192.

Opening

› Pull the release lever under the dash panel 1 » Fig. 151.

Before opening the bonnet, ensure that the arms of the windscreen wipers are correctly in place against the windscreen otherwise the paintwork could be damaged.

› Press the release lever in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 151 and the bonnet is unlocked.
› Grab hold of the bonnet and lift.
› Take the bonnet support out of its holder in direction of arrow 3 and secure the opened bonnet by inserting the end of the support in the opening 4 designed for it » Fig. 152.

Closing

› Lift the bonnet slightly and unhook the bonnet support. Press the bonnet support into the holder designed to hold it.
› Let the bonnet drop into the lock carrier lock from a height of around 20 cm – do **not push it in**.
› Check that the bonnet is closed properly.

Engine compartment overview

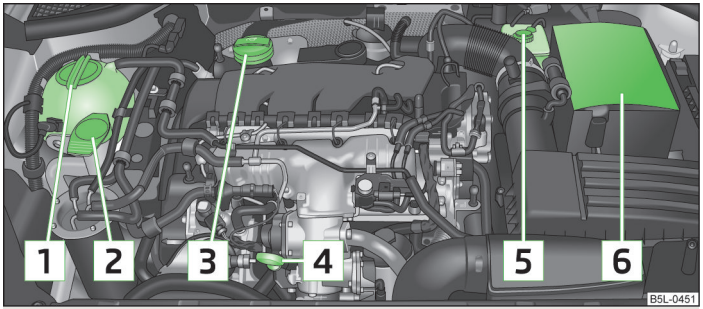

Fig. 153 **Principle sketch: Engine compartment**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 192.

1	Coolant expansion reservoir	199
2	Windscreen washer fluid reservoir	195
3	Engine oil filler opening	197
4	Engine oil dipstick	197
5	Brake fluid reservoir	200
6	Battery (below a cover)	200

Note

The location of the inspection points in the engine compartment of petrol and diesel engines is practically identical.

Radiator fan

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 192.

After switching off the ignition, the fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

The radiator fan is powered by an electric motor. Operation is controlled according to the temperature of the coolant.

Windscreen washer system

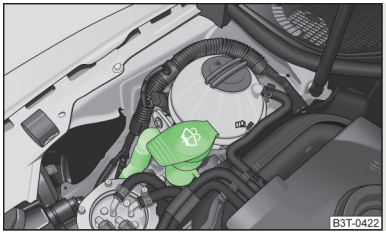

Fig. 154
Engine compartment: Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 192.

The windscreen washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment and contains the cleaning fluid for the windscreen or rear window and for the headlight cleaning system.

The **filling level** of the container is about 3 litres and about 5.5 litres on vehicles that have a headlight washing system[1].

Clear water is not sufficient to intensively clean the windscreen and headlights. We recommend using clean water together with a screen cleaner from the range of ŠKODA Original Accessories **(with antifreeze in winter)**, which will remove any stubborn dirt.

In Winter, the washing water should always be mixed with antifreeze even if the vehicle has heated windscreen washer nozzles.

Under exceptional circumstances, methylated spirits can also be used if no screen cleaner with antifreeze is available. The concentration of methylated spirits must not be more than 15 %. The freeze protection at this concentration is sufficient only to -5 °C.

CAUTION

- Under no circumstances must radiator antifreeze or other additives be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- If the vehicle is fitted with a headlight cleaning system, only cleaning products which do not attack the polycarbonate coating of the headlights must be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- Do not remove the filter from the windscreen washer fluid reservoir when refilling, as this may cause contamination of the liquid transportation system, leading in turn to a windscreen washer system malfunction.

Engine oil

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Specifications and capacity 196
Checking the oil level 197
Topping up 197
Changing 197

The engine has been factory-filled with a high-grade oil that can be use throughout the year - except in extreme climate zones.

The engine oils are undergoing continuous further development. Thus the information stated in this Owner's Manual is only correct at the time of publication.

ŠKODA Service Partners are informed about the latest changes by the manufacturer. We therefore recommend that the oil change be completed by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

The specifications (VW standards) stated in the following can be indicated separately or together with other specifications on the bottle.

[1] In some countries, 5.5 ltr. applies for both variants.

The oil capacities include oil filter change. Check the oil level when filling; do not over fill. The oil level must be between the markings » page 197.

WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 192.
- Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible to top up the engine oil. Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

CAUTION

Do not pour any additives into the engine oil – risk of serious damage to the engine parts! Damage, which results from such product, are excluded from the warranty.

Note

- Before a long drive we recommend that you purchase and carry with you engine oil which complies with the specification for your vehicle.
- We recommend that you use oils from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- If oil comes into contact with your skin, the affected area must be washed thoroughly.

Specifications and capacity

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 195.

Specifications and capacity (in l) for vehicles with flexible service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification	Filling level
1.2 ltr./77 kW TSI	VW 504 00	3.9
1.4 ltr./90 kW TSI	VW 504 00	3.6
1.8 ltr/118 kW TSI 1.8 ltr/112 kW TSI	VW 504 00	4.6

Diesel engines[a)]	Specification	Filling level
1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI CR	VW 507 00	4.3
2.0 ltr/81 kW TDI CR DPF	VW 507 00	4.3
2.0 ltr/103 kW TDI CR DPF	VW 507 00	4.3
2.0 ltr/125 kW TDI CR DPF	VW 507 00	4.3

a) Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines without a **DPF**.

Specifications and capacity (in l) for vehicles with fixed service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification	Filling level
1.2 ltr./77 kW TSI	VW 502 00	3.9
1.4 ltr./90 kW TSI	VW 502 00	3.6
1.8 ltr/118 kW TSI 1.8 ltr/112 kW TSI	VW 502 00	4.6

Diesel engines[a)]	Specification	Filling level
1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI CR	VW 507 00	4.3
2.0 ltr/81 kW TDI CR DPF	VW 507 00	4.3
2.0 ltr/103 kW TDI CR DPF	VW 507 00	4.3
2.0 ltr/125 kW TDI CR DPF	VW 507 00	4.3

a) Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines without a **DPF**.

CAUTION

- If the above engine oils are not available, a different engine oil can be used in an emergency. To prevent damage to the engine, a **maximum of 0.5 litres** only of the following engine oils may be used until the next oil change:
  - For petrol engine models: ACEA A3/ACEA B4 or API SN/API SM;
  - For diesel engine models: ACEA C3 or API CJ-4.

Checking the oil level

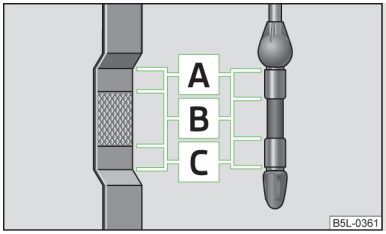

Fig. 155
Dipstick

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 195.

The dipstick indicates the level of oil in the engine » Fig. 155.

Checking the oil level
› Ensure that the vehicle is positioned on a level surface and the engine has reached its operating temperature.
› Switch off the engine.
› Open the bonnet.
› Wait a few minutes until the engine oil flows back into the oil sump and remove the dipstick.
› Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again to the stop.
› Pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level.

Oil level within range A
No oil must be refilled.

Oil level within range B
Oil **can** be refilled. Afterwards, the oil level can lie in the range A.

Oil level within range C
The engine **must** be topped up with oil so that the oil level at least reaches the range B.

The engine consumes a little oil. The oil consumption may be as much as 0.5 l/ 1 000 km depending on your style of driving and the conditions under which you operate your vehicle. Consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5 000 kilometres.

The oil level must be checked at regular intervals. We recommend after each time you refuel or prior to making a long journey.

We recommend maintaining the oil level within the range A, **but not above**, if the engine has been operating at high loads, for example, during a lengthy motorway trip during the summer months, towing a trailer or negotiating a high mountain pass.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster will indicate whether the oil level is too low » page 21, *Engine oil*. Check the oil level using the dipstick as soon as possible. Add oil accordingly.

CAUTION

The oil level must not exceed the range A » Fig. 155 – there is a risk of damaging the exhaust system.

Topping up

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 195.

› Check the engine oil level » page 197.
› Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening » Fig. 153 on page 194.
› Replenish the oil in portions of 0.5 litres in accordance with the correct specifications » page 196.
› Check the oil level » page 197.
› Carefully screw on the oil filler opening cap and push the dipstick in fully.

Changing

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 195.

The engine oil must be changed at the intervals stated in the Service schedule or according to the service interval indicator » page 10.

Note

If oil comes into contact with your skin, the affected area must be washed thoroughly.

Coolant

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Capacity 198
Checking the level 199
Topping up 199

The coolant consists of water with coolant additive. This mixture guarantees antifreeze protection, protects the cooling/heater system against corrosion and prevents lime formation.

Vehicles exported to countries with a **mild climate** are already factory-filled with a coolant which offers antifreeze protection down to about -25 °C. In these countries, the concentration of coolant additive should be at least 40%.

Vehicles exported to countries with a **cold climate** are already factory-filled with a coolant which offers antifreeze protection down to about -35 °C. In these countries, the concentration of coolant additive should be at least 50%.

If a higher concentration of antifreeze is required for climatic reasons, the concentration of coolant additive can be increased up to a maximum of 60% (antifreeze protection down to approx. -40 °C).

When refilling, only use the same antifreeze written on the antifreeze expansion tank » Fig. 156 on page 199.

WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 192.
- Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible to fill with coolant under the current circumstances. Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

CAUTION

- The concentration of coolant additive in the coolant must never be under 40%.
- Over 60% of coolant additive in the coolant reduces the antifreeze protection and cooling effect.
- Other coolant additives that do not comply with the correct specifications can significantly reduce the corrosion protection.
- Any faults resulting from corrosion may cause a loss of coolant and can consequently result in major engine damage!
- Do not fill the coolant above the mark A » Fig. 156 on page 199.
- If a fault causes the engine to overheat, we recommend visiting a specialist garage, as otherwise serious engine damage may occur.

Capacity

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 198.

Coolant capacity[1)]

Petrol engines	Capacities (in litres)
1.2 ltr./77 kW TSI	7.7
1.4 ltr./90 kW TSI	7.7
1.8 ltr./112 kW TSI	8.6
1.8 ltr./118 kW TSI	8.6

Diesel engines	Capacities (in litres)
1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI CR	8.4
2.0 ltr./81 kW TDI CR	8.4
2.0 ltr./103 kW TDI CR	8.4
2.0 ltr./125 kW TDI CR	8.4

[1)] The coolant capacity is approximately 1 l greater on vehicles that are fitted with an auxiliary heater (auxiliary heating and ventilation).

Checking the level

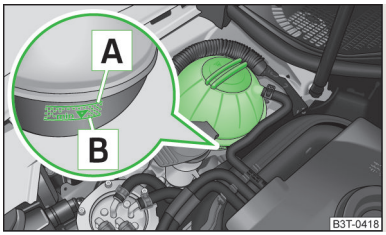

Fig. 156
Engine compartment: Coolant expansion reservoir

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 198.

The coolant expansion bottle is located in the engine compartment.

Inspecting the coolant level
› Switch off the engine.
› Open the bonnet.
› Check the level of coolant in the coolant expansion bottle » Fig. 156.

Coolant level within range A
No coolant may be added.

The level may also rise slightly above the A marking when the engine is hot.

Coolant level in range between A and B
Coolant **may** be added.

The coolant level must lie between the A and B markings when the engine is cold.

Coolant level in the range below B
Coolant **must** be added.

Top up the coolant level to between the A and B markings when the engine is cold.

If the coolant level in the expansion tank is too low, this will be indicated by the warning lamp lighting up in the instrument cluster » page 20, *Coolant temperature/coolant level*, however we recommend that you regularly check the coolant level in the container.

Loss of coolant
A loss of coolant is first and foremost an **indication of a leak** in the system. Do not merely top up the coolant. Have the cooling system checked by a specialist garage.

Topping up

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 198.

Only top up with new coolant.

› Switch off the engine.
› Allow the engine to cool.
› Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion tank and unscrew the cap **carefully**.
› Replenish the coolant.
› Turn the cap until it clicks into place.

Do not use an alternative additive if the specified coolant is not available in an emergency. In this case, use just water and have the correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive restored by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Brake fluid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Checking the level 200
Changing 200

! WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 192.
- Do not continue your journey if the fluid level has dropped below the MIN marking, STOP - there is a risk of an accident. Seek help from a specialist garage.
- Do not use used brake fluid - the function of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Brake fluid damages the paintwork of the vehicle.

Note

The brake fluid is changed as part of a compulsory inspection service.

Checking the level

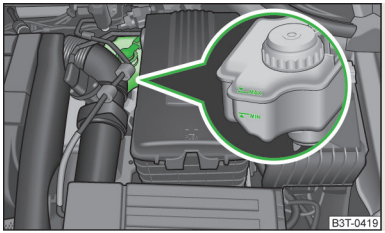

Fig. 157
Engine compartment: Brake fluid reservoir

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 199.

The brake fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

› Switch off the engine.
› Open the bonnet.
› Check the level of brake fluid in the reservoir » Fig. 157. The level must be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings.

A slight drop in the fluid level results when driving due to normal wear-and-tear and automatic adjustment of the brake pads.

There may be an indication of a leak in the brake system, however, if the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the "MIN" marking.

If the brake fluid level is too low, this is indicated by the indicator light lighting up in the instrument cluster » page 19, *Braking system*.

Changing

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 199.

Brake fluid absorbs moisture. Over time it therefore absorbs moisture from the environment.

Excessive water in the brake fluid may be the cause of corrosion in the brake system.

The water content lowers the boiling point of the brake fluid.

The brake fluid must comply with the following standards or specifications:
› VW 50114;
› FMVSS 116 DOT4.

Vehicle battery

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Battery cover 202
Checking the electrolyte level 202
Charging the vehicle battery 203
Disconnecting and reconnecting the vehicle battery 203
Automatic load deactivation 204

Warning symbols on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Importance
	Always wear eye protection.
	Battery acid is severely caustic. Always wear gloves and eye protection.
	Keep fire, sparks, open flames and lit cigarettes well clear of the vehicle battery.

Symbol	Importance
	When charging the vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced.
	Keep children away from the vehicle battery.

Improper handling of the battery can lead to damage. We recommend having all work on the vehicle battery carried out by a specialist garage.

WARNING

There is risk of injuries, poisoning, chemical burns, explosions or fire when working on the battery and on the electrical system. It is essential to comply with the warning instructions outlined below and with the general applicable safety rules.

- Keep children away from the vehicle battery.
- Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings. Protect your eyes by wearing safety goggles or a face shield – risk of blindness!
- Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling the vehicle battery.
- The battery acid is strongly corrosive and must, therefore, be handled with the greatest of care.
- Corrosive fumes in the air irritate the air passages and lead to conjunctivitis and inflammation of the air passages in the lungs.
- Battery acid corrodes dental enamel and, if it comes into contact with the skin, causes deep wounds that take a long time to heal. Repeated contact with diluted acids causes skin diseases (inflammations, ulcers, slin cracks).
- If any battery acid comes into contact with your eyes, rinse the affected eye immediately with clean water for several minutes and consult a doctor immediately!
- Splashes of acid on your skin or clothes should be neutralised as soon as possible using soap suds and then rinsed with plenty of water. If you swallow battery acid, consult a doctor immediately!

WARNING

- It is prohibited to work with naked flames or lights.
- It is prohibited to smoke or carry out any activities that produce sparks.

WARNING (Continued)

- Never use a damaged vehicle battery – risk of explosion!
- Never charge a frozen or thawed vehicle battery – risk of explosion and chemical burns!
- Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with insufficient acid levels – risk of explosion and chemical burns.

WARNING

- When you charge a battery, hydrogen is released, and a highly explosive gas mixture is also produced. An explosion can be caused through sparkling over during unclamping or loosening of the cable plug while the ignition is on.
- Creating a bridge between the poles on the battery (e.g. with a metal object or cable) creates a short circuit - risk of melting the lead bars, and risk of explosion, battery fire and acid splashes.
- Avoid creating sparks when working with cables and electrical devices. Strong sparking represents a risk of injury.
- Before carrying out any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine, the ignition and all of the electrical components and disconnect the negative terminal (**–**) on the battery.

CAUTION

- The vehicle battery must only be disconnected if the ignition is switched off, otherwise the vehicle's electrical system (electronic components) can be damaged. When disconnecting the battery from the electrical system, first disconnect the battery's negative terminal (**–**), followed by the positive terminal (**+**).
- When connecting the battery to the electrical system, first connect the battery's positive terminal (**+**), followed by the negative terminal (**–**). Under no circumstances must the battery cables be connected incorrectly – risk of a cable fire.
- Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork – risk of damage to the paintwork.
- Do not place the battery in direct daylight in order to protect the vehicle battery housing from the effects of ultra-violet light.

▪ If the vehicle has not been driven for more than 3 to 4 weeks, the battery will discharge. This is because certain electrical components consume electricity (e. g. control units) also in idle state. Prevent the battery from discharging by disconnecting the battery's negative terminal (–) or continuously charging the battery with a very low charging current.
▪ If the vehicle is frequently used for making short trips, the vehicle battery will not have time to charge up sufficiently and may discharge.

For the sake of the environment

A vehicle battery that has been removed is a special type of hazardous waste. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

You should replace batteries older than 5 years.

Battery cover

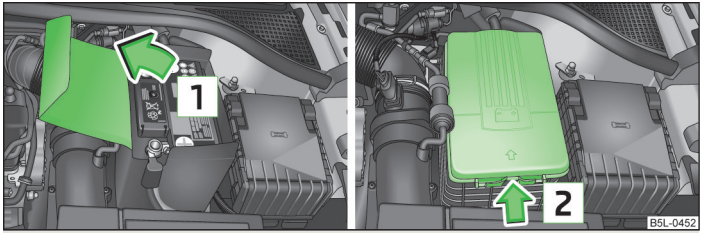

Fig. 158 **Engine compartment: Polyester cover of the vehicle battery/plastic cover of the vehicle battery**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 200.

The battery is located in the engine compartment in a polyester cover 1 » Fig. 158 or in a plastic cover 2 » Fig. 158.

› Open the battery cover in the direction of the arrow 1 or press the interlock on the side of the battery cover in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 158, fold the cover up and remove.
› The battery cover is installed in reverse order.

When working on the battery, the edge of the polyester battery cover 1 » Fig. 158 is inserted between the battery and the side wall of the battery cover.

Checking the electrolyte level

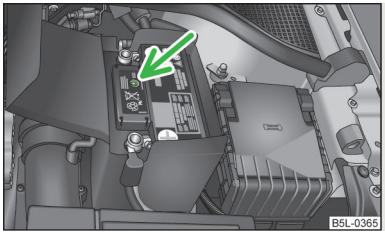

Fig. 159 **Vehicle battery: Electrolyte level indicator**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 200.

On vehicles with a vehicle battery fitted with a colour indicator, the so-called magic eye » Fig. 159, the electrolyte level can be determined by looking at the change in colour.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. For this reason carefully knock on the indicator before carrying out the check.
› Black colour - electrolyte level is correct.
› Colourless or light yellow colour - electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

For technical reasons, the electrolyte level cannot be checked in "AGM" vehicle batteries.

Vehicles with a START-STOP system are fitted with a battery control unit for checking the energy level for recurring engine start.

We recommend that you have the acid level checked regularly by a specialist garage, especially in the following cases.
› High external temperatures.
› Longer day trips.
› After each charge.

Winter time
The vehicle battery only has a proportion of the starting power in lower temperatures. **A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C**.

We therefore recommend that you have the battery checked and, if necessary, recharged by a specialist garage before the start of the winter.

Note

- The battery acid level is also checked regularly by a specialist garage as part of the inspection service.
- For technical reasons, the electrolyte level cannot be checked in "AGM" vehicle batteries.
- Vehicles with a START-STOP system are fitted with a battery control unit for checking the energy level for recurring engine start.

Charging the vehicle battery

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 200.

A properly charged vehicle battery is essential for reliably starting the engine.

› Switch off the ignition and all of the electrical components.
› Only when performing a "quick-charge", disconnect both battery cables (first "negative", then "positive").
› Attach the terminal clamps of the charger to the battery terminals (red = "positive", black = "negative").
› Plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch on the device.
› After charging has been successful: Switch off the charger and remove the mains cable from the power socket.
› Only then disconnect the charger's terminal clamps.
› Reconnect the cables to the battery (first "positive", then "negative").

It is not necessary to disconnect the cables of the battery if you recharge the vehicle battery using low amperages (for example from a mini-charger). **Refer to the instructions issued by the charger manufacturer**.

A charging current of 0.1 multiple of the total vehicle battery capacity (or lower) must be used until full charging is achieved.

It is necessary to disconnect both cables before charging the battery with high amperages, known as "**rapid charging**".

The vent plugs of the vehicle battery should not be opened for charging.

Replacing the vehicle battery
When replacing a battery, the new vehicle battery must have the same capacity, voltage, amperage and be the same size. Suitable vehicle battery types can be purchased from a specialist garage.

We recommend having the battery replaced by a specialist garage, where the new vehicle battery will be installed properly and the original battery will be disposed of in accordance with national regulations.

WARNING

"Quick-charging" the vehicle battery is **dangerous** and requires a special charger and specialist knowledge.

CAUTION

On vehicles with the START/STOP system, the pole terminal of the charger must not be connected directly to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery, but only to the engine earth » page 222, *Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system*.

Note

We therefore recommend that vehicle batteries be rapid charged by a specialist garage.

Disconnecting and reconnecting the vehicle battery

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 200.

On disconnecting and reconnecting the vehicle battery the following functions are initially deactivated or are no longer able to operate fault-free.

Operation	Operating measure
Electrical power window (operational faults)	» page 38
Panoramic sliding roof (operational faults)	» page 40

Operation	Operating measure
Enter the radio/navigation system code number	» *Radio operating instructions* or » *navigation system operating instructions*
Setting the clock	» page 11
Data in the multifunction display are deleted.	» page 12

Note

We recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist garage in order to ensure full functionality of all electrical systems.

Automatic load deactivation

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 200.

The vehicle voltage control unit automatically prevents the battery from discharging when the battery is put under high levels of strain. This manifests itself by the following:

› The idling speed is raised to allow the generator to deliver more electricity to the electrical system.
› Where necessary, large convenience consumers such as seat heaters and rear window heaters have their power limited or are shut off completely in the event of an emergency.

CAUTION

▪ Despite such intervention by the vehicle electric system management, the vehicle battery may be drained. For example, when the ignition is switched on a long time with the engine turned off or the side or parking lights are turned on during longer parking.
▪ Consumers that are supplied via a 12-V power socket can cause the vehicle battery to discharge when the ignition is switched off.

Note

Driving comfort is not impaired by consumers being deactivated. The driver is often not aware of it having taken place.

Wheels

Tyres and wheel rims

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Service life of tyres 206
New tyres 207
Unidirectional tyres 208
Tyre pressure monitor 208
Spare wheel 209
Full wheel trim 210
Wheel bolts 210
Hubcaps 211
Wheel bolts 211

WARNING

- The national legal regulations must be observed for the use of tyres.
- Observe the national legal regulations relating to the use of snow chains and the maximum vehicle speed with snow chains.

WARNING

The following instructions for the use of tyres must be observed.
- For the first 500 km, new tyres do not yet provide optimum grip, and appropriate care should therefore be taken when driving – risk of accident!
- Only use radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and tread pattern on all four wheels.
- For reasons of driving safety, do not replace tyres individually.
- Never exceed the maximum permissible *load bearing capacity* for the tyres fitted – there is a risk of an accident.
- Never exceed the maximum permissible *speed* for the tyres fitted – there is a risk of an accident.

WARNING (Continued)

- Incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear impairs handling – risk of accident!
- Unusual vibrations or pulling of the vehicle to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. If there is any doubt that a wheel is damaged, immediately reduce your speed and stop! If no external damage is evident, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest specialist garage to have the vehicle checked.
- Only use tyres or wheel rims that have been approved by ŠKODA for your model of vehicle. Failure to observe this instruction may impair the road safety of your vehicle – risk of accident!

WARNING

Observe the following information regarding tyre damage and wear.
- Never use tyres if you do not know anything about the condition and age.
- Never drive with damaged tyres – risk of accident!
- Immediately replace damaged wheel rims or tyres.
- You must have your tyres replaced with new ones at the latest when the wear indicators have been worn down.
- Worn tyres impair necessary adhesion to the road surface, particularly at high speeds on wet roads. This could lead to "aquaplaning" (uncontrolled vehicle movement – "swimming" on a wet road surface).

WARNING

Observe the following information regarding the tyre inflation pressure.
- The tyre control display does not absolve the driver of the responsibility to ensure the correct tyre inflation pressure. Check the tyre inflation pressure at regular intervals.
- Insufficient or excessive inflation pressure impairs handling – risk of accident!
- If the inflation pressure is too low, the tyre will have to overcome a higher rolling resistance. This will cause a significant increase in the temperature of the tyre, especially at higher speeds. This can result in tread separation and a tyre blowout.

WARNING

Observe the following information regarding the wheel bolts.
- The wheel bolts must be clean and must turn easily. Never apply grease or oil.
- The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts for steel and light alloy wheels is 120 Nm.
- If the wheel bolts are tightened to an insufficient tightening torque, the rims may come loose when the car is moving – risk of accident! A tightening torque which is too high can damage the bolts and threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rim.
- If the wheel bolts are handled incorrectly, the wheel may come loose when the car is moving – risk of accident!

WARNING

Observe the following information regarding the spare wheel.
- Only use the spare wheel for as long as is necessary.
- Never drive with more than one spare wheel attached.
- The snow chains cannot be used on the spare wheel.

CAUTION

- If a spare wheel is used that is not identical to the fitted tyres, the following must be observed » page 209, *Spare wheel*.
- Protect the tyres from contact with oil, grease and fuel.
- Replace lost valve caps.
- If, in the event of a puncture, it is necessary to fit a spare wheel with a tyre without a dedicated running direction or with the opposite direction of rotation, drive carefully as the optimal characteristics of the tyre are no longer applicable in this situation.

For the sake of the environment

Tyres that are insufficiently inflated increase your fuel consumption.

Note

- We recommend that any work on the wheels or tyres be carried out by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that you use wheel rims, tyres, full wheel trims and snow chains from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Service life of tyres

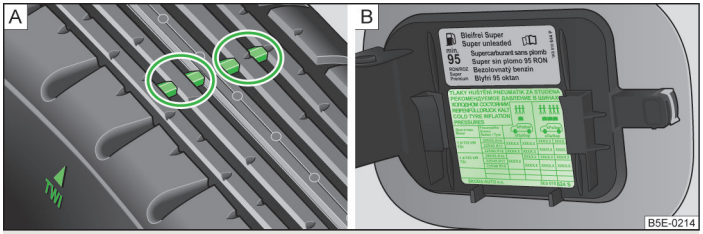

Fig. 160 **Principle sketch: Tyre tread with wear indicators/open fuel filler flap with a table detailing the tyre sizes and tyre inflation pressures**

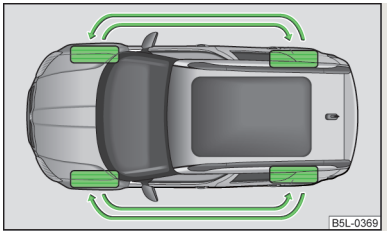

Fig. 161
Replacing wheels

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 205.

The service life of tyres depends on the inflation pressure, driving style and other circumstances. Following the advice below can extend the service life of your tyres.

Tyre pressure
Check the tyre pressure, including that of the spare wheel, at least once a month and also before setting off on a long journey.

The tyre pressures for **tyres** are shown on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 160 – B.

The tyre pressure for the spare wheel should correspond to the highest pressure specified for your vehicle.

Always check the inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres.

With greater additional load, adjust the tyre inflation pressure accordingly.

Driving style
Fast cornering, sharp acceleration and braking increase the wear of your tyres.

Balancing wheels
The wheels of a new vehicle are balanced. When driving, however, there are a range of factors that may result in an imbalance. This may become apparent by a vibration in the steering.

Have the wheels rebalanced after replacing the tyres.

Wheel alignment errors
Incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear leads to excess wear of the tyres.

Tyre damage
Drive over kerbs and other such obstacles slowly and at right angles wherever possible in order to avoid damage to tyres and wheel trims.

We recommend checking your tyres and wheel rims for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges, etc.) on a regular basis. Remove foreign bodies (e.g. small stones) from the tyre tread immediately.

Replacing wheels
If significantly greater wear is present on the front tyres, we recommend replacing the front wheels with the rear wheels as shown in the diagram » Fig. 161. You will then obtain approximately the same life for all the tyres.

We recommend that you swap the tyres every 10,000 km in order to achieve even wear on all tyres and to ensure optimal service life for the tyres.

Storing tyres
Identify disassembled tyres so that the previous direction of rotation can be maintained if the tyres are reassembled.

Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry place that is as dark as possible. Tyres which are not fixed to a wheel trim should be stored upright.

Wear indicators
The base of the tread of the tyres has 1.6 mm high wear indicators installed. These wear indicators are located multiple times depending on the make and are evenly spaced around the circumference of the tyre » Fig. 160 - A. Markings on the walls of the tyres through the letters "TWI", triangular symbols or other symbols identify the position of the wear indicators.

Tyre age
Tyres age and lose their original characteristics, even if they are not being used. Therefore, we recommend not using summer or winter tyres older than 6 or 4 years old respectively.

New tyres

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 205.

Only use radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and tread pattern on one axle on all four wheels.

The tyre/wheel combinations which are approved for your vehicle are indicated in your vehicle documents.

Where possible, replace tyres by axle. Always fit the tyres with the deeper tread depth to the front wheels.

Explanation of tyre markings
225/50R 17 91 T

What this means is:

225	Tyre width in mm » Fig. 160 on page 206 - B
50	Height/width ratio in % » Fig. 160 on page 206 - B
R	Code letter for the tyre construction – **R**adial » Fig. 160 on page 206 - B
17	Diameter of wheel in inches » Fig. 160 on page 206 - B
91	Load index » !
T	Speed symbol » !

The **date of manufacture** is stated on the tyre wall (possibly on the *inside*). e.g.

DOT ... 10 13...

means, for example, that the tyre was manufactured in the 10th week of 2013.

Load index

This indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre.

89 580 kg
91 615 kg
92 630 kg

93 650 kg
94 670 kg
95 690 kg
97 730 kg
99 775 kg

Speed symbol

This indicates the maximum permissible vehicle speed with fitted tyres in each category.

Q 160 km/h
R 170 km/h
S 180 km/h
T 190 km/h
U 200 km/h
H 210 km/h
V 240 km/h
W 270 km/h

CAUTION

The information about the load index and the speed symbol is listed in your vehicle documents.

Unidirectional tyres

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 205.

The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by **arrows on the wall of the tyre**.

The indicated direction of rotation must be adhered to in order to ensure the optimal characteristics of these tyres.

These characteristics mainly relate to the following:

✓ Increased driving stability.
✓ Reduced risk of aquaplaning.
✓ Reduced tyre noise and tyre wear.

Tyre pressure monitor



Fig. 162
Button for setting the tyre inflation pressure control value

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 205.

The tyre control display compares the speed and thus the rolling circumference of the individual wheels with the help of the ABS sensors. If the rolling circumference of a wheel is changed, the indicator light (!) in the instrument cluster » page 24, (!) *Tyre control display* and an audible signal sounds.

The rolling circumference of the tyre can change if:
› the tyre inflation pressure is too low;
› the structure of the tyre is damaged;
› the vehicle is loaded on one side;
› the wheels of an axle are loaded heavily (e.g. when towing a trailer or when driving uphill or downhill);
› snow chains are mounted;
› the temporary spare wheel is mounted;
› one wheel per axle was changed.

Basic setting of the system

After changing the tyre inflation pressure, after changing one or several wheels, the position of a wheel on the vehicle (e.g. exchanging the wheels between the axles) or when the indicator light lights up while driving, a basic setting of the system must be carried out as follows:
› Inflate all of the tyres to the specified inflation pressure » page 206, *Service life of tyres*.
› Switch on the ignition.

› Press and hold the SET (!) » Fig. 162 button for more than 2 seconds. While pressing the button, the indicator light (!) illuminates. At the same time the system memory is erased and the new calibration is started, which is confirmed with an audible signal and then the indicator light (!) goes out.
› If the indicator light (!) does not go out after the basic setting, this indicates a system fault. Seek help from a specialist garage.

The indicator light (!) is lit
If the tyre inflation pressure of at least one wheel is insufficiently inflated in comparison to the stored basic value, the indicator light (!) » ! lights up.

The indicator light (!) flashes
If the indicator light flashes, there is a system fault. Seek help from a specialist garage to correct the fault.

WARNING

- When the indicator light (!) illuminates, immediately reduce the speed and avoid sudden steering and brake manoeuvres. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and inspect the tyres and their inflation pressure.
- Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the (!) may light up after a delay, or not at all.

CAUTION

- The tyre control display does therefore not replace the regular tyre inflation pressure control, as the system cannot detect an even loss of pressure.
- The system cannot warn in case of very rapid tyre inflation pressure loss, e.g. in case of sudden tyre damage. In this case carefully bring the vehicle to a standstill without sudden steering movements or sharp braking.
- To ensure a proper functioning of the tyre control display, it is necessary to repeat the basic setting every 10000 km or once a year.

Spare wheel

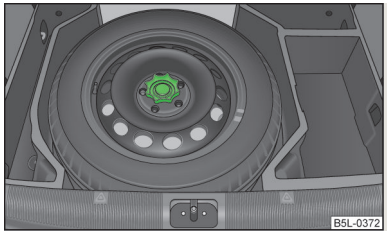

Fig. 163
Boot: Spare wheel

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 205.

The spare wheel is located in a well under the floor covering in the boot and is fixed in place with a special bolt » Fig. 163.

Before removing the spare wheel, the box containing the vehicle tool kit must be removed.

If the dimensions or design of the spare wheel differ from the tyres fitted to the vehicle (e.g. winter tyres or low-profile tyres), it must only be used briefly in the event of a puncture and if an appropriately cautious style of driving is adopted » !.

Fit a wheel in the appropriate dimensions and design as soon as possible.

Temporary spare wheel
A warning label is displayed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel.

Please note the following if you intend to use this wheel.
› The warning label must not be covered after installing the wheel.
› Be particularly observant when driving.
› The inflation pressure for the temporary spare wheel is identical to the maximum inflation pressure for the standard tyres.
› Only use this temporary spare wheel to reach the nearest specialist garage, as it is not intended for long-term use.

WARNING

- Never use the temporary spare wheel if it is damaged.
- If the dimensions or design of the temporary spare wheel differ from the fitted tyres, never drive faster than 80 km/h (or 50 mph).
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.

CAUTION

Observe the instructions on the warning label attached to the spare wheel.

Full wheel trim

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 205.

Pulling off

› Hook the clamp found in the vehicle tool kit into the reinforced edge of the wheel trim.
› Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Install

› Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening.
› Then press the trim into the wheel rim until its entire circumference locks correctly in place.

CAUTION

- Use the pressure of your hand only, do not strike the full wheel trim. Avoid heavy impacts when the trim has not yet been inserted into the wheel rim. This could cause damage to the guide and centring elements of the trim.
- Make sure that the anti-theft wheel bolt is mounted in the bore in the area near the valve » page 217, *Securing wheels against theft*.
- If **wheel trims** are retrofitted it must be ensured that an adequate flow of air is assured to cool the brake system.

Wheel bolts

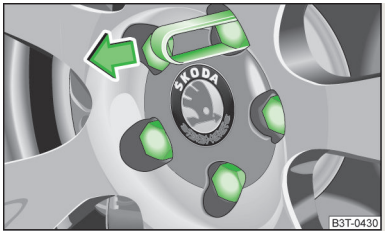

Fig. 164
Remove the cap

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 205.

Pulling off

› Push the extraction pliers sufficiently far onto the cap until the inner catches of the pliers are positioned at the collar of the cap » Fig. 164.
› Remove the cap.

Install

› Push the caps onto the wheel bolts up to the stop.

The wheel bolt caps are housed in a plastic box in the spare wheel or in the storage space for the spare wheel.

Hubcaps

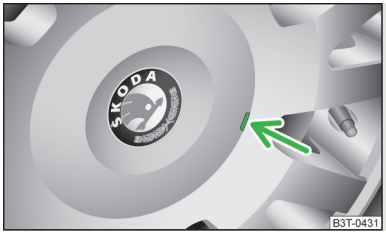

Fig. 165
Pull off the wheel trim cap on light alloy wheels

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 205.

Pulling off

› Carefully remove the wheel trim cap using the wire clamp from the vehicle tool kit » Fig. 165.

Wheel bolts

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 205.

Wheels and **wheel bolts** are matched to each other in terms of design. Each time you fit other wheels rims, e.g. light alloy wheel rims or wheels with winter tyres, you must also use the matching wheel bolts with the correct length and dome shape. This is essential to ensure that the wheels are tightly fitted and that the brake system operates properly.

Winter operation

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Winter tyres 211
Snow chains 211

Winter tyres

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 211.

Fitting winter tyres will significantly improve the handling of your vehicle when driving in wintry road conditions. Summer tyres have less grip on ice, snow and at temperatures below 7 °C. This is especially true of vehicles fitted with **wide tyres** or **high-speed tyres**.

In order to achieve the best possible handling properties, winter tyres must be fitted on all 4 wheels, the minimum tread depth must be 4 mm and tyres must be no older than 4 years.

Winter tyres of a lower speed category can be used provided that the permissible maximum speed of these tyres is not exceeded even if the possible maximum speed of the vehicle is higher.

For the sake of the environment

Fit the summer tyres on again in good time as they provide better handling properties, a shorter braking distance, less tyre noise, and reduced tyre wear on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as at temperatures above 7 °C. The fuel consumption is also lower.

Snow chains

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 211.

When driving in wintry road conditions, snow chains improve not only traction, but also the braking performance.

Snow chains must only be mounted on the front wheels.

Valid for vehicles with front-wheel drive

For technical reasons, it is only permissible to fit snow chains with the following wheel/tyre combinations.

Wheel size	Depth (D)	Tyre size
6J x 16	50 mm	205/55
7J x 16	45 mm	205/55
6J x 17	45 mm	205/50

Valid for vehicles with four-wheel drive
Snow chains can be used on the front wheels as on vehicles with front-wheel drive » page 211, *Valid for vehicles with front-wheel drive*.

In order to increase the traction (start-up properties), the use of snow chains is also technically permissible on the rear axle (this means on the front and rear axle at the same time) for the following wheel/tyre combinations.

Wheel size	Depth (D)	Tyre size
6J x 16	50 mm	205/55
7J x 16	45 mm	205/55
6J x 17	45 mm	205/50

The use of snow chains is only technically permissible on the rear axle for the following standard wheel/tyre combinations.

Wheel size	Depth (D)	Tyre size
7J x 16	45 mm	215/60
7J x 17	45 mm	225/50

When fitting snow chains on the front and rear axle at the same time, the maximum speed is limited to **50 km/h**.

Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than **12 mm**.

Remove the **full wheel trims** before installing the snow chains.

! CAUTION

The chains must be removed when driving on roads which are free of snow. They adversely affect the handling of your vehicle, damage the tyres and are rapidly destroyed.

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment and self-help

Emergency equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

First-aid kit and warning triangle ____ 213
Fire extinguisher ____ 213
Vehicle tool kit ____ 214

First-aid kit and warning triangle

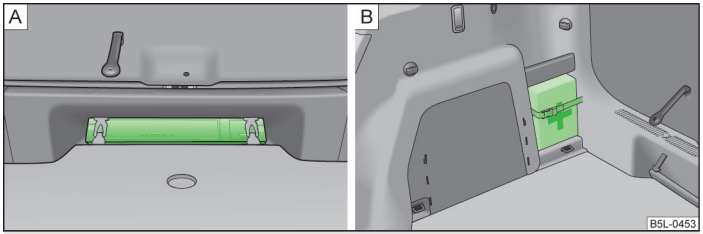

Fig. 166 **Accommodation of the warning triangle/accommodation of the first-aid box**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 213.

The warning triangle can be attached to the rear wall trim panel with rubber straps » Fig. 166 - A.

The warning triangle, which is included in the equipment with the spare wheel, can be stowed in a removable box on the right next to the spare wheel » page 71.

The first-aid box is attached by a strap to the right-hand side of the boot » Fig. 166 - B.

WARNING

The first-aid kit and warning triangle must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

Note

- Pay attention to the expiration date of the first-aid kit.
- We recommend using a first-aid kit from ŠKODA Original Accessories, which are available from a ŠKODA Partner.

Fire extinguisher

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 213.

The fire extinguisher is attached with straps in a holder under the driver seat.

Please read carefully the instructions which are attached to the fire extinguisher.

The fire extinguisher must be checked by an authorised person on an annual basis (the national legal provisions must be observed).

WARNING

The fire extinguisher must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

Note

- The fire extinguisher must comply with the relevant applicable national legal requirements.
- Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. If the fire extinguisher is used after the expiration date, its proper function is no longer assured.
- The fire extinguisher is part of the scope of delivery in certain countries only.

Vehicle tool kit

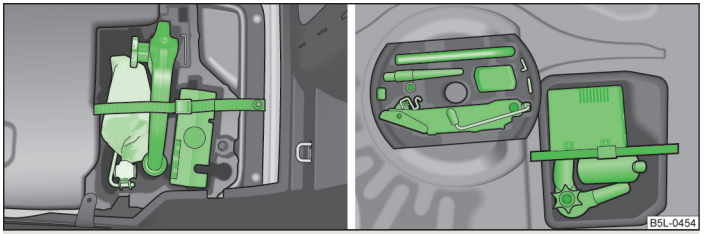

Fig. 167 **Boot: Example for placing the vehicle tool kit**

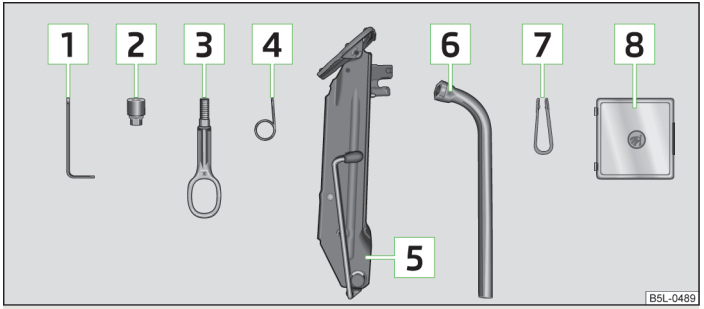

Fig. 168 **Vehicle tool kit**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 213.

The vehicle tool kit and the lifting jack, on which a sign is affixed, are stowed in a box in the boot » Fig. 167; there is also space here for the detachable ball head of the towing device. The box is secured with a strap. The placement of the vehicle tool kit can vary depending on the vehicle equipment.

The components of the vehicle tool kit (if included in the vehicle) » Fig. 168.

1 Torx wrench/flat screwdriver
2 Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts
3 Towing eye
4 Wire tool for removing the full wheel trims
5 Car jack
6 Wheel wrench
7 Extraction pliers for wheel bolt caps
8 Replacement bulb set

Screw the jack arm fully back into its home position after use to allow you to store it in the box with the vehicle tool kit.

WARNING

- The factory-supplied lifting jack is only intended for your model of vehicle. Under no circumstances use it to lift heavier vehicles or other loads – risk of injury!
- Ensure that the vehicle tool kit is safely secured in the boot.
- Ensure that the box is always secured with the strap.

Changing a wheel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Preliminary tasks 215
Changing a wheel 215
Follow-up tasks 216
Loosening and tightening wheel bolts 216
Raising the vehicle 217
Securing wheels against theft 217

WARNING

- If you are in flowing traffic, switch on the hazard warning light system and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance! The national legal requirements must be observed. In this way you are not only protecting yourself but other road users as well.
- If the wheel is damaged or in the event of a puncture, park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic. Park on as flat and firm a surface as possible.
- If the wheel has to be changed on a slope, first of all block the opposite wheel with a stone or similar object to prevent the vehicle from unexpectedly rolling away.
- If the vehicle is subsequently fitted with tyres which are different to those it was fitted with at the works, follow these guidelines » page 207, *New tyres*.
- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Never position any body parts, such as arms or legs under the vehicle, while the vehicle is raised with a lifting jack.
- Secure the base plate of the lifting jack with suitable means to prevent possible moving. A soft and slippery ground under the base plate may move the lifting jack, causing the vehicle to fall down. It is therefore always necessary to place the lifting jack on a solid surface or use a wide and stable base. Use a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber foot mat) if the **surface is smooth**, such as cobbled stones, tiled floor, etc.
- Never start the engine with the vehicle sitting on the raised jack - danger of suffering injury.
- Only attach the lifting jack to the attachment points provided for this purpose.

CAUTION

- The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts for steel and light alloy wheels is 120 Nm.
- If the anti-theft wheel bolt is fastened too tightly, it can cause damage to the anti-theft wheel bolt and adapter.

Note

- The anti-theft wheel bolt set and adapter can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.
- The national legal requirements must be observed when changing a wheel.

Preliminary tasks

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 214.

The following steps must be carried out before actually changing the wheel:

› In the event of a puncture, park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic. The place you choose should be **level**.
› Let **all of the occupants get out.** While changing a tyre, the occupants of the vehicle should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier).
› Switch off the engine and move the gearshift lever into **Neutral** or move the **selector lever** for the automatic gearbox **into position P**.
› Firmly apply the **handbrake**.
› If a trailer is connected, remove it.
› Remove the **vehicle tool kit** » page 214 and the **spare wheel** » page 209 from the boot.

Changing a wheel

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 214.

Always change a wheel on a level surface as far as possible.

› Remove the full wheel trim » page 210 or caps » page 210.
› In the case of light alloy wheel rims remove the wheel trim cap » page 211.
› First of all slacken the anti-theft wheel bolt and then the other wheel bolts » page 217.
› Jack up the vehicle until the wheel that needs changing is clear of the ground » page 217.
› Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.).
› Remove the wheel.
› Attach the spare wheel and slightly screw on the wheel bolts.
› Lower the vehicle.
› Alternately tighten the wheel bolts opposite each other using the wheel wrench (crosswise) and then tighten the anti-theft wheel bolt » page 217.
› Reinstall the wheel trim/wheel trim cap or the caps.

Note

- All bolts must be clean and must turn easily.
- Under no circumstances grease or oil the wheel bolts!
- When fitting unidirectional tyres, ensure that the direction of rotation is correct » page 205.

Follow-up tasks

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 214.

The following steps must also be performed after changing the wheel.

› Stow and attach the replaced wheel in the spare wheel well using a special screw » page 209.
› Stow the vehicle tool kit in the space provided.
› **Check** the **tyre pressure** on the installed spare wheel as soon as possible.
› Have the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts **checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible.
› Replace the damaged wheel or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

Note

- If it is determined that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn when changing the wheel, the bolts must be replaced before checking the tightening torque.
- Drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed until the tightening torque has been checked.

Loosening and tightening wheel bolts

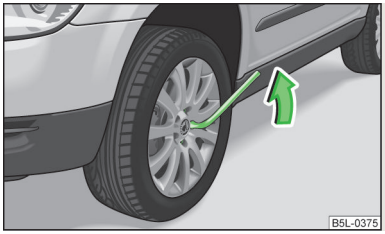

Fig. 169
Changing a wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 214.

Loosening

› Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt up to the stop[1].
› Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt about **one** turn to the left » Fig. 169.

Tightening

› Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt up to the stop[1].
› Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt to the right until it is tight.

WARNING

Undo the wheel bolts only a little (about one turn) as long as the vehicle has not yet been jacked up - risk of an accident!

Note

If it proves difficult to undo the bolts, carefully apply pressure to the end of the wrench with your **foodt**. Keep hold of the vehicle when doing so, and make sure you keep your footing.

[1] Use the appropriate adapter for undoing and tightening the anti-theft wheel bolts » page 217.

Raising the vehicle

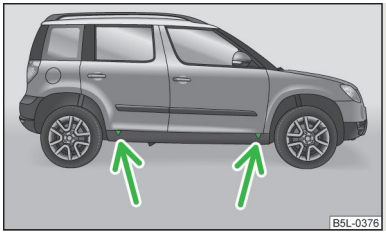

Fig. 170
Changing a wheel: Jacking points for positioning lifting jack

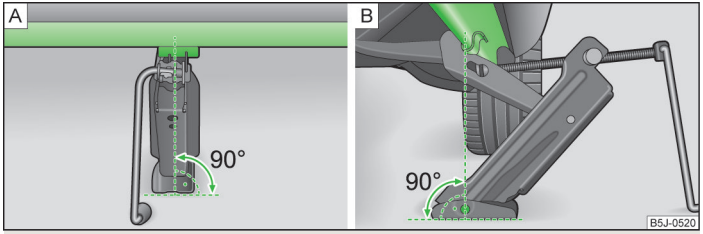

Fig. 171 **Attach lifting jack**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 214.

Position the lifting jack by selecting the jacking point that is closest to the faulty wheel » Fig. 170. The jacking point is located directly below the marking on the plastic cover of the lower sill.

- Position the lifting jack below the jacking point and move it up until its claw is positioned directly below the vertical web of the lower sill.
- Align the lifting jack so that its claw grasps the web » Fig. 171 - B under the marking.
- Ensure that the entire surface of the lifting jack base plate rests on level ground and is located in a vertical position to the area » Fig. 171 where the claw grasps the web.
- Continue turning up the jack until the wheel is just about lifted off the ground.

Securing wheels against theft

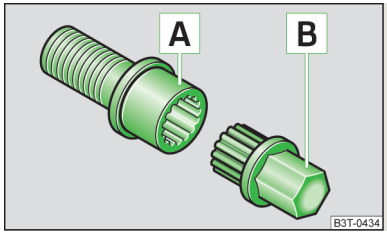

Fig. 172
Principle sketch: Anti-theft wheel bolt with adapter

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 214.

The anti-theft wheel bolts on vehicles fitted with them (one anti-theft wheel bolt per wheel) can only be loosened or tighten up by using the adapter provided.

- Pull off the full wheel trim from the wheel rim or the cap from the anti-theft wheel bolt.
- Insert the adapter B » Fig. 172 with its toothed side fully into the inner toothing of the safety wheel bolt A until the stop so that only the outer hexagon is jutting out.
- Push the wheel wrench onto the adapter B up to the stop.
- Loosen or tighten the wheel bolt » page 216.
- After removing the adapter, reinstall the full wheel trim or place the cap onto the anti-theft wheel bolt.
- Have the **tightening torque checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

It is advisable to make a note of the code number hammered into the rear side of the adapter or the rear side of the anti-theft wheel bolt. This number can be used to purchase a replacement adapter from ŠKODA Original Parts if necessary.

We recommend that you always carry the adapter for the wheel bolts with you in the vehicle. It should be stowed in the vehicle tool kit.

Breakdown kit

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Breakdown kit ____ 219
Preparations for using the breakdown kit ____ 219
Sealing and inflating the tyre ____ 219
Check after 10 minutes' driving ____ 220

The breakdown kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the boot.

Use the breakdown kit to reliably repair tyre damage caused by foreign bodies or a puncture with diameters up to approx. 4 mm. Do not remove foreign bodies, e.g. screws or nails, from the tyre!

The repair can be undertaken on the vehicle immediately.

Repairs using the breakdown kit **do not in any way replace** a permanent tyre repair; they are only intended for reaching the closest specialist garage.

The breakdown kit must not be used under the following circumstances:
› if there is damage to the wheels;
› in outside temperatures of less than -20 °C;
› with tears or punctures greater than 4 mm in size;
› if there is damage to the tyre wall;
› when driving with very low tyre pressure or with a completely flat tyre;
› if the use-by-date (see inflation bottle) has passed.

WARNING

- If you are in flowing traffic, switch on the hazard warning light system and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance! The national legal requirements must be observed. In this way you are not only protecting yourself but other road users as well.
- If the wheel is damaged or in the event of a puncture, park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic. Park on as flat and firm a surface as possible.
- A tyre filled with sealant has the same driving characteristics as a standard tyre.

WARNING (Continued)

- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.
- Check the tyre inflation pressure after driving for 10 minutes!
- The sealant is hazardous to heath. Remove immediately if it comes into contact with the skin.

For the sake of the environment

Used sealant or sealant whose expiry date has passed must be disposed of in accordance with environmental protection regulations.

Note

- Observe the manufacturer's usage instructions for the breakdown kit.
- A new bottle of sealant can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- Immediately replace the tyre that was repaired using the breakdown kit, or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

Breakdown kit

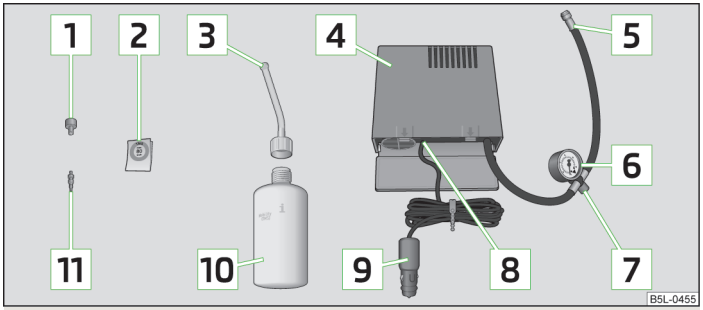

Fig. 173 **Components of the breakdown kit**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 218.

The breakdown kit contains the following parts:

1 Valve remover
2 Sticker with speed designation "max. 80 km/h"/"max. 50 mph"
3 Inflation hose with plug
4 Air compressor
5 Tyre inflation hose
6 Tyre inflation pressure indicator
7 Air release valve
8 ON and OFF switch
9 12 volt cable connector
10 Tyre inflator bottle with sealing agent
11 Replacement valve core

The valve remover 1 has a slot at its lower end which fits into the valve core. This is the only way in which you can remove and re-install the valve core from the tyre valve. The same also applies to the replacement valve core 11.

Preparations for using the breakdown kit

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 218.

The following preparatory work must be carried out before using the breakdown kit.

› In the event of a puncture, park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic. Park on as flat and firm a surface as possible.
› Let **all of the occupants get out.** While changing a tyre, the occupants of the vehicle should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier).
› Switch off the engine and move the gearshift lever into **Neutral** or move the **selector lever** for the automatic gearbox **into position P**.
› Firmly apply the **handbrake**.
› Check that you can carry out the repairs with the breakdown kit » page 218.
› If a trailer is connected, remove it.
› Remove the **breakdown kit** from the boot.
› Stick the sticker 2 » Fig. 173 on page 219 on the dash panel in view of the driver.
› Do not remove the foreign body, e.g. screw or nail, from the tyre.
› Unscrew the valve cap.
› Use the valve remover 1 to unscrew the valve core and place it on a clean surface (rag, paper, etc.).

Sealing and inflating the tyre

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 218.

Sealing

› Forcefully shake the tyre inflator bottle 10 » Fig. 173 on page 219 several times.
› Firmly screw the inflation hose 3 onto the tyre inflator bottle 10 in a clockwise direction. The film on the cap is pierced automatically.
› Remove the plug from the inflation hose 3 and plug the open end fully onto the tyre valve.
› Hold the bottle 10 with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent from the tyre inflator bottle into the tyre.
› Remove the empty tyre inflator bottle from the valve.
› Screw the valve core back into the tyre valve using the valve remover 1.

Inflating

› Screw the tyre inflation hose 5 » Fig. 173 on page 219 of the air compressor firmly onto the tyre valve.
› Check that the air release valve 7 is closed.
› Start the engine and run it in idle.
› Plug connector 9 into the 12 volt socket » page 82.
› Switch on the air compressor with the ON and OFF switch 8.
› Allow the air compressor to run until a pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar is achieved. Maximum run time of 8 minutes » !
› Switch off the air compressor.
› If you cannot reach an air pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar, unscrew the tyre inflation hose 5 from the tyre valve.
› Drive the vehicle 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to "distribute" in the tyre.
› Firmly screw the tyre inflation hose 5 back onto the tyre valve and repeat the inflation process.
› If you cannot reach the required tyre inflation pressure here either, this means the tyre has sustained too much damage. You cannot seal with tyre with the breakdown kit » .
› Switch off the air compressor.
› Remove the tyre inflation hose 5 from the tyre valve.

Once a tyre inflation pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar is achieved, continue the journey at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

Check the tyre inflation pressure after driving for 10 minutes » page 220, *Check after 10 minutes' driving*.

WARNING

- During inflation, the tyre inflation hose and air compressor may get hot- risk of injury!
- Do not place the hot tyre inflation hose or hot air compressor on flammable materials - risk of fire!
- If you cannot inflate the tyre to at least 2.0 bar, this means the damage sustained was too serious. The sealing agent cannot be used to seal the tyre. Do not drive the vehicle. Get professional assistance!

CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor after running 8 minutes at the latest - danger of overheating! Allow the air compressor to cool a few minutes before switching it on again.

Check after 10 minutes' driving

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 218.

Check the tyre inflation pressure after driving for 10 minutes!

If the tyre inflation pressure is 1.3 bar or less:

› **Do not drive the vehicle!** You cannot properly seal with tyre with the breakdown kit.
› Get professional assistance.

If the tyre inflation pressure is 1.3 bar or more:

› Adjust the tyre inflation pressure to the correct value (see inside of fuel filler cap).
› Continue driving carefully to the nearest specialist garage at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

Jump-starting

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Jump-starting 221
Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system 222

The battery of another vehicle can be used to jump-start your vehicle if the engine will not start because the battery is flat. Jump-start cables are required for this purpose.

Both batteries must have a rated voltage of 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the battery supplying the power must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged battery in your vehicle.

Jump-start cables

Only use jump-start cables which have an adequately large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps. Observe the manufacturer's instructions.

Positive cable - colour coding in the majority of cases is red.

Negative cable - colour coding in the majority of cases is black.

WARNING

- A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C. In case of frozen battery carry out no jump-starting - risk of explosion!
- Pay attention to the warning instructions relating to working in the engine compartment » page 192, *Engine compartment*.
- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never make contact with each other. In addition, the jump-start cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle - risk of short circuit!
- Do not clamp the jump-start cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. There is the risk of detonating gas seeping out the battery being ignited by the strong spark which results from the engine being started.
- Route the jump-start cables so that they cannot be caught by any rotating parts in the engine compartment.
- Do not bend over the battery - risk of caustic burns!
- The vent screws of the battery cells must be tightened firmly.
- Keep any sources of ignition (naked flame, smouldering cigarettes, etc.) away from the battery - risk of an explosion!
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an electrolyte level that is too low - risk of explosion and caustic burns.

Note

- There must not be any contact between the two vehicles otherwise current may flow as soon as the negative terminals are connected.
- The discharged battery must be properly connected to the system of the vehicle.
- We recommend you buy jump-start cables from a car battery specialist.

Jump-starting

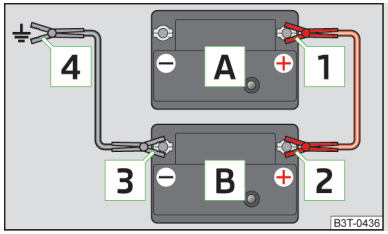

Fig. 174
Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle: A - flat vehicle battery, B - battery providing current

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 220.

The jump-start cables must be attached in the following sequence:

Connecting positive terminals

› Attach one end 1 » Fig. 174 to the positive terminal of the discharged battery A.
› Attach the other end 2 to the positive terminal of the battery supplying the power B.

Connecting negative terminal and engine block

› Attach one end 3 » Fig. 174 to the negative terminal of the battery supplying the power B.
› Attach the other end 4 to a solid metal part which is connected firmly to the engine block, or to the engine block itself.

Starting engine

› Start the engine on the vehicle providing the power and allow it to idle.
› Now start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
› If the engine does not start, terminate the attempt to start the engine after 10 seconds and wait for about 30 seconds before repeating the process.
› Disconnect the cables in exactly the **reverse order** to the one described above.

Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system

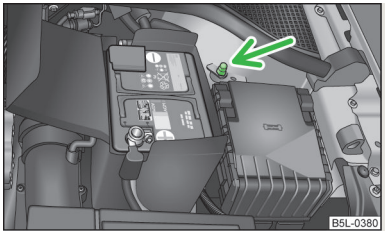

Fig. 175
Jump-starting - START-STOP system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 220.

On vehicles with the START-STOP system, the jump-start cable of the charger must never be connected directly to the negative pole of the vehicle battery, but only to the engine earth » Fig. 175.

Towing the vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front towing eye 223
Rear towing eye 223
Vehicles a towing device 224

Vehicles with manual transmission can be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front or rear wheels raised.

Vehicles with automatic transmission can be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front wheels raised. If the vehicle is raised at rear, the automatic gearbox is damaged!

A **tow bar** is the safest way of towing a vehicle and also minimises any shocks. Only use a **tow rope** if a suitable tow bar is not available.

When towing, the following guidelines must be observed.

Driver of the tow vehicle

› Release the clutch particularly gently when starting off or depress the accelerator particularly gently if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.
› On vehicles with a manual transmission, only push down on the accelerator pedal once the rope is taught.

The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**.

Driver of the towed vehicle

› Switch on the ignition so that the steering wheel is not blocked and so that the turn signal lights, horn, windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system can be switched on.
› Take the vehicle out of gear or move the selector lever into position **N** if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.

Please note that the brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running. If the engine is not running, significantly more physical force is required to depress the brake pedal and steer the vehicle.

If using a tow rope, ensure that it is always kept taught.

! CAUTION

▪ Do not tow start the engine - danger of damaging the engine! On vehicles with a catalytic converter, unburnt fuel may get into the catalytic converter where it may ignite. This in turn may damage or destroy the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 220, *Jump-starting*.
▪ If the gearbox of your vehicle no longer contains any oil because of a defect, your vehicle must only be towed in with the driven wheels raised clear of the ground, or on a special vehicle transporter or trailer.
▪ The vehicle must be transported on a special vehicle or trailer if it is not possible to tow in the vehicle in the way described or if the towing distance is greater than 50 km.
▪ To protect both vehicles when tow-starting or towing, the tow rope should be elastic. Thus one should only use plastic fibre rope or a rope made out of a similarly elastic material.
▪ One should be constantly vigilant not to allow impermissibly high towing forces or jerky loadings. There is always a risk of excessive stresses and damage resulting at the points to which you attach the tow rope or tow bar when you attempt to tow a vehicle which is not standing on a paved road.
▪ Attach the tow rope or the tow bar to the **towing eyes** or to the **detachable ball head of the towing device** » page 223 or » page 223.

Note

- We recommend using a tow rope from ŠKODA Original Accessories, which is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Towing another vehicle requires a certain amount of practice. Both drivers should be familiar with the particular points about towing a vehicle. Unskilled drivers should not attempt to tow in another vehicle or to be towed in.
- When towing, respect the national legal provisions, especially those which relate to the identification of the towing vehicle and the vehicle being towed.
- The tow rope must not be twisted as it may in certain circumstances result in the front towing eye being unscrewed out of your vehicle.

Front towing eye

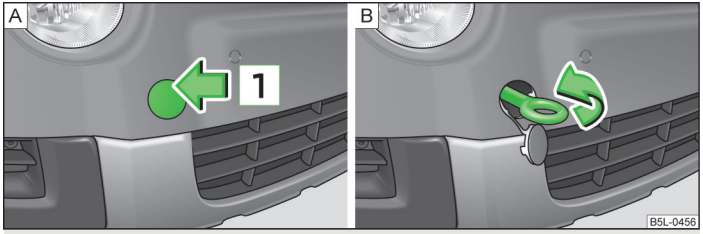

Fig. 176 **Front bumper: Removing the cap/installing the towing eye**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 222.

Removing and installing the cap

› Press on the upper half of the cover in direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 176 - A.
› Remove the cap from the front bumper.
› After unscrewing the towing eye, put the cap on and press into place. The cap must engage firmly.

Installing the towing eye

› Screw in the towing eye by turning to the left up to the stop » Fig. 176 - B and tighten as much as possible.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

CAUTION

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

Rear towing eye

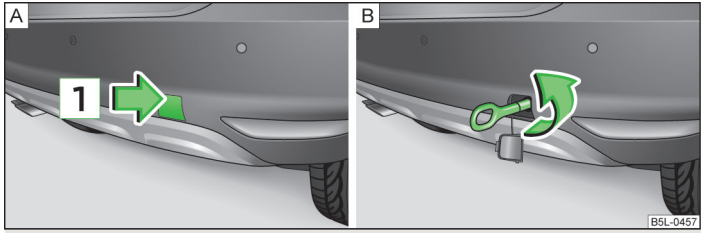

Fig. 177 **Rear bumper: Removing the cap/installing the towing eye**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 222.

Removing and installing the cap

› Press on the upper half of the cover in direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 177.
› Remove the cap from the rear bumper » Fig. 177 - A.
› After unscrewing the towing eye, put the cap on and press into place. The cap must engage firmly.

Installing the towing eye

› Screw in the towing eye by turning to the left up to the stop » Fig. 177 - B and tighten as much as possible.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

On vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, there is no mount for the screw-in towing eye behind the cap » page 224, *Vehicles a towing device*.

CAUTION

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

Vehicles a towing device

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 222.

On vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, there is no mount for the screw-in towing eye behind the cap.

Use the detachable ball rod for towing purposes - for the installation of the detachable ball rod, refer to the operating instructions for the towing device.

Towing the vehicle using the towing device is a viable alternative solution to using the towing eye.

If the towing device is removed completely, it must be replaced with the standard reinforcement of the rear bumper which is part of the mount for the towing eye.

If this procedure is not observed, the vehicle may not meet the national legal provisions.

CAUTION

The detachable ball rod and the vehicle can be damaged if an unsuitable tow bar is used.

Note

The detachable ball rod must always be in the vehicle so that it can be used for towing, if necessary.

Fuses and light bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fuses in the dash panel ____ 226
Fuses in the engine compartment ____ 227

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses.

› Before replacing a fuse, switch off the ignition and the appropriate consumer
› Find out which fuse belongs to the component that is not operating » page 226, *Fuses in the dash panel* or » page 227, *Fuses in the engine compartment*.
› Take the plastic clip out of its fixture in the cover of the fuse box, place it on the relevant fuse and pull it out.
› A blown fuses is recognisable by the molten metal strip. Replace the faulty fuse with a new one of the **same** amperage.

Colour coding of fuses

Colour	Maximum amperage
light brown	5
dark brown	7.5
red	10
blue	15
yellow	20
white	25
green	30
orange	40
red	50

WARNING

Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 192, *Engine compartment*.

CAUTION

- Never "repair" fuses and also do not replace them with a fuse of a higher amperage - risk of fire! This may also cause damage at another part of the electrical system.
- If a newly inserted fuse blows again after a short time, have the electrical system checked as quickly as possible by a specialist garage.
- When unlocking and locking the cover for the fuse box in the engine compartment, it must be pressed on the sides of the box, otherwise the locking mechanism can be damaged.
- The cover for the fuse box in the engine compartment must always be applied correctly. Water can penetrate and cause damage to the vehicle if the cover was not applied correctly!

Note

- We recommend always carrying replacement fuses in the vehicle. A box of replacement fuses can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- There can be several power consuming devices for one fuse.
- There can be several consumer devices for one fuse, depending on the vehicle's equipment.
- Multiple fuses may exist for a single power consuming device.
- Multiple power consuming devices can share a single fuse.
- Electrically adjustable seats are protected by **automatic circuit breakers**, which switch on again automatically after a few seconds after the overload has been eliminated.

Fuses in the dash panel

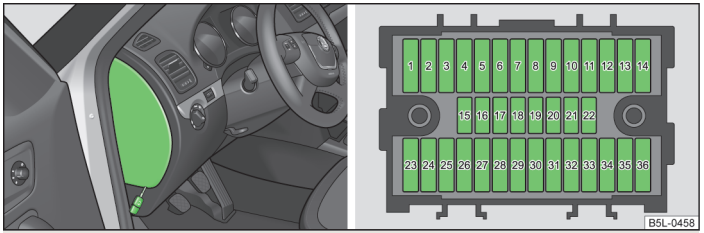

Fig. 178 **Fuse box cover in the dash panel/schematic diagram of the fuse box**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 225.

The fuses are located on the left side of the dash panel behind a cover.

› Remove the cover for the fuse box using the key to the ignition » Fig. 178.
› Replace the cover once the fuse has been changed.

Fuse assignment in the dash panel

No.	Power consumer
1	Heating of the gearbox ventilation (diesel engine) Control unit for automatic gearbox DSG
2-3	Towing device
4	Instrument cluster, windshield wiper lever, turn signal light lever, camera
5	Air blower for heating, radiator fan, air conditioning system, Climatronic
6	Rear window wiper
7	Phone
8	Towing device
9	Vehicle voltage control unit - interior lights Rear fog light
10	Rain sensor, light switch, diagnostic socket
11	Left side cornering lights
12	Right side cornering lights
13	Radio, changer for mobile navigation
14	Towing device
15	Light switch
16	Haldex
17	Control unit for headlamp beam adjustment and headlight swivel
18	Diagnostic socket, engine control unit, brake sensor
19	Control unit for ABS, ESP, switch for tyre air pressure control, control unit for parking aid, switch for OFF ROAD mode, START STOP button
20	Switch and airbag control unit
21	WIV, tail light, dimming mirrors, pressure sensor, telephone preinstallation, air mass meter
22	Instrument cluster, control unit for electromechanical power steering
23	Central locking system and bonnet lid
24	Rear power window
25	Rear window heater, auxiliary heating and ventilation
26	Power socket in the boot
27	Electric sliding/tilting roof, electric sun screen
28	Fuel pump, injection valves
29	Front power window
30	front and rear lighter
31	Headlight cleaning system
32	Front seat heating, regulator for seat heating
33	Heating, air conditioning, Climatronic, remote control for auxiliary heating
34	Alarm, spare horn
35	Control unit for automatic gearbox DSG
36	DVD

Fuses in the engine compartment

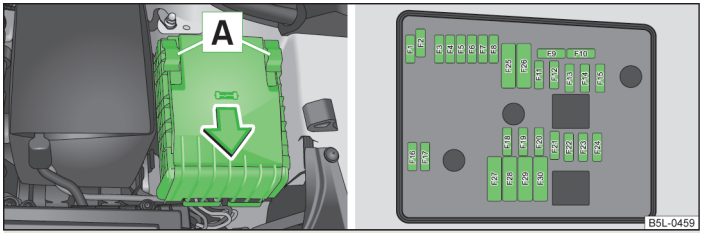

Fig. 179 **Fuse box cover in engine compartment/Schematic diagram of the fuse box**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 225.

On some vehicles, the battery cover must be removed before removing the cover for the fuse box » page 202.

› The cover for the fuse box is removed by pushing the circlips A » Fig. 179 upwards as far as the stop. The symbol is displayed behind the clip. Now remove the cover.
› Once the fuse has been removed, place the cover on the fuse box and push the circlips A back as far as the stop. The symbol is displayed behind the clip. The cover is locked into position.

Fuse assignment in engine compartment

No.	Power consumer
F1	Not assigned
F2	Control unit for automatic gearbox
F3	Measuring circuit
F4	ABS control unit
F5	Control unit for automatic gearbox
F6	Instrument cluster, windscreen wiper lever, and turn signal lever
F7	Power supply terminal 15, Starter
F8	Radio
F9	Phone
F10	Engine control unit
F11	Auxiliary heating and ventilation control unit
F12	Data bus control unit
F13	Engine control unit
F14	Ignition
F15	Lambda probe, fuel pump relay Glow plug system
F16	Vehicle voltage control unit, right headlight, right tail light
F17	Horn
F18	Amplifier for digital sound processor
F19	Windscreen wipers
F20	Control valve for fuel pressure
F21	Lambda probe
F22	Clutch pedal switch, brake pedal switch
F23	Coolant pump Charge pressure control solenoid valve, changeover valve for radiator Fuel high pressure pump
F24	Active charcoal filter, exhaust gas recirculation valve, radiator fan
F25	ABS control unit
F26	Vehicle voltage control unit, left headlight, left tail light
F27	Glow Plug System
F28	Windscreen heater
F29	Power supply of the interior
F30	Terminal X[a)]

[a)] In order not to drain the battery unnecessarily when starting the engine, the electrical components of this terminal are automatically switched off.

Bulbs

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Headlights 229
High and low beams 229
Foglights and daytime running lights 230
Replacing the bulb for the licence plate light 230
Tail light 231

Some manual skills are required to change a bulb. For this reason, we recommend having bulbs replaced by a specialist garage or seeking other expert help in the event of any uncertainties.

› Switch off the ignition and all of the lights before replacing a bulb.
› Faulty bulbs must only be replaced with the same type of bulbs. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.
› A stowage compartment for replacement bulbs is located in a plastic box in the spare wheel or underneath the floor covering in the boot.

WARNING

- Accidents can be caused if the road in front of the vehicle is not sufficiently illuminated and the vehicle cannot or can only be seen with difficulty by other road users.
- Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 192, *Engine compartment*.
- Bulbs H7 and H4 are pressurised and may burst when changed - there is a risk of injury. We therefore recommended wearing gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.
- Gas discharge bulbs (xenon bulbs) operate with a high voltage, professional knowledge is required – risk of death!

CAUTION

- Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, napkin, or similar.
- When removing and installing the number plate light and tail light make sure that the paintwork of the vehicle and the tail light are not damaged.

Note

- This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is possible to replace the bulbs on your own without any complications arising. Other bulbs must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that a box of replacement bulbs always be carried in the vehicle. Replacement bulbs can be purchased from ŠKODAOriginal Accessories.
- In order to facilitate the removal of the fixture with the bulb for the tail light (halogen headlight), we recommend to remove first of all the connector of the bulb for the low beam light.
- We recommend having the headlight settings checked by a specialist garage after replacing a bulb in the main or low beam.
- Gas discharge bulbs and LED diodes are replaced by a specialist garage.

Headlights

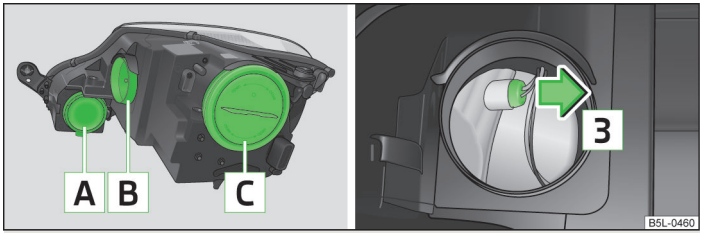

Fig. 180 **Headlights: Removing the bulb arrangement/fixture for the parking light (Xenon headlight)**

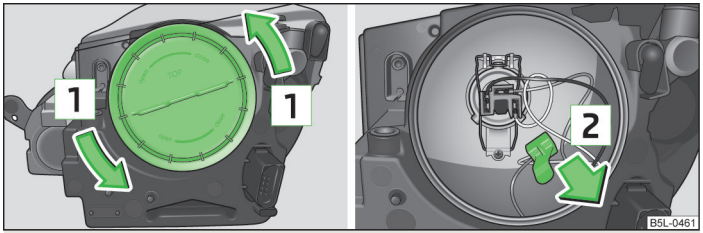

Fig. 181 **Removing the bulb arrangement/fixture for the parking light (Halogen headlight)**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 228.

Overview of the location of the bulbs » Fig. 180.

A - Fog lights and daytime running lights

B - Parking lights (Xenon headlight)

C - Parking lights (halogen headlight), low beam lights and main beam lights

Replacing the bulb for the side light (Halogen headlights)

› Turn the rubber cover in the direction of arrow 1 **OPEN** » Fig. 181 and remove.
› Remove the fixture in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 181.
› Remove the faulty bulb from the holder and insert a new one.
› Insert the rubber cover.

Replacing the bulb for the side light (Xenon headlights)

› Remove the rubber cover B » Fig. 180.
› Remove the fixture in the direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 180.
› Remove the faulty bulb from the holder and insert a new one.
› Insert the rubber cover.

High and low beams

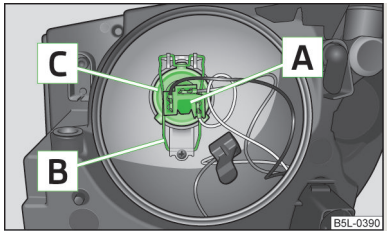

Fig. 182 **Removing the light bulb for main beam light and low beam light**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 228.

Change light bulb for main beam light and low beam light

› Turn the rubber cover in the direction of arrow 1 **OPEN** » Fig. 181 on page 229 and remove.
› Disconnect plug A » Fig. 182.
› Press the circlips B down until they are released from the secured position.
› Remove the light bulb C and insert a new light bulb in such a way that the fixing lugs of the light bulb socket fit into the recesses at the reflector.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

Foglights and daytime running lights

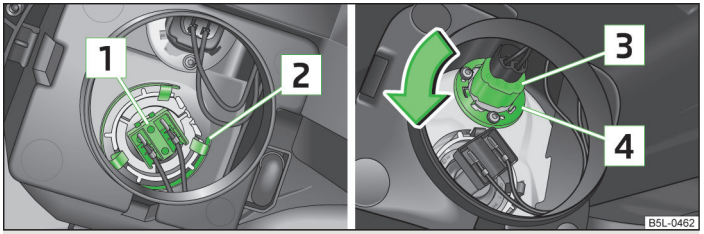

Fig. 183 **Removing: Bulb for fog lights/daytime running lights**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 228.

Changing light bulbs for fog lights

› Remove the rubber cover A » Fig. 180 on page 229.
› Disconnect plug 1 » Fig. 183.
› Take the faulty bulb out of the fixture 2 by pressing the light socket downwards and insert a new one.
› Insert the rubber cover.

Changing the bulb for the daytime running light

› Remove the rubber cover A » Fig. 180 on page 229.
› Disconnect plug 3 » Fig. 183.
› Remove the faulty lamp from the fixture 4 by turning it in the direction of arrow. Insert a new lamp using the reverse procedure.
› Insert the rubber cover.

Replacing the bulb for the licence plate light

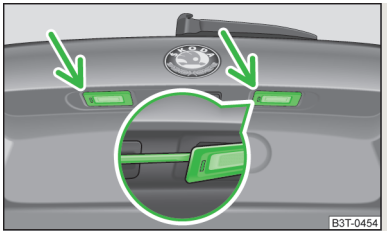

Fig. 184
Boot lid: Licence plate light

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 228.

› Insert a flat screwdriver into the opening in the area of the arrow » Fig. 184 and carefully press towards the centre of the lamp, by doing so the lamp jumps out slightly.
› Remove the lamp.
› Remove the faulty bulb from the holder and insert a new one.
› Replace the glass cover and push in until the stop. Make sure that you install the glass cover in the correct position.

Tail light

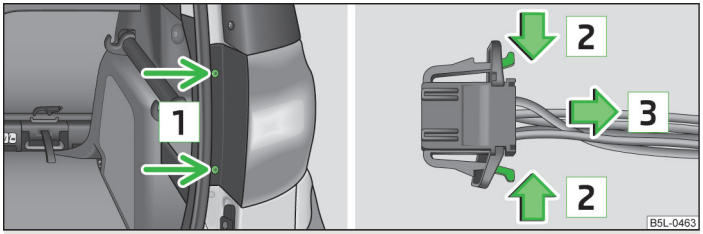

Fig. 185 **Removing the tail light assembly/disconnecting the plug connection**

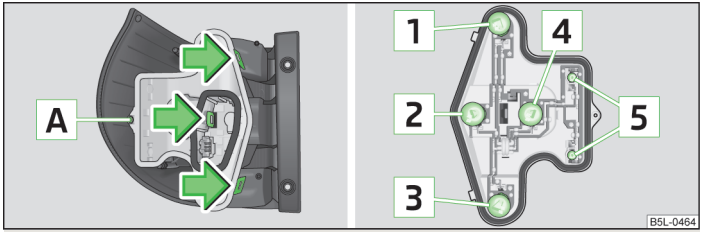

Fig. 186 **Remove the middle part of the light/tail light: Bulb arrangement**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 228.

Overview of the location of the bulbs » Fig. 186.

1 - Brake lights

2 - Reversing light

3 - Rear fog light

4 - Turn signal lights

5 - parking lights

Removing and installing the tail light

› Unscrew the light using the Torx key from the car tool kit. The shorter side of the wrench is used for loosening the screws 1 » Fig. 185 and the longer side for screwing them out completely.
› Grip the light in the upper and lower area and move backwards somewhat.
› Disconnect the plug connection by pressing the catches in direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 185 and by pulling them in direction of arrow 3.
› Unscrew the securing screw A » Fig. 186 with the aid of the Torx wrench and press the three catches in direction of arrow. Remove the plastic lamp holder.
› When reinstalling, insert the plastic lamp holder into the tail light until the catches audibly engage and insert the securing screw A with the Torx key.
› Reconnect the plug connection and put the light into the original position.
› Screw the light with the screws 1 » Fig. 185 into place.

Replacing the bulbs on the tail light

› To replace the lamp 1, 2, 3 or 4 » Fig. 186 turn the lamp socket **anti-** clockwise as far as it goes and remove it from the housing or remove the lamp 5 from the socket.
› Replace the lamp, insert the socket with the bulb into the housing and insert/turn **in a clockwise direction** as far as it goes.

Technical data

Technical data

Vehicle data

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle data 232
Dimensions 233
Specifications - 1.8 litre/112 kW TSI engine 233
Vehicle-specific details depending on engine 235
Multi-purpose vehicles (AF) 238

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The listed performance values were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

Vehicle data

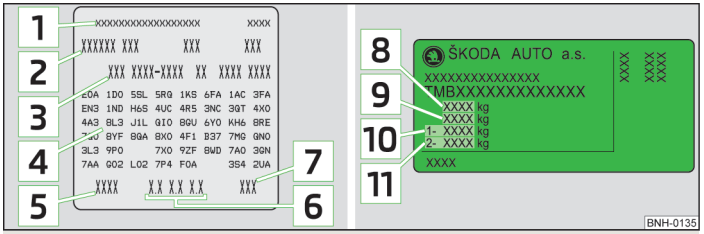

Fig. 187 **Vehicle data sticker/type plate**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 232.

Vehicle data sticker
The vehicle data sticker » Fig. 187 is located on the floor of the boot and is also stated in the service schedule.

The vehicle data sticker contains the following data:

1 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
2 Vehicle type
3 Gearbox code/paint number/interior equipment/engine output/engine code
4 Partial description of the vehicle
5 Operating weight (in kg)
6 Fuel consumption (in ltr./100 km) - intra-urban/extra-urban/combined
7 CO_2 emission levels - combined (in g/km)

Type plate
The type plate » Fig. 187 is located on the lower part of the column between the front and rear doors on the front passenger's side.

The type plate lists the following weights:

8 Maximum permissible gross weight
9 Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)
10 Maximum permissible front axle load
11 Maximum permissible rear axle load

Vehicle identification number (VIN)
The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped into the engine compartment on the right hand suspension strut dome. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code).

Engine number
The engine number is stamped into the engine block.

Operating weight
The specified operating weight is for orientation purposes only. This value represents the minimum operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment such as air conditioning system, spare wheel, or trailer hitch.

The operating weight also contains the weight of the driver (75 kg), the weight of the operating fluids, the tool kit, and a fuel tank filled to 90 % capacity.

It is possible to calculate the approximate loading capacity from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight » !.

The payload consists of the following components:
› Passengers
› All items of luggage and other loads
› Roof load including roof rack system
› Equipment not included in the operating weight
› Trailer drawbar load when towing a trailer (max. 80 kg).

Measuring fuel consumption according to ECE standards and EU guidelines
The measurement of the intra-urban cycle begins with a cold start of the engine. Afterwards urban driving is simulated.

In the extra-urban driving cycle, the vehicle is accelerated and decelerated in all gears, corresponding to daily routine driving conditions. The driving speed varies between 0 and 120 km/h.

The calculation of the combined fuel consumption considers a weighting of about 37 % for the intra-urban cycle and 63 % for the extra-urban cycle.

! WARNING

Do not exceed the specified maximum permissible weights – risk of accident and damage!

i Note

▪ If required, you can find out the precise weight of your vehicle at a specialist garage.
▪ Depending on the range of equipment, style of driving, traffic situation, weather influences and vehicle condition, consumption values may deviate from the indicated values.

Dimensions

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 232.

Dimensions (mm)

Length	4223
Width	1793
Width including exterior mirror	1975
Height	1691/1671[a)]
Clearance	180/155[a)]
Wheel base	2578
Track gauge front/rear	1541/1537

[a)] GreenLine

Specifications - 1.8 litre/112 kW TSI engine

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 232.

Dynamic balancing

A wheel with a residual unbalance greater than 8 g is considered to be an unbalanced wheel.

Emissions standard	EU5
Turning circle diameter - curb-to-curb turning circle/wall-to-wall turning circle (in metres)	10.0/10.32
Gradients (in%)	60

Weight (in kg)

Maximum permissible gross weight	2085
Kerb weight with driver (75 kg)	1660
Maximum permissible front axle load	1090
Maximum permissible rear axle load	1030

Fuel consumption (in l/100 km) and CO2 emissions (in g/km)

Intra-urban	11.1
Ex-urban	6.8
Combined	8.4
CO_2 emissions in combined cycle	203

Brakes

Brake pedal free travel (in mm)	3
Front disc brake Brake pad thickness without backing plate (in mm)	14
Rear disc brake Brake pad thickness without backing plate (in mm)	11

Axle geometry values

Front axle					**Rear axle**			**Clearance**		
Toe-in	Camber		Caster		Toe-in	Camber		Distance from the centre of the wheel to the wheel arch (in mm)		
Nominal setting	Nominal setting	Right to left tolerance	Nominal setting	Right to left tolerance	Nominal setting	Nominal setting	Right to left tolerance	Front	Rear	Tolerance
per wheel	per wheel	Total	per wheel	Total	per wheel	per wheel	Total			
10 '± 10'	-8 '± 30'	max. 30 '	7 ° 14 '± 30'	max. 30 '	10 '± 10'	-1 ° 20 '± 30'	max. 30 '	461.9	457.9	± 10

Vehicle-specific details depending on engine

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 232.

The specified values have been determined in accordance with rules and under conditions set out by legal or technical requirements for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

1.2 ltr./77 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)
77/5000	175/1550-4100	4/1197

Performances	MG6	DSG7
Top speed (km/h)	175	173
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	11.8	12.0
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1200[a]/1500[b]	
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	670	680

[a] Uphills up to 12 %
[b] Uphills up to 8 %

1.4 ltr./90 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)
90/5000	200/1500-4000	4/1390

Performances	MG6	DSG7
Top speed (km/h)	185	182
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.5/10.6[a]	10.6
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1300[b]/1600[c]	
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	680/690[a]	700

[a] The value corresponds to the status with the Green tec-package.
[b] Uphills up to 12 %
[c] Uphills up to 8 %

1.8 ltr./112 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)
112/4300-6200	250/1500-4200	4/1798

Performances	MG6 4x4	DSG6 4x4
Top speed (km/h)	196	192
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.7	9.0
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1800	
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	750	

1.8 ltr./118 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)
118/4500-6200	250/1500-4500	4/1798

Performances	MG6 4x4
Top speed (km/h)	200
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.4
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1800
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	750

1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)
77/4400	250/1500-2500	4/1598

Performances	MG5
Top speed (km/h)	176
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	12.1
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1400[a]/1700[b]
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	700

[a] Uphills up to 12 %
[b] Uphills up to 8 %

2.0 ltr./81 kW TDI CR engine

	Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)
MG5	81/4200	250/1500-2500	4/1968
MG6 4x4		280/1750-2750	

Performances	MG5	MG6 4x4
Top speed (km/h)	177	174
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	11.6	12.2
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1500[a]/1700[b]	1800
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	700	750

[a] Uphills up to 12 %
[b] Uphills up to 8 %

2.0 ltr./103 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)
103/4200	320/1750-2500	4/1968

Performances	MG6 4x4	DSG6 4x4
Top speed (km/h)	190/193[a]	187
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	9.9/9.7[a]	10.2
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	2000/1800[a]	
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	750/730[a]	

[a] Applies to vehicles with a Green-tec package.

2.0 ltr./125 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)
125/4200	350/1750-2500	4/1968

Performances	MG6 4x4	DSG6 4x4
Top speed (km/h)	201	197
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.4	8.6
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	2000	
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	750	

Multi-purpose vehicles (AF)

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 232.

Engine	1.2 ltr./77 kW TSI	1.4 ltr./90 kW TSI	1.8 ltr./118 kW TSI	1.8 ltr./112 kW TSI	1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI CR	2.0 ltr./81 kW TDI CR	2.0 ltr./103 kW TDI CR	2.0 ltr./125 kW TDI CR
Maximum permissible gross weight (kg)	1880/1910[a]	1915/1935[b]/1945[a]	2045	2080	1950	1955/2065[c]	2070/2095[a]/ 2010[b]	2075/2100[a]

[a] Valid for vehicles with automatic gearbox.
[b] Applies to vehicles with a Green-tec package.
[c] Valid for 4x4 vehicles.

Index

A

Ability to climb
see Slope angle 133
Abroad
Driving abroad 131
Unleaded petrol 131
ABS
Operation 138
Warning light 22
Accessories 187
Active steering support (DSR) 137
Adjusting
Seats 59
Adjusting the seats 159
Aerial 180
See window glass 183
Airbag 167
Deactivate 172
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 173
Deployment 167
Front airbag 169
Head airbag 171
Knee airbag 170
Modifications and damage to the airbag system 188
Side airbag 170
Airbag system 167
Air conditioning system
Air outlet vents 85
Climatronic 91
Manual air conditioning system 88
Operation 88
Air outlet vents 85
Alarm 33
Anti-theft alarm system 33
Operation 33
Trailer 157
Antilock brake system (ABS) 138
Armrest 78
Artificial leather 186
Ashtray 73
Front 74
Rear 74
ASR
Warning light 21
Assist systems
ABS 22, 138
ASR 21
Cruise Control System 145
EDL 139
ESC 22, 137
OFF ROAD 139
Park assist 142
Parking aid 141
START/STOP 147
TCS 138
Auto check control 17
Automatic driving lamp control 44
Automatic gearbox 121
Dynamic shift programme 124
Emergency programme 125
Information for driving 122
Kickdown 124
Manual shifting of gears 123
Parking 122
Selector lever-emergency unlocking 125
Selector lever lock 124
Selector lever positions 122
Starting off 122
Stopping 122
Tiptronic 123
Automatic load deactivation 204
Auxiliary heating and ventilation
Radio remote control 96
Replacing the battery in the radio remote control 96
Switching directly on/off 95
System settings 95
Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) 94
Avoiding damage to the vehicle
Driving through water 130
Avoiding damage to your vehicle 130

B

Belts 162
Belt tensioners 166
Bonnet
Closing 194
Opening 194
Book lid 34
Boot
Class N1 vehicles 67
Cover 69
Emergency unlocking 35
Fastening elements 67
Fixing nets 68
Folding hooks 68
Light 49
see Boot lid 34
Unlocking the boot lid 35
Variable loading floor 70
Boot lid 34
Automatic locking 34
Warning light 20
Brake assist 137
Brake booster 120
Brake fluid 199
Changing 200
Checking 200
Brakes
Brake fluid 200
Handbrake 120
Running in 126
Warning lights 19
Braking 119
Information on braking 119
Breakdown kit 218, 219

Break recommendation
See Fatigue detection 148
Bulbs
In the tail light 231
Replacing 228
Button in the driver's door
Electric power windows 35

C

Car computer
see Multifunction display 12
Car jack 214
Carrier 72
Cavity protection 184
CD changer 114
Central locking button 31
Central locking system 28
lock 30
unlock 30
Changing
Brake fluid 200
Engine oil 197
Wheel 214
Changing a wheel
Follow-up tasks 216
Preliminary tasks 215
Removing and refitting a wheel 215
Charge vehicle battery 203
Checking
Battery acid level 202
Brake fluid 200
Coolant 199
Engine oil 197
Oil level 197
Properly attaching the tow bar 153
Windscreen washer fluid 195
Children and safety 175
Child safety
Side airbag 176
Child safety lock 27
Child seat
Classification 177
ISOFIX 177
On the front passenger seat 176
TOP TETHER 179
Use of child seats 177
Use of ISOFIX child seats 178
Chrome parts
refer to Taking care of your vehicle 183
Cigarette lighter 81
Cleaning 180
Artificial leather 186
Covers on electrically heated seats 186
Fabrics 186
Headlight lenses 183
Natural leather 185
Plastic parts 182
Wheels 184
Climatronic
Automatic mode 92
Controlling the blower 93
Defrosting the windscreen 94
Overview of control elements 91
Recirculated air mode 93
Setting the temperature 92
Switching cooling system on and off 92
Clock 11
Clothes hooks 83
Cockpit
12-volt power socket 82
Ashtray 73
Cigarette lighter 81
General view 7
Lighting 47
Storage compartments 75
Compartments 75
Computer
see Multifunction display 12
Coolant 198
Checking 199
Temperature display 9
Topping up 199
Correct seated position 159
Driver 160
Front passenger 160
Instructions 160
Rear seats 160
Counter for distance driven 10
Cruise Control System 145
Cup holder
front 73
rear 73
Cup holders 73

D

Daytime running lights 42
De-icing the windscreen and rear window 50
Deactivating an airbag 172
Decorative films 183
Delayed locking of the boot lid
See Boot lid 34
Diesel
refer to Fuel 191
Diesel fuel
Operation in winter 191
Diesel particulate filter 23
Digital clock 11
Dipstick 197
Display
Coolant temperature 9
Service interval 10
Distance driven 10
Door
Child safety lock 27
Closing 28
Opening 28
Warning light for an open door 20

Doors
Emergency locking 28
Driving
Abroad 131
Driving through water on roads 130
Emissions values 232
Fuel consumption 232
Maximum speed 235
Driving off-road
after driving off-road 136
Before driving 133
Changing gear when driving off-road 134
Explanation of technical terms 132
Ground clearance 132
Hillside angle 135
Overhang angle 132
Stuck vehicle 135
Driving through water 130
DVD-preinstallation 114

E

Economical and environmentally friendly driving 126
Economical driving
Driving at full throttle 127
Energy-efficient gear switching 127
Looking ahead 127
Regular maintenance 128
EDL
Operation 139
Electrical power windows
Button in the driver's door 35
Button in the front passenger door 37
Button in the rear doors 37
Electric power windows
Central locking system 37
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL) 139
Electronic immobiliser 118
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 137
Emergency
Automatic gearbox 125
Hazard warning light system 46
Jump-starting 220
locking of the doors 28
Replacing the battery in the radio remote control 96
Selector lever-unlocking 125
Sliding/tilting roof 40
Towing the vehicle 222
Tyre repair 218
Unlocking the boot lid 35
Wheel change 214
Emissions values 232
Engine
Running in 125
Starting and stopping the engine 116
Starting the engine 118
Switching off the engine 119
Engine compartment 192
Brake fluid 200
Coolant 198
Overview 194
Vehicle battery 200
Engine oil 195
Capacity 196
Changing 197
Checking 197
Specification 196
Topping up 197
Engine revolutions counter 9
Environment 126
Environmental compatibility 129
Environmentally friendly driving 126
ESC
Operation 137
Warning light 22

F

Fatigue detection 148
Function 149
Information messages 149
Films 183
Fire extinguisher 213
First-aid kit 213
Folding table
on the front seat rest 79
on the middle seat rest 79
Footmats 121
See Footmats 121
Front airbag 169
Front seats 58
Fuel 190
Diesel 191
Fuel gauge 9
gauge 9
refer to Fuel 190
Refuelling 190
Unleaded petrol 191
Fuel consumption 126
Fuses
Assignment 225
Colour coding 225
Replace 225

G

Gear
Recommended gear 11
Gear changing
gearshift lever 120
Gear switching
Energy-efficient driving 127
General view
Cockpit 7
Glow plug system
Warning light 23

GSM 101, 104

H

Handbrake 120
Hands-free system
Voice control 109
Head airbag 171
Headlight cleaning system
Headlight cleaning system 53
Headlights 229
Driving abroad 131
Head restraint 62
Head restraints
Adjusting 63
Rear centre 63
Heater
Windscreen and rear window 50
Heating 86
Deicing the windows 87
External mirror 56
Operation 86
Recirculated air mode 87
Seats 62
Heating and air-conditioning 84
Hill Hold Control 137
Horn 7

I

Ignition 118
Ignition lock 118
Immobiliser 118
Individual settings
Locking 29
Unlocking 29
Inertia reels 165
Information display
see MAXI DOT 15
Instrument cluster 8
Instrument lighting 47
Interior monitor 33
Internet connection 107
ISOFIX 177

J

Jacking points
Raise vehicle 217
Jump-starting 220

K

Knee airbag 170

L

Lever
Main beam 43
Turn signal 43
Levers
Windscreen wipers 52
Light
Headlight flasher 43
Low beam 42
Parking light 42
Replacing bulbs 228
Lights
Automatic driving lamp control 44
Cockpit 47
COMING HOME LEAVING HOME function 46
Daytime running lights 42
Dynamic cornering lights 44
Fog lights 45
Foglights with the CORNER function 45
Hazard warning light system 46
Headlight beam adjustment 42
Main beam 43
Parking light 47
Rear fog light 45
Switching lights on and off 42
Tourist lights 45
Turn signal 43
Warning lights 18
Loads 232
Lock
Central locking system 30
Locking
Emergency locking 28
Remote control 32
Locking and unlocking from the inside 31

M

Maintenance
Decorative films 183
Manual air conditioning
Recirculated air mode 90
Manual gear changing
See Gear changing 120
MAXI DOT 15
Main menu 15
Settings 16
Maximum speed 235
Memory function for the seat 60
Mirror
Additional interior mirror 55
Automatically dimmed interior mirror 55
External mirror 56
Manually dimmed interior mirror 55
Vanity 50
Mobile phone 98, 101, 104
Connecting to the hands-free system 101, 104
Modifications 187
Modifications and technical alterations
Airbags 188
Service 188
Spoiler 188
Multifunction display
Functions 12
Memory 12
Operation 13

Multimedia 112
AUX-IN 113
MDI 113

N

Net partition 69

O

Off-road driving 131
OFF ROAD mode 139
Style of driving 134
OFF ROAD 139
Oil
See Engine oil 197
Onboard computer
see Multifunction display 12
Operation in winter
Diesel fuel 191
Outside temperature 13
Overhang angle 133
Overview
Engine compartment 194
Warning lights 18

P

Paintwork
See Paintwork care 182
Paintwork care 182
Panoramic sunroof 38
Parking
Park assist 142
Parking aid 141
Parking ticket holder 83
Part replacement 187
Passive safety
Before setting off 158
Driving safety 159
Safety equipment 158
Passive Safety 158
Pedals 121
Footmats 121
Periodic wiping 52
Petrol
refer to Fuel 191
Polishing the paintwork
See Taking care of your vehicle 182
Power steering 117
Power window force limiter 37
Power windows
Operational faults 38

R

Radiator fan 195
Radio reception
See window glass 183
Raise vehicle 217
Rear-view mirror
Automatically dimmed interior mirror 55
External mirror 56
Manually dimmed interior mirror 55
Rear seats 63
Adjusting forwards/backwards 64
Adjusting the seat backrest tilt 64
Folding the seat backrest forward and folding the seat fully forward 64
Rear window - heater 50
Recirculated air mode
Climatronic 93
Manual air conditioning 90
Recommended gear 11
Refuelling 190
Fuel 190
Regulation
Headlight beam 42
Remote control 31
Synchronisation process 32
Remote control key
Replacing the battery 27
Removable through-loading bag 82
Repairs and technical alterations 187
Replace
Vehicle battery 203
Replacing
Bulb for the licence plate light 230
Bulbs 228
Bulbs in the tail light 231
Foglights and daytime running lights bulbs 230
Fuses 225
Fuses in the dash panel 226
Fuses in the engine compartment 227
High and low beam bulb 229
Windscreen wiper blade 54
Replenishing
Windscreen washer fluid 195
Roof rack system
Roof load 72
Running-in
The first 1500 km 125
Running in
Brake pads 126
Engine 125
Tyres 126

S

Safe securing system 29
Safety 158
Child safety 175
Child safety seats 175
Correct seated position 159
Head restraints 62
ISOFIX 177
TOP TETHER 179
Saving electrical energy 126
Seals
Taking care of your vehicle 182

Seat belt
Warning light 19
Seat belt height adjuster 165
Seat belts 162
Belt tensioners 166
Cleaning 187
fastening and unfastening 164
Height adjustment 165
Seatbelts
Inertia reels 165
Seat belts
Middle rear seat 165
The physical principle of a frontal collision 163
Seats
Electric adjustment 60
Folding back into the original position 66
Folding down 63
Folding front passenger seat 59
Head restraints 62
Heating 62
Manually adjusting 59
Memory function for the electrically adjusted seat 60
Remote control key memory function 61
Removing seats 65
Seats and stowing 58
Selector lever
see selector lever positions 122
Selector lever positions 122
Service 188
Service display 10
Setting
Automatically dimmed interior mirror 55
External mirror 56
Heating 87
Manual air conditioning system 90
Manually dimmed interior mirror 55
Steering wheel 117
Setting temperature
Heating 86
Setting the clock
Clock 11
Side airbag 170
Sliding/tilting roof 38
Closing 38
Convenience operation 39
Emergency operation 40
Opening and tilting 38
Operation 38
Sun screen 39
Slop angle 133
Snow chains 211
Spare wheel 209
Speedometer 9
Speed symbol
See Wheels 208
Spoiler 188
START/STOP
Function 147
Starting and stopping the engine 116
Starting engine
Jump-starting 220
Starting the engine 118
START STOP
Jump-starting 222
Steering force assistance 117
Steering wheel 117
Storage 75
Storage compartment
Lighting 49
Storage compartment on the dash panel 76
Storage compartment on the front passenger side 75
Storage compartments 75
Flexible storage compartment 81
Glasses storage box 77
Map pockets on the front seats 77
Storage compartment in the front centre console 76
Storage compartment in the rear centre console 80
Storage compartments in the boot 80
Storage compartments in the doors 77
Storage compartment under the front passenger's seat 78
Sun visors 50
Switching lights on and off 42
Switching off the engine 119

T

Taking care of the vehicle
Natural leather 185
Seat belts 187
Taking care of your vehicle 180
Artificial leather 186
Automatic car wash system 180
Care of the exterior 181
Cavity protection 184
Chrome parts 183
Cleaning the wheels 184
Decorative films 183
Door lock cylinders 184
Fabrics 186
Headlight lenses 183
High-pressure cleaner 181
Plastic parts 182
Polishing the paintwork 182
Rubber seals 182
Seat covers 186
Taking care of the interior 185
Washing 180
Washing by hand 180
Wash system 180
Wax treatment 182
TCS
Operation 138
Technical data 232
Telephone 101, 104
Tiptronic 121
see automatic gearbox 123
Tool 214

Topping up
Coolant 199
Engine oil 197
TOP TETHER 179
Tow ball
Ready position 151
Tow bar
Checking secure attachment 153
Fitting 152
Removing 153
Towing 222
Towing a trailer 150, 154
Towing device
Description 150
Drawbar load 150
Use and care 154
Towing eye 223
Towing protection 33
Traction Control System (TCS) 138
Trailer 150, 154
13-pin power socket 155
driving with a trailer 155
Loading 154
Safety eyelet 155
Trailer stabilisation 156
Transport
Boot 66
Roof rack system 72
Transporting children safely 175
Two-way radio systems 98
Type plate 232
Tyre load-bearing capacity
See Wheels 207
Tyre pressure monitor 208
Tyre repair 218
Check pressure 220
Preparations 219
Sealing and inflating the tyre 219
Tyres 205
New 207
Pressure 206
See Wheels 207
Sizes 206
Wear indicator 206

U

Underbody protection 184
Unleaded petrol 131
unlock
Central locking system 30
Unlocking
Remote control 32
Unlocking and locking 26
Useful equipment 81
12-volt power socket 82
Cigarette lighter 81
Clothes hooks 83
Parking ticket holder 83
Removable through-loading bag 82

V

Variable loading floor 70
Removing 70
Variable loading floor with spare wheel 71
Removable storage box 72
Using 71
Vehicle battery
Automatic load deactivation 204
Charging 203
Checking the acid level 202
Cover 202
Disconnecting and reconnecting 203
Replace 203
Safety instructions 200
Winter operation 202
Vehicle data sticker 232
Vehicle dimensions 233
Vehicle key 26
Vehicle status
See Auto check control 17
Vehicle tool kit 214
Visors 50

W

Warning lights 18
Warning symbols
See Warning lights 18
Warning triangle 213
Washing 180
Automatic car wash system 180
by hand 180
Chrome parts 183
High-pressure cleaner 181
Water
Driving through 130
Wax treatment
See Taking care of your vehicle 182
Weights 232
Wheel bolts
Anti-theft wheel bolt 217
Caps 210
Loosening and tightening 216
Wheel rims 205
Wheels
Bolts 211
Changing 214
Full trim 210
General information 205
Load index 207
Service life of tyres 206
Snow chains 211
Spare wheel 209
Speed symbol 208
Storing wheels 206
Swapping wheels 206
Tyre pressure 206
Tyre sizes 206

Tyre wear indicator 206
Unidirectional tyres 208
Winter tyres 211
Wheels and tyres
Hubcaps 211
Wi-Fi 108
Information display 109
Network connection 108
Switching off 108
Switching on 108
Window convenience operation 37
Window glass 183
Windows
Deicing 183
See electric power windows 35
Windscreen
Heater 50
Windscreen washer fluid
Checking 195
Replenishing 195
Warning light 25
Winter 195
Windscreen washer system 195
Windscreen wipers 52
Windscreen wiper
Automatic rear window wiper 53
Replacing the rear window wiper blade 54
Replacing the windscreen wiper blades 54
Windscreen wipers
Activating 52
Cleaning the windscreen wiper blades 54
Windscreen washer fluid 195
Winter operation 211
Deicing windows 183
Snow chains 211
Vehicle battery 202
Winter tyres 211
Winter tyres
See Wheels 211
WLAN 108

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. pursues a policy of constant product and model development. We trust that you will understand that changes to models in terms of shape, equipment and engineering, may be introduced at any time. The information about appearance, performances, dimensions, weight, standards and functions of the vehicle is correct at the time of publication. Some equipment might only be introduced at a later date, or is only offered in certain markets. Information is provided by ŠKODA partners. It is therefore not possible for legal claims to be made based on the data, illustrations and descriptions contained in this Owner's Manual.

Reprinting, duplicating, translating and any other use, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of ŠKODA AUTO a.s..

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

Subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2013

ŠKODA Service App – ŠKODA Service in your pocket

The ŠKODA Service application is designed for smartphones operating on iOS and Andriod systems, and its purpose is to help ŠKODA AUTO customers in any difficult situation they may encounter on their travels.

My dealer – choose your nearest or preferred Service Centre.

Assistance – contact the Assistance Service or your favourite dealer.

My car – complete Owner's Manual and summary list of all control lamps for quick review



Available to download from AppStore for iOS and Google Play for Android.

ŠKODA Manual App – Know your vehicle

The ŠKODA Manual application aims on users of tablet PCs who are interested in ŠKODA vehicles or already own one. The application contains full featured digital version of the Owner's Manual for all current ŠKODA models.

› Navigation through the **list of content**
› Classical **reading page by page**
› **Full text search** throughout the whole manual
› **Bookmarks** for fast access to favourite chapters



Available on the App Store

GET IT ON Google play

Minimisation of fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions
- Start-stop system*
- Recovery*
- Indication of recommended gear*

Weight reduction
- Optimisation of high-strength panels, reduction of thickness in panels and other materials
- Replacement of spare wheel with tyre repair kit

Reduction of energy consumption
- Use of energy-saving electromechanical steering instead of hydraulic type
- Optimisation of efficiency of generators
- Optimisation of operating consumption and electrical current consumption

Optimisation of aerodynamic- and rolling resistance
- Additional aerodynamic spoilers*
- Additional covers at rack (CD covers)*
- Optimised cooling (input grid, additional seal)*
- Reduction by 15 mm* with frame
- Ro-Wi tyres (wheels with low rolling resistance)*

Recyclability
- All models currently in production homologised in conformity with the requirements for recyclability (EU Directive 2005/64/EC)
- Use of recyclable, environmentally-friendly materials
- Use of recycled materials with the parameters of the new material preferred
- Labelling of materials for the purpose of making sorting easy



* realised in the GreenLine series

The green seal represents ŠKODA AUTO commitment to environmentally responsible behaviour. It expresses responsible engagement towards the environment and sustainable development.

www.skoda-auto.com

You also can do something for the environment!

The fuel consumption of your ŠKODA and the related pollutant emissions are determined crucially on how you drive.

The noise and the wear of the vehicle depend on the way how you deal with your vehicle.

This Owner's Manual shows you how to use your ŠKODA vehicle with utmost care for the environment while driving economically at the same time.

Also please pay attention to those parts in the Owner's Manual that are marked ♲ below.

Work with us – for the sake of the environment.

Návod k obsluze
Yeti anglicky 05.2013
S90.5610.09.20
5L0 012 003 LK